LATIN
FIRST
YEAR

MAGOFFIN
& HENRY

THE
CLIMAX
SERIES

SILVER
BURDETT

LATIN
FIRST YEAR

MAGOFFIN — HENRY

LATIN—FIRST YEAR

MAGOFFIN AND HENRY

1 In both material and method of presentation, this book conforms to the spirit and specific recommendations of the Report of the Classical investigation.

2 A mimeographed edition of this book was used in first year classes and was revised and rewritten in the light of the criticisms and suggestions of pupils and teachers.

3 Beginning with the second lesson, the pupil is trained to read simple and connected Latin narrative based on material from Roman history or classical mythology.

4 The vocabulary, inflection, and syntax are functional. They are purposely incorporated in the narrative and are studied as an aid to reading the Latin.

5 Ample opportunity is provided for gradual and thorough mastery of the vocabulary.

6 Oral Latin is provided through an abundance of exercises and is used as a preparation for written composition. The exercises are based either on the Latin story in the lesson or on those previously read.

7 Many opportunities are provided for the stimulation of intellectual growth.

8 The illustrations, with few exceptions, will enable pupils to visualize Rome at the apex of her glory. Each is an integral part of the book and has a purpose.

9 One lesson in every ten is devoted to derivation. In addition, almost every lesson contains a Word Study based on the vocabulary of that lesson.

10 The Latin motto and phrase or phrases that head each lesson are explained in the lesson.

11 Descriptive paragraphs in English of either classical or modern works of art, link the life of the ancients to our own.

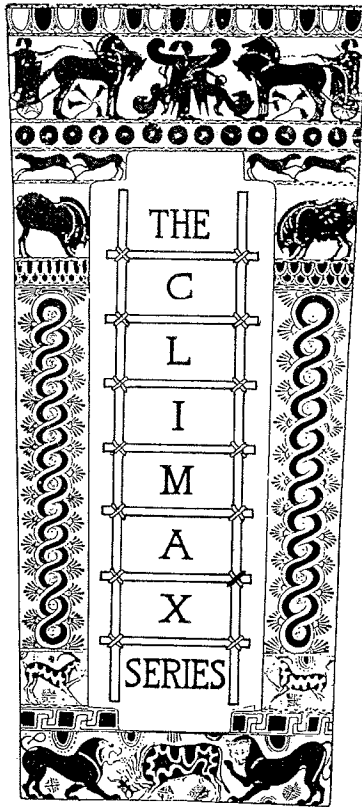## SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

LATIN - FIRST YEAR

BY

RALPH VAN DEMAN MAGOFFIN

PROFESSOR AND HEAD, DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS
NEW YORK UNIVERSITY

AND

MARGARET YOUNG HENRY

CHAIRMAN, DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICAL LANGUAGES
FRANKLIN K. LANE HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

WITH A
LATIN PLAYLET
BY

LILLIAN B. LAWLER

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN, UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

THE
C
L
I
M
A
X
SERIES

RALPH VAN DEMAN MAGOFFIN

PROFESSOR AND HEAD, DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS
NEW YORK UNIVERSITY
EDITOR

△

EDITOR'S PREFACE

The Climax Series of Latin textbooks for the secondary school, of which this volume is the first, conforms both in content and method to the recommendations made in the General Report of the Classical Investigation.

The Series contains the material that has been sanctioned by experience and also other material that may have a stronger appeal to teachers and pupils of today. Latin, from the point of view of linguistics, receives due emphasis and at the same time its ethical, cultural, and literary values receive the attention they deserve. From the outset, the material and method are designed to cultivate interest in the study of Latin. By awakening and developing an interest in Latin for its human significance, it is believed that this Series will give the work in Latin renewed effectiveness.

The teacher will find this volume simple in language, modern in method, insistent upon daily mastery and review, mindful of derivative values, and provocative of independent thought.

Furthermore, the illustrations and the descriptions of them provide many opportunities to deepen and widen the knowledge and interest of the pupil in the life, language, and literature of the Romans; and the Latin stories portray the Roman characteristics of fidēlitās, honor, and simplicitās.

RALPH VAN DEMAN MAGOFFIN

NEW YORK UNIVERSITY

iii

AUTHORS' PREFACE

Following the appearance of the General Report of the Classical Investigation, it became increasingly evident to teachers of Latin that a new type of first-year Latin book was needed; one that would in content and method conform to the recommendations of this report. LATIN FIRST YEAR aims to meet this need.

The mimeographed edition of this book was used in first-year classes by one of the authors and by other teachers. The results obtained were most satisfactory both with respect to the rapidity with which pupils gained command of a reading vocabulary and to the effectiveness of the method of presentation. In the light of the penetrating suggestions and criticisms made by the teachers and pupils who used the mimeographed edition, it was thoroughly and carefully revised. This volume is, therefore, the product of schoolroom use.

Beginning with *Opusculum Secundum*, the pupil is trained to read Latin for the content, and not as an exercise based upon grammar. In each *opusculum*, the Latin to be read is simple and connected narrative based upon material from Roman history and classical mythology which upholds the ideals of conduct and devotion characteristic of the ancient Romans.

The vocabulary, inflection, and syntax presented in each *opusculum* are based on the Latin narrative in that lesson. In this way they are presented as subjects for study in their proper relation to the problems involved in reading Latin; that is, they are treated not as ends in themselves but as essential aids to the supreme end; namely, the ability to read Latin with ease and pleasure. By this method, the pupil has a real incentive to study vocabulary, syntax, and inflection, and thereby to master them effectively.

The Latin story in each *opusculum* is told in the words of the preceding vocabularies, or in the vocabulary of the *opusculum* in which it occurs, and thus all the words in each vocabulary are used again and again. They are also used in the exercises.

v

By so doing, each word in the vocabularies is used ten times or more, and thus ample provision is made for the gradual and thorough mastery of the Latin vocabulary. In addition, there are systematic vocabulary reviews at regular intervals. The words in a story which the pupil should not yet make any effort to learn, are given in translation. Any such that are to be learned later are given in the appropriate vocabulary.

Intellectual growth is stimulated by many opportunities for the development of both memory and logical thinking. For example, in an early *opusculum* the word **vestīmenta** is purposely left untranslated, in a sentence with other words which the pupils know or which are translated. In actual practice it was found that the majority of pupils translated the unknown word **vestīmenta** correctly, because of its context and its likeness to the English words, vest and vestments. A small number of such words have been introduced purposely at chosen places. Some words, *e.g.*, **appropinquāre,** after being first translated and then used several times in the same story, are not translated when the word occurs again, because either memory or logical thinking applied to the context is usually sufficient. In case of need, these words are to be found in the Latin-English vocabulary.

The points of syntax are limited to those specified in the Report of the Classical Investigation, and are purposely embedded in the Latin stories. As has already been explained, the treatment of these points is functional rather than formal.

Oral Latin, or composition, is provided through an abundance of exercises, called *Question and Quick Answer Practice*, and is used as a preparation for written composition. The latter is approached through a series of carefully graduated exercises: first completion exercises, then exercises with phrases for translation, and finally, exercises with English sentences for translation into Latin. An important innovation is that these exercises are based either on the Latin story in the *opusculum* or on those previously read.

The motto at the beginning of an *opusculum* applies nearly always to the Latin story or illustrates a grammatical point. The description of the motto often refers to writers or writings that pupils will meet later in their study of Latin.

The debt of English to Latin is definitely recognized throughout the book. The derivatives from words in the vocabularies, given in the word studies, are listed in about every tenth *opusculum*. Suggestions for their further study are made in comments on the mottoes and in descriptions of the illustrations.

The illustrations, with a few exceptions, will enable pupils to visualize Rome at the apex of her life and glory. Each is an integral part of the book and has a purpose. It either illustrates the Latin story, vivifies the life and customs of the Romans, or shows a reconstruction of the grandeur of ancient Rome. The illustrations, particularly those reproduced from the Forti paintings, were chosen for the purpose of showing that Roman men, women, and children are worthy of admiration and respect.

To bring the physical features of this book into conformity with its subject matter, the color of its cover is like the bright Pompeian red as it appears today on the Street of Abundance in Pompeii. On the front cover, the border is reproduced from a design painted on an ancient Greek vase, and in the center is a reproduction of an Etruscan vase. The lettering is in Roman capitals. The name for the Series is the word for ladder, both in Greek and Latin, κλῖμαξ and **clīmax**. It suggests the basic idea for each book of the Series, and for the Series itself, *i.e.*, progress is made one step at a time. The design on the copyright page is taken from a beautifully painted ancient sarcophagus of terra cotta.

Acknowledgment is gratefully made to Signora Forti of Rome, who gave us permission to reproduce photographs of paintings by her deceased husband, a world-famous artist and archaeologist.

We are under great obligation to Mrs. Claire T. Mather of the Franklin K. Lane High School, Brooklyn, and Mr. John Gummere of the William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, who used the mimeographed edition, for their many helpful suggestions and constructive criticisms.

We are under obligation to Miss Mildred Dean of the Central High School, Washington, D. C., Mr. Thomas S. Cole of the South Philadelphia High School, Dr. Walter A. Edwards, Chairman of the Latin Department of the Los Angeles High School, and Miss Stella Aten of the Nicholas Senn High School,

Chicago, for reading the manuscript with critical care and making constructive suggestions. Acknowledgment is gratefully made to Mrs. Cecil C. Craig (Miss Ruth Swan) of the University High School, Ann Arbor, Michigan, who, because of her accuracy and acumen, made many valuable suggestions and criticisms both upon the manuscript and galley proof.

Our thanks are acknowledged to Dean Selatie E. Stout of Indiana University for suggestions regarding the treatment of derivatives, and to Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College, Columbia University, for suggesting the use of the provocative word *opusculum*. We are grateful to Mr. Charles E. Springmeyer, Principal of the Franklin K. Lane High School, Brooklyn, for many valuable suggestions.

Mrs. Joseph Clark Hoppin gave us the privilege of using from her late husband's work on Greek vase painting, *Euthymides and His Fellows*, the lotus bud design for the cover. Professor H. F. Rebert of Amherst College, and Mr. H. G. Marceau permitted us to use the drawing, and the American Academy in Rome granted us permission to use the photograph of their reconstruction of the Temple of Concord in the Roman Forum. Miles Masters, Instructor in Classics in New York University, and William Roy Begg, Instructor in Classical Languages in the Preparatory High School of the College of the City of New York, assisted us in the preparation of the vocabularies.

To Professor Lillian B. Lawler, formerly of the State University of Iowa, and now of the University of Kansas, we are indebted for her delightful playlet, **Senātus Populusque Rōmānus,** which has been presented by first-year Latin pupils with great success.

In the Latin stories based on Greek and Roman mythology, we have been privileged to follow the interpretation given by Miss Frances E. Sabin, Director of the Service Bureau for Classical Teachers, in her *Classical Myths That Live Today.*

There have been many other persons who have helped in the preparation of this book. To all such the authors acknowledge their sincere gratitude.

<div align="right">

Ralph Van Deman Magoffin

Margaret Young Henry

</div>

CONTENTS

TOGAS IN IMPERIAL FASHION

Vergil called his countrymen **gēns togāta**, *toga-clad people*. The graceful draping of togas is shown in this bas-relief. It gives as it were a contemporaneous photograph, in marble, of Marcus Aurelius, his wife, the empress Faustina, and an unknown person dressed as the goddess Roma.
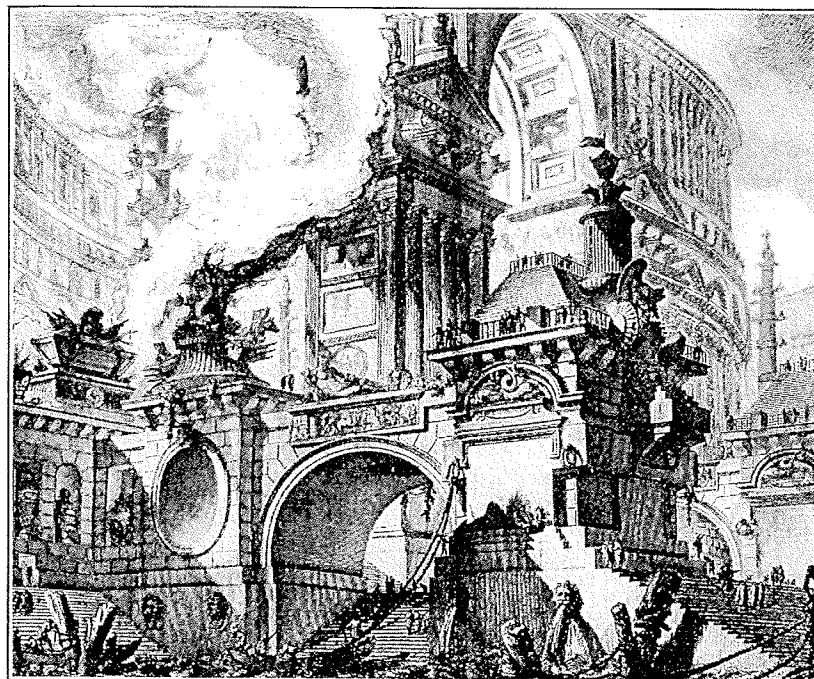
From an engraving by Piranesi   *A Reconstruction*

THE GRANDEUR THAT WAS ROME

When a visitor or a colonial came from his home to see Rome, and landed at the quay near the island in the Tiber, what a stupendous mass of architectural beauty met his eyes! It is no wonder that Rome was called the greatest city of the ancient world.

I

OPUSCULUM PRĪMUM
lesson   first

1.   PĀX RŌMĀNA

The Romans are the people who, thus far, have played the greatest part on the world's stage. Their first form of government was a kingdom, which lasted some three hundred years; then it was a republic for five hundred years; and then an empire for five

Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin
A ROMAN ROAD

Roman engineers built thousands of miles of roads paved with stone or lava, and that part of those roads which has not been taken up purposely, is as good to-day as it was when it was laid down more than two thousand years ago. The same thing is true of hundreds of stone, brick, and concrete buildings, aqueducts, and bridges. The work of Roman military or civil engineers is still one of the marvels of the world.

hundred years. During those periods, beginning in one little town on the Tiber River, the Romans extended their power over the entire world, as men knew it then. At the close of the Republic the Romans controlled a territory as large as the United States. During the Empire, it became twice that large. The Romans stopped the warfare that had been going on for hundreds of years among the many small states that had now become parts of the Roman Empire, and established for the first time in the history of the world an international peace, which history very properly calls the Roman Peace (Pāx Rōmāna).
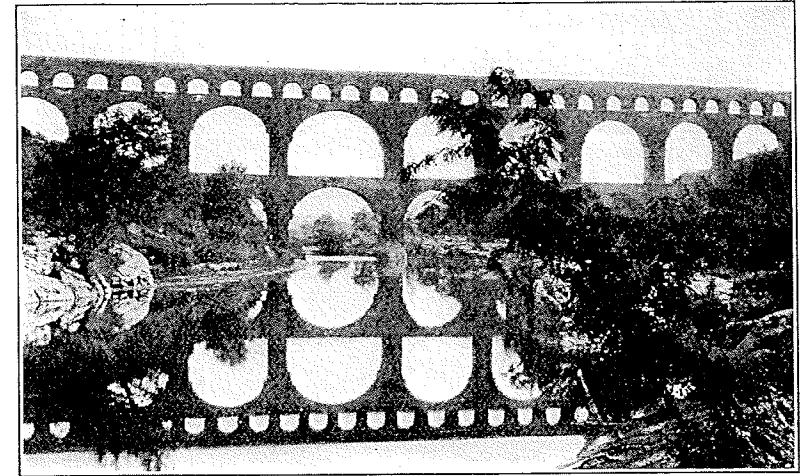
Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin
PONT DU GARD

This bridge, which carried a Roman aqueduct over the Gard River in South-eastern France in Provence (from Latin prōvincia), is one of the engineering triumphs of the Romans. The water ran through a channel which is above the row of small arches. A man can walk upright through this channel without striking his head on the capstones. The aqueduct (from aqua, *water*, and dūcere, *carry*) is not in present use, but the bridge itself is as firm now as it was when it was built nearly two thousand years ago.

2.   SENĀTVS POPVLVSQVE RŌMĀNVS

The Senate and the Roman People founded many colonies and established the first real colonial and municipal administration in the world; in fact, their colonial and provincial administration is often said to have been the best the world has ever seen, although it is claimed by others that Great Britain, since the Revolutionary War of 1775–1783, has done as well. Roman soldiers were superior to all others of their own or of earlier times.

3.   ROMAN LAW AND LITERATURE

The Romans set standards for the world both in civil and in international law. In fact, their influence in that field is also

LATIN AND GREEK ALPHABETS

This illustration is reproduced from photographs of alphabets and letters scratched on walls by Roman school children. The middle line is the most interesting for us. Just think! These letters were scratched nearly two thousand years ago, yet we can read them easily.

One sees that E was written with two parallel vertical lines, and that our letters J, U, Y, and Z are missing. The Romans added Y and Z to their alphabet towards the end of the Republic in order to spell Greek words that had these letters. The alphabet in the picture was scratched, therefore, before that time. I served for both I and J, and are distinguished as I vowel and I consonant; V served for both U and V in the same way.

an outstanding feature of legal history. The Roman Vergil is the second greatest epic poet the world has produced. In Tacitus and Livy the Romans had two of the greatest historians of all time; in Cicero, an orator second only to the Greek Demosthenes; in Juvenal, the best of all writers of satire; in Cicero and Pliny the Younger, the two most delightful of the world's letter writers. Augustus, Vespasian, and Hadrian were three as successful and
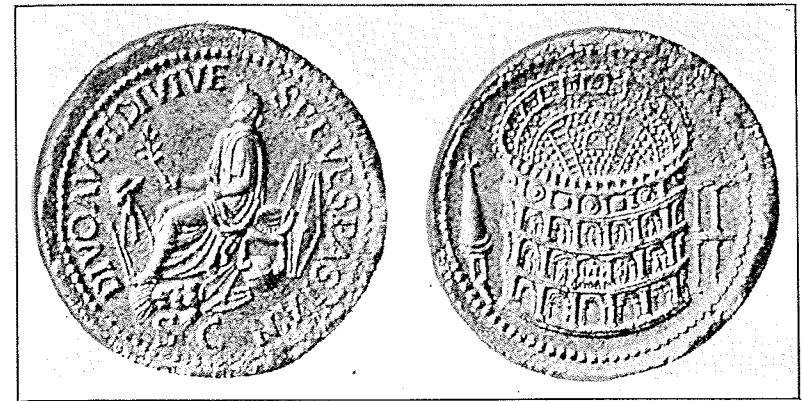
THE COLOSSEUM IN MINIATURE

These are the two sides of a large bronze coin issued by the Roman Senate in honor of the deified emperor Titus (79–81 A.D.). The seated figure represents Titus. On the reverse, the " tail " of the coin, is the Flavian amphitheater, often called the Colosseum. Titus was one of the three Flavian emperors.

The inscription, which you can read easily, is: DIVO AVG(usto) T(ito) DIVI VESP(asiani) F(ilio) VESPASIAN(o) S(enatus) C(onsulto). Lack of space made it usual then as now to abbreviate names and titles on coins. The letters within parentheses simply fill out the abbreviated forms.

shrewd emperors as any country ever had. Julius Caesar ranks with Alexander the Great and Napoleon as one of the three greatest soldiers of the world; but he is much greater than they because he was also a great statesman, an orator second in Rome only to Cicero, and one of the world's best writers of clear and flowing prose.

Rome left to the medieval and modern world a splendid legacy in her codes of law, her genius in politics, her methods of governmental administration, her monuments of everlasting stone and concrete, and best and greatest of all, her wonderful language.

CNS TATILIVS
CRESCENS
CRESCENTIANVS
VI·VIR·AVG· QQ·ET·CVRAT·ORDIN
AVGVSTAL·ET·VI·VIR·AVG·TVSCVLIS
FECIT·SIBI·ET·STATILIAE·ATALANTE·CONIVG
ET·LIB·LIBERT·POST·EOR·IN·F·P·XXI·IN·A·P·XXXII
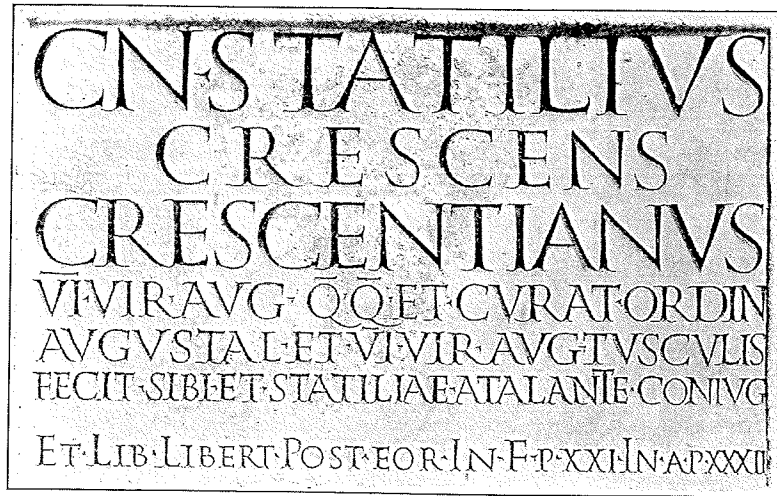
LETTERS CARVED NINETEEN CENTURIES AGO

Gnaeus Statilius Crescens Crescentianus, sevir Augustalis, quinquennalis and curator of the orders of the Augustales and sevir Augustalis at Tusculum made (this tomb) for himself and for his wife Statilia Atalanta and for their posterity both male and female. Twenty-one feet wide and thirty-two feet deep (is the burial lot). [Notice that the Latin does not mark quantities.]

4.   LINGVA LATĪNA

Latin can be adapted to wider usage and to finer distinctions than any other language except Greek. That in great part is because Latin is an inflected language; that is, its words are flexible, because changes can be made in their forms. The words in a Latin sentence can be put in any order you please; they cannot be misunderstood. By varying the order of the words in a sentence, therefore, there are opportunities for shifts in emphasis, for niceties of expression, for balancing of words or phrases, that no language other than an inflected one can attain. We ought to have a special interest in the Latin language because it has given us two-thirds of the words in our own language.
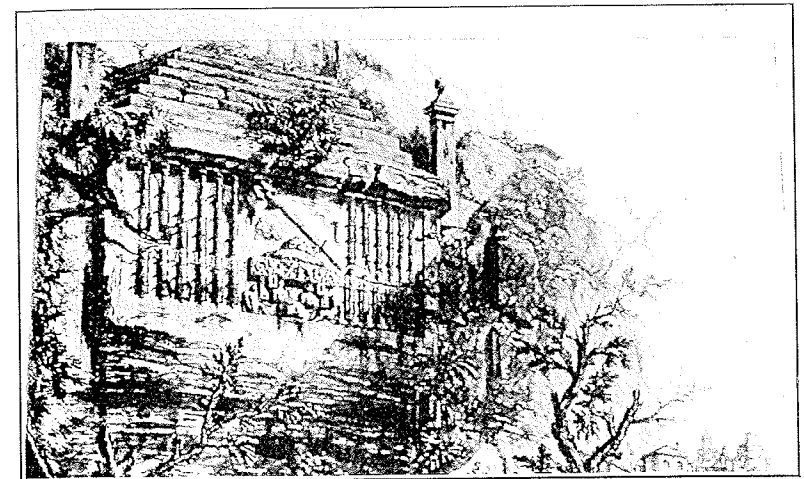
From an engraving by Piranesi   A CONSULAR TOMB

This is the tombstone of a Roman consul, which, nearly two thousand years ago, was cut in the solid rock of Mōns Albānus in the Alban Hills south of Rome. In the center is the official curule chair above which is the eagle-headed scepter. On either side are carved six complete fasces, *i.e.*, the ax and the bundle of rods, the insignia carried by the twelve lictors who always accompanied a consul in public.

The Latin language, sharp and perfectly adapted to an exact expression of ideas, may be compared to a valuable tool. The literature that has come down to us written in Latin may be thought of as a mine in which lie embedded the rich and varied experiences of a wonderful people. This mine will yield results rich in proportion to the efforts put forth to obtain them.

The riches of Latin cannot be gained through translation. An English translation of Latin is not so good as the original; it is not one-half so good. Some day you may read an English classic in a French or German translation. Then you will realize that there is a spirit in your mother tongue that eludes interpretation into another language; that there is a soul in it that defies
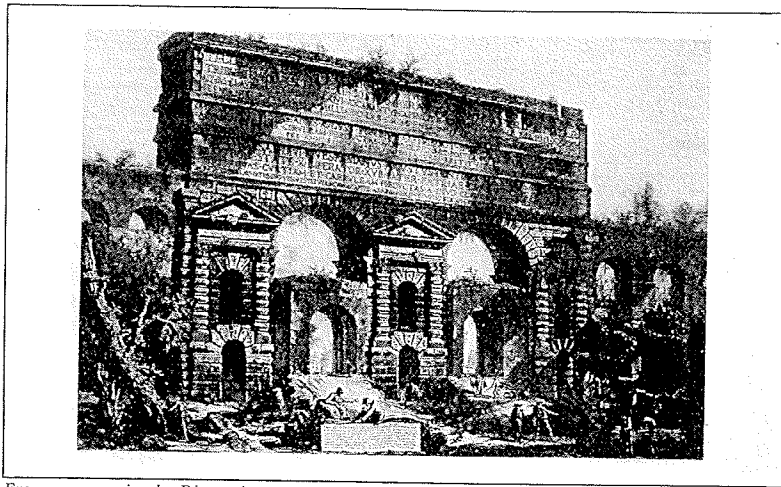
From an engraving by Piranesi

THE AQUEDUCT GATES

You can see at the top of the illustration remains of the three different water channels that were built, one above the other, on one row of arches, as Rome's population grew and needed more water. In the third century A.D., because of a threatened invasion of barbarians, the Roman emperor of that time built a new wall around the city. The need for haste was so great that all structures along the projected line of the wall were utilized as part of it, and so the arches of this triple aqueduct were bricked up nearly to the top. The two wider arches shown in the picture, which spanned Roman roads, were made much smaller.

translation. In learning to read Latin one gets the satisfaction that comes with the mastery of another language, as well as a feeling of understanding and of sympathy with a people long since dead, but, oddly enough, all the more alive.

5.   **WHY WE STUDY LATIN**

We ought to have good reasons for what we do. One's mother, or father, or friend, is sure to ask: " Why are you studying Latin? " Parents rightly wish their children to study the subjects that will do them the most good at the time and that
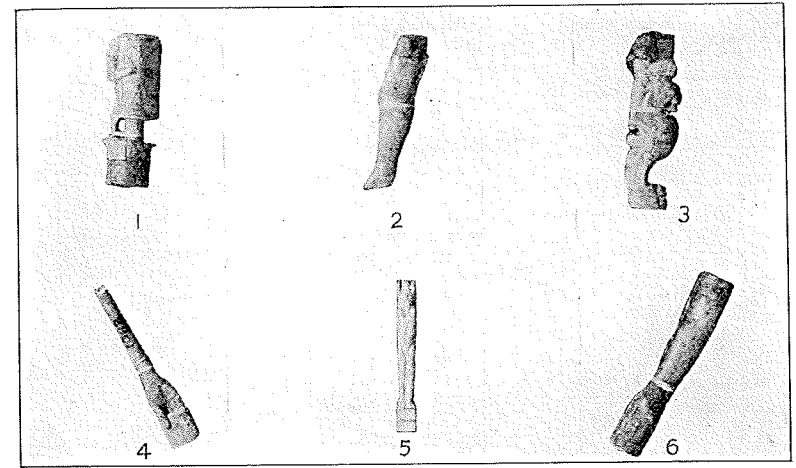
Courtesy of The Johns Hopkins Archaeological Museum

ROMAN POCKET KNIVES

Roman boys and men carried knives just as we do. The blades, however, were bronze. They took a very sharp edge, but needed honing oftener than our steel ones. The handles of these knives were very artistic; ours are more practical. The upper part of a blade can still be seen in the bone handle numbered 2. The blades were shut into the sheath just as is done today. Note the sheath in the bone arm of 6. Handle 1 is an ivory gladiator, 2 is a bone leg, 3 an ivory table leg, 4 and 6 are hands holding tablets, and 5 is an Atlas.

will be of the most service to them in later life. On these grounds there are excellent reasons for studying Latin.

There must indeed be good reasons for it, or millions of people would not have been talking, writing, and studying Latin for more than two thousand years. But if we do not know some of the reasons why we are studying it, then we cannot answer such a question fairly and squarely.

One's own language is one of the earliest, and at the same time one of the most priceless of one's possessions. For us, however, after our mother tongue, a knowledge of Latin is very useful and practicable. More than three-fifths of the words in the Eng-
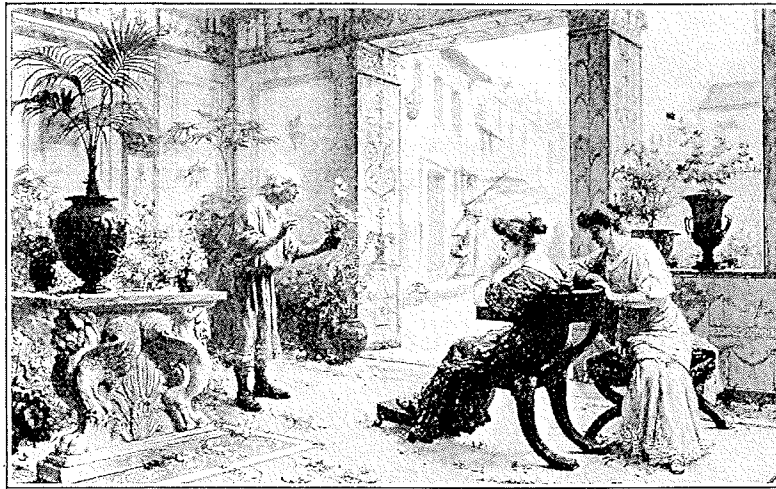
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

ROMAN FLORAS AND SICILIAN FLOWERS

Roman ladies loved flowers then as American ladies love them now.   They were also particular then, as now, in their choice of new varieties.   The florist has potted a species from Sicily and is explaining its merits to his two fair customers.

lish language are Latin or derived from Latin.   Almost every technical term in biology, botany, zoölogy, geology, and chemistry comes from Latin or Greek.   Most lawyers and doctors have studied Latin.   Law books are full of Latin phrases. Many doctors write their prescriptions in Latin.   The labels on bottles in drug stores are in Latin.   Latin is required by law in many states as a preparation for the study of law, medicine, and pharmacy.   Without Latin, the full meaning of most English words cannot be obtained; without Latin, the expression of clear and concise English is harder to attain.   The more Latin one knows, the better he can read, write, spell, and understand English.

English, as we have said, is made up of words nearly two-thirds of which are of Latin origin.   Nearly one-third of the
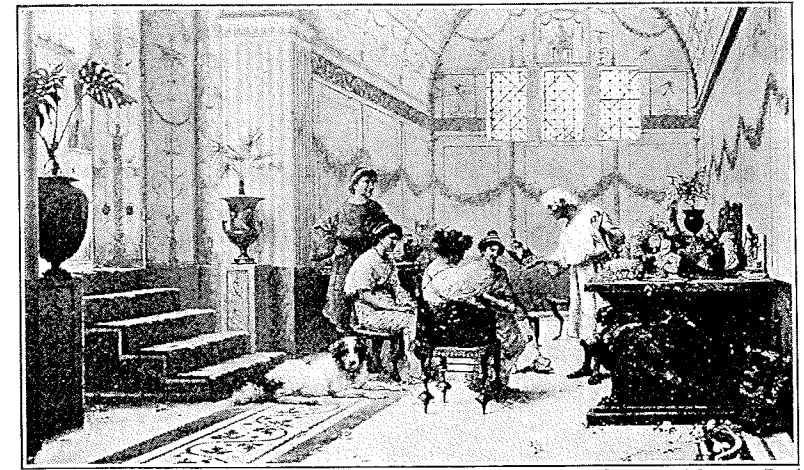
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

ANTIQUITIES FOR THE ANCIENTS

It takes imagination to realize that the ancient Romans of 2000 years ago were the moderns of their day.   They went to the sales exhibits of antiquities that had just arrived from Greece, Syria, or Egypt to see pieces of art as ancient for them as Roman antiquities now are for us.   Rover, *Errāns*, was nearly as common a house dog 2000 years ago as he is today.

rest are of Anglo-Saxon origin.   Anglo-Saxon has been called the *bone* of our language, and Latin its *brain*.   At all events, a knowledge of Latin, this language which has been used for more than two thousand years, helps us to spell, talk, write, and think.   As the *brain* of our speech, it is a great inheritance.   It can be said truthfully, therefore, that Latin is of great practical value.

6.   LATIN, ANCIENT BUT STILL IN USE

Since at least five hundred years before Christ, Latin has been in continuous use in many places throughout the civilized world, and as you have just learned, is still widely used.

7.   MĒNS SĀNA IN CORPORE SĀNŌ

The meaning of the Latin phrase above is *a sound mind in a sound body*. We can have a sound body and increase its physical power only by proper exercise; we can have a sound mind only by increasing its intellectual power with mental exercise. The study of Latin is a splendid mental exercise. While studying it, we are at the same time studying the life, customs, history, art, and ideals of a great people.

In Latin there is the stored-up experience of nearly a thousand years of history, science, medicine, literature, politics, engineering; the life, in fact, of a people who did big things in a big way, a people who have left for us a written inheritance from which we may choose the part that will enlarge our vision, store and exercise our minds, make profitable our leisure, make more profitable our labor, and make our lives richer.

In addition to what has been said about the deeds and the language of the Romans, it is interesting to know that they were real men and women of strong character, with human interests, eager minds, and social problems much like those of ours today. In fact, the Romans of two thousand years ago are more like us in most ways than any other people between their time and ours.

8.   THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN *

In Italy, France, and Germany Latin is pronounced as if it were Italian, French, or German. We used to pronounce Latin in this country as if it were English. Scholars of all countries were finally agreed as much as fifty years ago that the pronunciation of Latin, as the Romans themselves pronounced it, was pretty well known. The Roman pronunciation, therefore, has been adopted by most universities and colleges and by nearly all public and private schools. Some schools and colleges have preferred to keep the English or the Continental pronunciation.

* The teacher may prefer to use Sections 1-7 as an introductory lesson and the rest of this *opusculum* for later reference.

One way we recognize a foreigner is by the way he mispronounces English; the people of other countries likewise recognize us as foreigners by the way we mispronounce their languages. We cannot expect to pronounce Latin exactly as the Romans did; but with a little care we can learn to pronounce it very well. Think how badly many of us pronounce our own English! If we will remember a few things about the pronunciation of Latin, the rest will come by practice and imitation.

9.   PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

There is one way, and one way only, to arrive at the correct pronunciation of Latin in the quickest and easiest fashion. That way is to imitate aloud the pronunciation of your teacher. It makes no difference just now whether or not you understand the meaning of the Latin words. The main thing is to pronounce the Latin correctly. You should not try first by yourself to read the selections given here. You should wait until your teacher reads them for you, and be sure you have mastered the Latin sounds, accents, and quantities (quantity, as applied to Latin, refers to the length of syllables, whether written or spoken). Notice the little marks, like dashes, over many of the vowels in the following Latin. They show the quantity, that is to say, the length of those particular vowels.

" The last and largest single legacy of Rome " was the translation, called the Vulgate, of the Holy Bible by St. Jerome in 405 A.D. Let us begin our practice with :

THE TWENTY-THIRD PSALM

Dominus regit mē, et nihil mihi deerit;
 In locō pāscuae ibi mē collocāvit.

Super aquam refectiōnis ēdūcāvit mē :
 Animam meam convertit. Dēdūxit mē
super sēmitās iūstitiae, propter nōmen suum.

Nam, et sī ambulāverō in mediō umbrae
mortis, nōn timēbō mala : quoniam tū mēcum es.
Virga tua, et baculus tuus, ipsa mē cōnsōlāta sunt.

Parāstī in cōnspectū meō mēnsam, adversus eōs,
quī trībulant mē.   Impinguāstī in oleō caput meum :
et calīx meus inēbriāns quam praeclārus est !

Et misericordia tua subsequētur mē omnibus diēbus
vītae meae : Et ut inhabitem in domō Dominī, in
longitūdinem diērum.

All of us know *America*.   Therefore, in learning to pronounce
a Latin translation, it will be easy to match the Latin and Eng-
lish words.   The first and fourth stanzas are translated here for
practice in pronunciation.

AMERICA

Patria dulcis, lībertātis terra
   Tē, canō tē.
Terra ubi mortuī prōgenitōrēs,
Glōriae terra Peregrīnātōrum ;
Ex montis cuiusque lateribus
     nunc
   Resonet vērē lībertās.

Patrum auctōrī lībertātis Deō
   Canimus tē.
Splendida   terra   semper   sit
     nostra,
Sānctā cum lībertātis lūce,
Prōtege nōs vī Tuā, precāmur,
   Deus Māgne, Rēx noster.

10.   **HOW TO READ LATIN**

You can learn to read Latin just as you have learned to read
English in school.   In English, we begin with the simplest words
and sentences, and in successive years we advance step by step,
slowly, from English that is simple to English that is more
difficult.   That is exactly the way we should do in Latin.

You also learn to read Latin by reading more Latin.   That
can be done only if the reading grows harder gradually and not
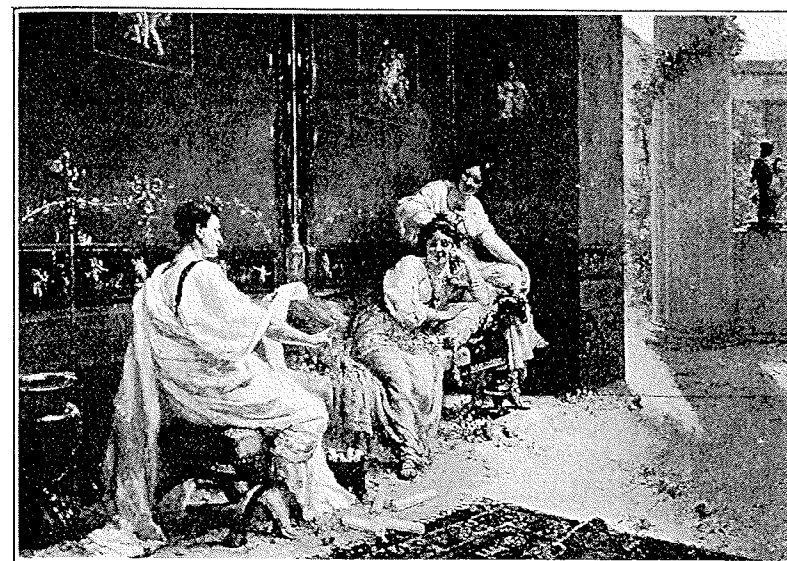
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
READING LATIN

A young Roman official is reading to his sister and sweetheart the fourth book
of Vergil's *Aeneid*, which contains the romantic and tragic love story of Dido,
queen of Carthage.   Four papyrus rolls lying on the floor contain the first three
books of the poem and one other book which he took by mistake out of the
library box.   The other books are still in the round box at the Roman's feet.

The youth and his sister are children of the family of the Vettii who lived in
Pompeii.   Beyond the column at the corner of the garden is a bronze fountain
piece, a little boy holding a duck, from the bill of which the water spouts.   On
the wall back of the left shoulder of the young man are painted four Cupids who
wear butterflies' wings and who are driving fawns in a mimic chariot race.

by leaps or bounds, and if the text in Latin contains material
of such interest that you are eager to read more.   Interest can
be aroused, quickened and increased if the life and times of
those wonderful Romans are made vivid by the use of pictures.
We will all read more Latin if we begin with easy and interesting
stories and progress through reading matter which becomes
harder very gradually, but which, at all events, remains interest-
ing matter.

You should read Latin as Roman girls and boys did. They read each phrase as they came to it. There is no sentence in correct Latin that will not give up its meaning if its words and phrases are taken in order one at a time as you reach them.

When you read Latin you should put your mind on it. You will find that you know a great many Latin words, because they are either so nearly like English words of the same meaning, or exactly the same; e.g., **poēta,** *poet*; **error,** *error*. In the stories you will find the meanings of other Latin words given in English below the words to which they refer. The meanings of others will be found in the vocabularies. You should learn the words in each vocabulary, as you go along.

The sure way of being successful in the study of Latin is to learn each day's lesson thoroughly. If you keep your mind on your work while you are studying, and prepare your work every day, and not part of the time, you will be successful. If you will do this, then you are made of the same stuff as those old Romans, who became lords of the world, because they were not afraid of work, and because they never gave up what they had set out to do. A phrase of the Roman poet Vergil bears exactly on this point. He said **possunt quia posse videntur,** *they can, because they believe they can.*

11.   THE LATIN ALPHABET

Alphabet. The Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters:

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z

The letters *I* and *V* each did duty for the sound both of vowel and consonant. In the middle ages two other letters were introduced: *J* for the sound of *I*-consonant, and *U* for the sound of *V*-vowel. Latin had no *W*. In fact, the Latin alphabet had only twenty-one letters until the time of Cicero, when *Y* and *Z* were

introduced in order to be able to spell properly words from Greek, which had *upsilon* and *zeta* (= *Y* and *Z*) in its alphabet.

Vowels. The Latin vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u** (y). These vowels differ in *quality*, *quantity*, and *sound*. Those uttered in the back of the mouth, **a, o,** and **u,** are called *open* vowels; those uttered in the front of the mouth, **e, i** (y), are called *close* vowels. The *quality, open* and *close*, refers to the position of the organs of speech.

Quantity refers to the time taken in pronunciation. Vowels are said, therefore, to be *long* or *short*. In theory one should take twice the time of a short vowel in pronouncing a long one. We find it hard to do, but the Romans did not. For example, a Roman had to pronounce **māla, maala,** because if he said **mala,** he would have been talking about *evils*, not *apples*.

There was practically no difference in sound between long **ā** and short **a.** The latter was simply pronounced more quickly. But there was a difference between the long and the short sounds of the other vowels.

In this book, long vowels are indicated by a long mark (-) over them; short vowels are unmarked.

The sounds of the Latin vowels may be distinguished thus:

Lat.	*Eng.*	*Latin*		*Lat.*	*Eng.*
ā =	*a* in father	⟶ FĀMA	⟵	a =	*a* in *a*long
ē =	*e* in th*ey*	⟶ SĒDE	⟵	e =	*e* in d*e*ck
ī =	*i* in capr*i*ce	⟶ RĪSIT	⟵	i =	*i* in s*i*t
ō =	*o* in c*o*ne	⟶ CŌNOR	⟵	o =	*o* in n*o*r
ū =	*u* in r*u*de	⟶ RŪDUS	⟵	u =	*u* in p*u*ll

Diphthongs. Two vowels sounded as one syllable are called a diphthong. Diphthong means *double sound*. The Romans of the time of Cicero and Vergil pronounced each sound sepa-

rately, but as pronunciation became faster or more careless, both vowels tended to run together, and become slurred almost into a single sound.

ae = *ai* in *ai*sle	eu = *eh-oo* pronounced quickly
au = *ow* in c*ow*	oe = *oy* in b*oy*
ei = *ei* in r*ei*n	ui = *oo-ee* pronounced quickly *

Consonants. Most of the Latin consonants are sounded as in English. There are, however, the following important exceptions:

c and ch are always sounded like *k*, or like *c* in *c*all, *i.e.*, with a hard sound.

g has always a hard sound, as in *g*et.

i-consonant (*j*) has the sound of *y* in *y*et.

s and x have a hissing sound, as in *sex*.

t has always a hard sound, as in na*t*ive; never as in na*t*ion.

v has the sound of *w*.

The two Latin consonants that cause the most trouble are the two that can be explained in a very clear and interesting way. These consonants are c and v.

Let us take the names of the three Latin literary men, some of whose writings are read in the second, third, and fourth years of preparatory schools or high schools, namely, Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil. The Romans pronounced their names, *Kaisar*, *Kikero*, and *Wergilius* (or *Ooergilius*). How do we know? Because we have a number of Greek inscriptions that were made while those men were alive, or shortly afterwards, in which an attempt was made to write, according to Greek pronunciation, the exact sounds of those Latin names. Greek has been a spoken and written language from long before the Christian era until today, and most of its consonantal sounds have always been the same.

* Compare cui (*kwee*) and French *oui* (*wee*).

Therefore, when we have the Roman word Caesar spelled in Greek as *Kaisar*, Cicero as *Kikeron*, and Vergilius as *Ouergilios*, we have the clear proof that Latin c sounded like *k*, and that Latin v sounded like *oo* or *w*.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

A ROMAN BO-PEEP

1. Exiit dīlūculō
rūstica puella
cum grege, cum baculō,
cum lānā novellā.

2. Sunt in grege parvulō
ovis et asella,
vitula cum vitulō,
caper et capella.

3. Cōnspexit in caespite
scolārem sedēre:
"Quid tū facis, domine?
Venī mēcum lūdere!"

This poem tells us that a farmer's daughter took her father's flock to pasture; a sheep, a donkey, calves, and goats. She probably forgot all about them, because, as the poem says, when she saw a scholar sitting on the turf, she said: "*What are you doing, Professor? Come and play with me!*"

The Romans also wrote and spoke Latin in which the sound was suited to the sense of the sentence.

For example, the Roman poet Horace wrote the following line which represented whispering, both in sense and in sound:

Strīdere sēcrētā dīvīsōs aure susurrōs,
Secret whispers stole buzzing into listening ears.

Three other lines of the same sort are:

Cucūlī cuculant et rauca cicāda fritinnit,
The cuckoos cuckoolate and the cicada raucously crickets.

At tuba terribilī sonitū taratantara dīxit,
But the tuba with a terrific blast, blared out, taratantara.

Quadrupedante putrem sonitū quatit ungula campum,
"And shake with horny hoofs the solid ground." (*Dryden*)

Thus do we, in practicing the pronunciation of Latin, gain an unforgettable idea of some of the ways the Romans loved to play with words.

There are quite a number of Latin palindromes. Palindrome, an English derivative from Greek, means *running back the same way*. The best short example is sī nummī, immūnis, which reads the same way backward as forward. The translation is, *if* (you have enough) *of money,* (you will be) *immune* (from the law). It is what a lawyer is supposed to have said to a client. This is a " joke " sentence, of course, gotten up because it made a palindrome.

Another palindrome on which you can practice pronunciation is : Anna tenet mappam, madidam mappam tenet Anna, *Anna holds a towel, a wet towel Anna holds.*

R	O	T	A	S
O	P	E	R	A
T	E	N	E	T
A	R	E	P	O
S	A	T	O	R

The most interesting thing of this sort is a table, shown here, of five words which was found many years ago at Cirencester, England, scratched on a piece of ancient wall-plaster. Each of the words can be found four times.

The translation of the words is, *Arepo, the sower, holds the wheels at work.*

T	I	M	E
I	T	E	M
M	E	T	I
E	M	I	T

There is at least one English word of four letters, *time*, which can be used in this same way, and which, when pronounced ti′mē, is a Latin imperative that in English means *be afraid!*

All four words are Latin, but they do not make a Latin sentence.

The Romans loved to play with words, just as we do. They had a saying that meant doing something *with love, by habit, with voice and deed,* which was popular because of the clever way one began with the first word and then cut off the first letter of each word as one went along : amōre, mōre, ōre, rē.

We say " a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush." The Roman made a rhyme with his similar saying,

| Est avis in dextrā | *A bird in the hand* |
| Melior quam quattuor extrā | *Beats four out of hand* |

The Romans also made many verses in which the words all began with the same letter, as the English line " apt alliteration's artful aid " will explain. Several such alliterative (= letters alike) Roman lines are :

Fer firmē, facilis fīet fortūna ferendō,
Bear yourself firmly, and good fortune will follow easily.

Machina multa mināx minitātur maxima mūrīs,
Many a huge threatening engine of war threatens the walls.

In learning to pronounce Latin there is no reason why we should not enjoy it as we go along. Therefore, as your teacher pronounces Latin sentences for you to imitate, notice how the Romans played with words, how their common sayings hit the point, and how easily they could talk to one another.

The Roman poet Juvenal wrote, Cum poscēs, poscēs Latīnē, *When you ask, ask in Latin.* You will be surprised how easily you can learn to say to one another many Latin sentences; almost as easily as you can French or German sentences. When you are asked to come to dinner at someone's house and cannot go, you can say : *Please excuse me, I beg of you, but I'm dining at home;* in Latin, Excūsātum habeās mē rogō, cēnō domī. The English in italics is not an exact word for word, or literal, trans-

Courtesy of The Johns Hopkins Archaeological Museum

THERE WERE ROMAN DOCTORS IN THOSE DAYS

Tiberius Claudius Eunus was the cradle companion, **cūnārius,** of the Emperor Nero, and Tiberius Iulius Secundus was an ear doctor, **medicus auriculārius.**

lation of the Latin. It is not meant to be literal. But it says in polite English what the very polite Latin sentence means. If you learn to pronounce this polite excuse, you may be sure you will be saying the right thing in the right way, whether or not you can translate the Latin exactly. Or if you want one of your friends to come to your house tomorrow, say, **Ōrō tē, amīce, ut crās ad mē veniās,** which is, exactly, in literal English, *I beg you, (my) friend, that you will come tomorrow to me (to my house).*

Practice not only makes perfect, but it increases speed. If you know some Latin words and sentences, why not practice them? Why be as " silent as the grave," as we say, or, as the Roman said, *more mute (dumb) than a fish,* **magis mūtus quam piscis?** You can learn to use simple Latin phrases " in the twinkling of an eye," as we say, or as the Roman said, *quicker than asparagus can be cooked,* **vēlōcius quam asparagī coquantur.**

TWO WORD PUZZLES

Ultrō nōlō loquī, sed dō respōnsa loquentī.

Voluntarily I am unwilling to speak, but I give replies to the speaking one.

Mordeō mordentēs, ultrō nōn mordeō quemquam;
Sed sunt mordentem multī mordēre parātī:
Nēmō timet morsum, dentēs quia nōn habeō ūllōs.

I bite the biters, voluntarily I bite no one; but many are ready to bite the biter; no one fears the bite, because I have no teeth.

From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

A ROMAN STREET

II

OPUSCULUM SECUNDUM

12.   VIA

In viā est cisterna. In cisternā est aqua. Clāra hydriam
     well   pitcher
portat. Galba Clārae aquam dat. Stella stat et Clāram
             to Clara
spectat.

Read this story aloud after your teacher. Try to get the
meaning of each sentence directly from the Latin by referring to
the objects and actions in the picture as they are pointed out by
your teacher. Read the story a second time, referring to the
vocabulary. Then translate the story into good English.

In reading Latin be sure to pronounce every letter. You
should give a long vowel about twice as much time in pronunci-
ation as a short vowel. A Roman girl or boy took nearly twice as
much time to pronounce the first **a** in **Clāra** as the second **a**.

24

Latin words of two syllables are always accented on the first
one. The accents are marked in this *opusculum* and the two
following *opuscula*. Thereafter, words of two syllables will not
be divided into syllables or accented.

13.   VOCABULARY

Pronounce these words after your teacher. With the aid of
your teacher you can learn how to pronounce Latin vowels and
consonants.

a′qua	water	dat	gives
vi′a	street, road	est	is
Clā′ra	Clara	por′tat	carries
Gal′ba	Galba	spec′tat	looks at
Stel′la	Stella	stat	stands

14.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The Noun. A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing;
for example, **aqua,** *water*. The name of a particular person or
place is called a proper noun; for example, **Clāra,** *Clara;* **Rōma,**
Rome.

The Verb. A verb is a word that tells what some person or
thing does or is; for example, **dat,** *gives;* **est,** *is;* **portat,** *carries*.

The Sentence. A sentence must express a complete thought,
and it consists usually of at least two parts, a noun and a verb.

    Examples: The man drives   Galba stands
             The pigeons fly   The boys play

The noun about which something is said is called the *subject*,
and is in the *nominative case;* the verb, which tells what the
subject does, is called the *predicate*. No matter how short a
sentence may be, it must always have these two parts, the
subject and the *predicate*.

Learning Latin. In learning a language not your mother tongue, it is necessary to learn the words of that language and their meanings. The lessons in this book, therefore, will contain lists of Latin words with their meanings in English. Such a list is called a vocabulary. If you learn these words thoroughly, you will be able to read Latin stories without using a dictionary. You will find you can remember the meaning of a Latin word much more easily if you associate with it an English word that is related to it in spelling and in meaning. Two good ways to test yourself are:

1. Cover the English meanings, and then see if you can give them while looking at the Latin.

2. Cover the Latin words, and then see if you can say them while looking at the English.

15.   EXERCISE

Translate into English:

Stella Clāram spectat.   Galba dat.   Aqua est in cisternā.

Write in Latin:

Stella stands.   Clara looks at Stella.

16.   WORD STUDY

With what words in the vocabulary are *aquarium, data, porter*, and *spectacle* connected?

A JOVIAL FACE OF YORE
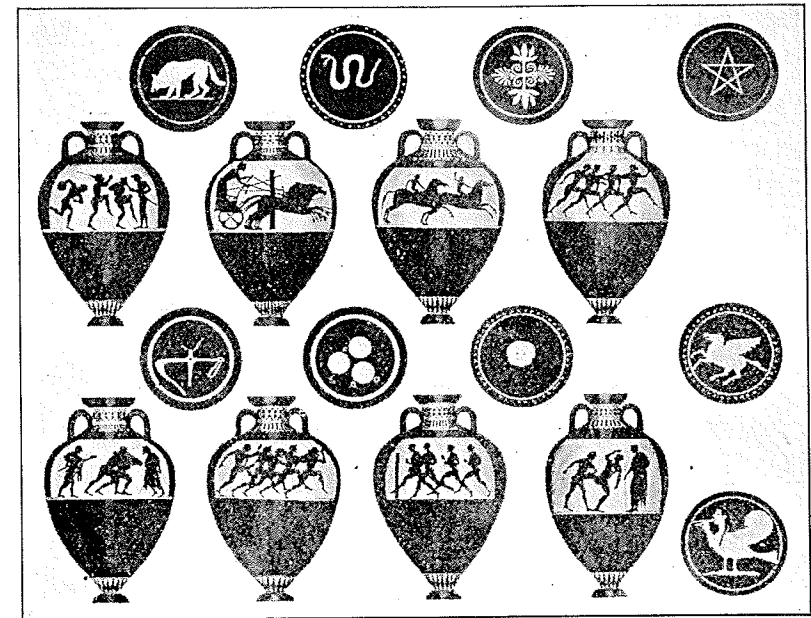
PANATHENAIC VASES

A beautifully painted vase was given to every winner in the All-Athenian games. On one side of it was painted an Athena. On the other side an athletic event was depicted. A certain American coach of a college track team was shown the photographs of the running races on the vase at the right end of the upper row and the two vases in the middle of the lower row. The coach did not know the photographs were of paintings made 2500 years ago. He said without hesitation that the young men on the vase on the upper row were running "the 220," those on the second vase from the left in the lower row, the 100-yard dash, and those on the next vase, the mile. He could tell by the "form" which, as you can see, was as well known two thousand five hundred years ago as it is today.

From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

MUSIC AT A ROMAN VILLA

III

OPUSCULUM TERTIUM

HODIĒ, NŌN CRĀS

Do it now is one way of saying in English this Latin phrase which means, literally: *today, not tomorrow.* The Roman poet Horace said nearly the same thing in his famous phrase **carpe diem,** *seize the day.*

17.   POĒTA CANTAT

Vīlla alba prope aquam stat. Fēminae vīllam amant.
                near
Poēta et puella stant, fēminae sedent. Puella est pulchra.
                                          sit
Poēta poēma cantat. Fēminae poētam spectant.

18.   VOCABULARY

You cannot read without words. If you learn thoroughly each word in each vocabulary, as you go along, you can read your Latin easily. By reviewing thoroughly every day the last vocabulary you learned, you will not be likely to forget any words.

28

You will see that the four nouns in this vocabulary end in -a. This is the ending of Latin nouns of the *first declension* in the nominative singular.

fē′mi na woman	pul′chra pretty
po ē′ta poet	a′mant love
pu el′la girl	can′tat sings
vīl′la villa, country-house	sunt are
al′ba white	et and

19. With what letter did every noun in the vocabulary of the last lesson end? For the present we are going to study only those nouns that end in -a in the nominative singular.

To make most English nouns plural, we add -*s* to the singular; for example, *girl* (singular), *girls* (plural). In Latin, all nouns of the first declension that end in -a in the nominative singular end in -ae in the nominative plural.

Singular	*Plural*
pu el′la *girl*	pu el′lae *girls*

20. With what letter did every Latin verb in the last lesson end? The ending of every Latin verb in the third person singular active is -t; the ending for the third person plural active is -nt. These are called *personal endings*.

po ē′ta can′tat	*the poet sings*
po ē′tae can′tant	*the poets sing*

21. Omission of the Subject Noun. In Latin it is not always necessary to have a subject expressed. **Vocat,** for example, may be a complete sentence, because -t shows that the verb is third person singular. Therefore **vocat,** if there is no noun in the nominative case, means *he calls*, or *she calls*, or *it calls*. In the same way, **vocant** may be a sentence meaning *they call*. So you see the ending of a verb often shows what the subject may be.

22. The Adjective. An adjective is a word that describes a erson, place, or thing; for example, *pretty, white.* Compare 1ese English and Latin phrases:

a pretty girl	pu el′la pulchra
pretty girls	pu el′lae pulchrae

Observe that in English the adjective *pretty* does not change its 3elling when it becomes plural, but that in Latin the spelling f **pulchra** does change. Remember then, that when you use noun in the nominative plural, the adjective that modifies it 1ust be in the nominative plural also. Notice that in Latin n adjective usually follows the noun it modifies.

23. Quantity. In this book long vowels will be marked to how that they are long; but short vowels will be left unmarked.

24.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. What is the ending of the nominative plural of nouns in **-a**? . What is the ending of the third person plural of verbs in this :sson? **3.** Explain how one word can be a sentence in Latin. . With what do Latin adjectives agree? How does this affect their ndings? **5.** Translate: vīlla pulchra, vīllae pulchrae; via alba, iae albae; poēta cantat; puella stat; puella et poēta stant.

25.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write in Latin: pretty girls; white villas; pretty streets.

Complete: **1.** Puellae bonae sta—.   **2.** Poēta (*sings*).   **3.** Puella ulchra (*is*).   **4.** Fēminae pulchr— (*are*).

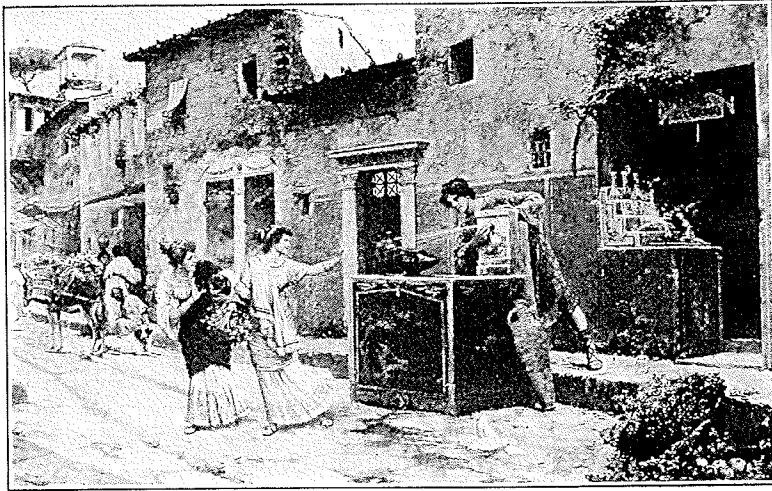**26.**   WORD STUDY

With what words in the vocabulary are *album, amiable, cantata,* and *?minine* connected?

IMPERIAL ROMAN MONEY

Coins 1 and 2 are the obverse and reverse of a gold coin of Caesar Augustus; 3 and 4 show Agrippina, and a state coach, *carpentum.* The others are: Galba (5), Vitellius (6), Domitian (7), Trajan (9), Hadrian (10), and Sabina, Hadrian's wife (11).

From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti
NOTHING NEW UNDER THE SUN

IV

OPUSCULUM QUĀRTUM

EGO SUM RĒX RŌMĀNUS ET SUPER GRAMMATICAM

At the Council of Constance in 1418 A.D., the Emperor Sigismund spoke in Latin, which was the international language. His Latin, however, was so faulty that a Cardinal corrected him. The reply of the emperor was the Latin sentence above. The Cardinal probably said — under his breath — **Novus rēx, nova lēx,** *a new king, a new law.*

27.   NIHIL SUB SŌLE NOVĪ

In hāc pictūrā viam vidēmus. Via longa nōn est. In viā
　this　　　　　　　we see

puer, duae columbae, porta, duae puellae, casae multae sunt.
　boy　　two

Puellae sunt Cornēlia et Iūlia, puer est Mārcus. Puellae vocant,

" Dā nōbīs aquam ! " Mārcus aquam dat. Columbae aquam
　give　us

amant. Cūr Cornēlia et Iūlia aquam nōn amant?
　why

32

---

28.   VOCABULARY

ca′sa house	por′ta door
co lum′ba dove	lon′ga long
Cor nē′li a Cornelia	mul′tae many (*pl. adj.*)
Iū′li a Julia	nōn not
Mār′cus Marcus	in in

29.   NOTE ON THE MOTTO

Ego sum rēx Rōmānus, etc.: in many of the lessons in this book you will find beneath the lesson headings a Latin motto or sentence. Usually some word or words in the motto will illustrate the grammar of the lesson. Sometimes it will also apply to the picture. The translation of the Latin sentence used here is *I am the Roman king and above grammar.*

30.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The direct object of a verb is the noun or pronoun that receives the action of the verb. For example, in the sentence *he sees the boy, boy* is the object of the verb *sees.* In English, the object is said to be in the objective case.

In the story, notice the words **viam** in line 1, and **aquam** in line 4, fifth word. **Viam** is the object of the verb **vidēmus**; **aquam** is the object of the verb **dat.** In what two letters do these nouns end? Find in the story three other instances of **aquam** used as object of a verb.

In Latin, the direct object of a verb is in the *accusative case.*

Nouns of the first declension that end in -a in the nominative singular end in -am in the accusative singular.

In line 3 of the story, what is the subject of **sunt?** What is the subject of **est?** In what case are **Cornēlia, Iūlia, Mārcus?** How are these three nouns used? Why is it correct to say " It is he," not, " It is him "? In Latin, as in English, a predicate noun is in the *nominative case.*

31. ORAL EXERCISE

1. In what case is the direct object of a verb? 2. If a noun ends in -a in the nominative singular, what is its ending in the accusative singular? 3. What case is used in the predicate with the verbs est and sunt?

Translate: 1. Casa est alba, casae sunt albae; via est longa, viae sunt longae. 2. In pictūrā sunt portae multae. 3. Mārcus puellam vocat. 4. Puella columbam amat.

32. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete the following sentences: 1. Columba aqu— amat. 2. Cornēlia est puell— pulchra. 3. Cornēlia et Iūliā sunt puell— bonae. 4. Columbae alb— sunt in viā. 5. Viam long— et cas— alb— vidēmus.

33. WORD STUDY

With what words in the vocabulary are *multitude* and *portal* connected?

AN EVERLASTING ADVERTISEMENT

A Roman building contractor, before he died, modeled his own mausoleum. It was to be built like a temple. Perhaps it was a copy of some temple he himself had built. He advertised his business by having carved on the bas-relief a derrick, with ropes and pulleys, and the big wooden wheel below in which, to get lifting power, men walked around like squirrels in a tread-mill cage.
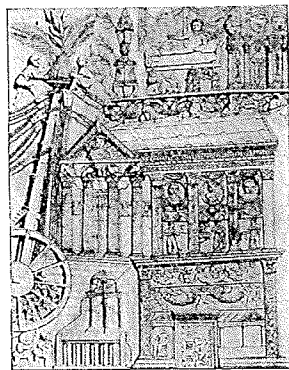
TOILET ARTICLES IN BRONZE

The pins numbered 4, 5, and 6 were used by Roman women in their hair. Numbers 2, 3, and 10 are tweezers; 8 is a combination piece, an ear pick and a nail cleaner. The lunular, or moon-shaped piece 7, is a razor. It can be used today. It takes as sharp an edge as steel, but needs to be stropped more often. Numbers 1 and 9 may be called bath towels of antiquity. Before taking exercise the body was rubbed with oil. After exercising, the oil and the dust that had collected on it were scraped off before one could go into the pool or shower of clear water. These scrapers, 1 and 9, were called *strigilēs*, strigils.
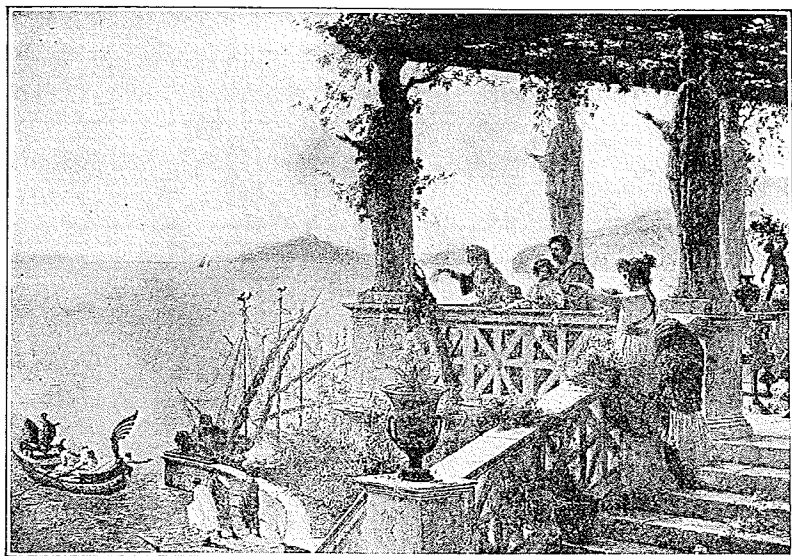
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

GALBA RETURNS HOME

V

OPUSCULUM QUĪNTUM

AD CALENDĀS GRAECĀS

The *calends* was the first day of the Roman month. As the Greeks did not have a corresponding word, to promise to do something *on the Greek calends* was the polite way of saying *never*. The corresponding German saying is: **Zu Sanct-Nimmerstag**, *To St. Never's Day.*

34.   VĪLLA PULCHRA IN ĪTALIĀ

In ōrā maritimā vīlla pulchra est. Nāvicula ad ōram
_{seashore} _{boat}
appropinquat. In nāviculā Galba et nautae sunt. Prō
_{sailors} _{Before}
vīllā statuās, puellās, fēminam, puerum vidēmus. Fēmina et
_{boy} _{we see}
puellae statuās nōn spectant sed nāviculam spectant. Galbam
_{but}
5 salūtant. Fēmina est māter bona Galbae et puellārum. Fēmina
_{wave to} _{mother} _{of the girls}

36

et puellae sunt Rōmānae. Vīlla in Ītaliā est. Laetae sunt fēmina et puellae quod Galba domī est.
_{at home}

35.   VOCABULARY

Ī ta′li a Italy   Rō mā′na Roman
bona good   ap pro pin′quat comes near
laeta happy, glad   ad to (*prep. with accusative*)
       quod because (*conj.*)

36.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

Notice **sta′tu ās**, line 3. It is in the plural and is the direct object of **vidēmus**. Find two other nouns in the story which end in **-ās**. How is each one used? Nouns that end in **-a** in the nominative singular end in **-am** in the accusative singular, and in **-ās** in the accusative plural.

Predicate Adjectives. In the last lesson you learned that a noun used in the predicate with **est** or **sunt** is in the nominative case, as in English. An adjective used in the predicate with **est** or **sunt** is called a *predicate adjective*. It agrees with the subject in case and, therefore, in a simple sentence is in the *nominative*. Example: **fē′mi na est laeta,** *the woman is happy;* **puellae sunt pulchrae,** *the girls are beautiful* (668).

Observe **laetae**, line 1, this page. It is a predicate adjective in the nominative plural. Can you tell why it is plural?

Division of Words into Syllables. There are three easy rules for dividing Latin words into syllables:

1. A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: **ō′ra, ma ri′ti ma.**

2. In the case of a doubled consonant, the two consonants are separated: **pu el′lae.**

3. Two or more consonants between vowels are usually separated after the first consonant; but a consonant followed by **l**

but pa'tri a, *native land.* This rule does not apply to compound words, which grammarians syllabify as if their parts were separate words, for example, quad rī'ga. Your teacher will help you to tell whether a word is compound or not.

37.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. What is the ending of the accusative plural of nouns ending in -a in the nominative singular?   2. What is a predicate adjective?   3. In what case is it?   4. Give three rules for dividing Latin words into syllables.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Ubi (*where*) est vīlla pulchra?   In Ī ta'li ā est vīlla pulchra.   2. Quid (*what*) māter videt?   Nā vi'cu lam et nautās māter videt.   3. Quid videt Mārcus?   Vīllam et fē'mi nās videt Mārcus.   4. Ubi nautae sunt?   In nā vi'cu lā nautae sunt.

38.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Divide the following words into syllables, applying the rules given above: graviōre, commōtus, perīculum, cōnfecta, templum.

Complete the following sentences: 1. Puellae nautās salūta—.   2. Fē-mina (*the sailors*) spectat.   3. Naut— ad ōram ap pro pin'quant.   4. Mārcus (*the women*) salūtat.   5. Prō vīllā sunt statu— pulchr—.   6. Puell— nā vi'cu lam spectant.
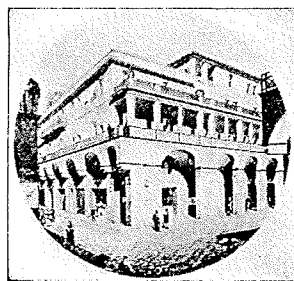
AN ANCIENT APARTMENT HOUSE

This beautiful figure in marble, called the Di ā'na of Ga'bi ī, shows the costume of an upper-class Roman girl. The two large one-piece garments can be seen here. When a girl had put on the under garment, she was dressed. It was draped in such a way that it made a sort of combination blouse and skirt. The skirt, which usually hung almost to the ankles, could be tucked up, and held by a belt, as it is here, to give free movement for walking. The outer garment was so cut that when fastened over the shoulder with a brooch or button it hung in graceful folds. This was the formal or street dress as contrasted with the under garment, which was a house or country dress.
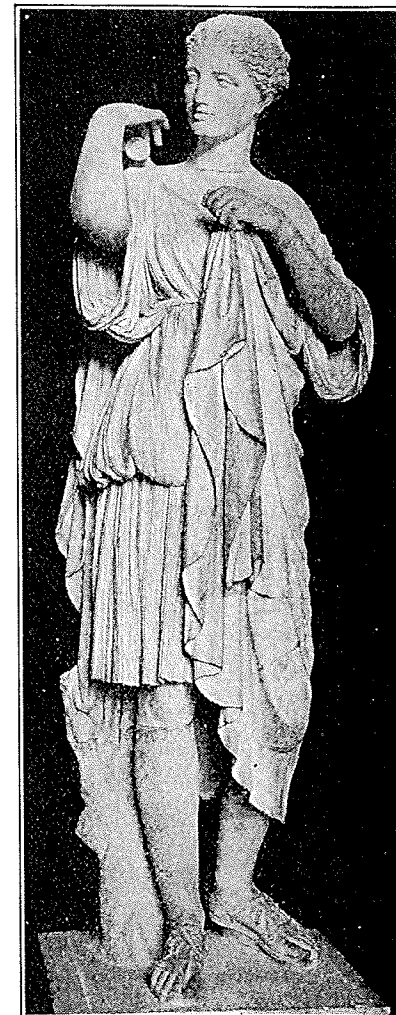
Louvre, Paris
A MAIDEN GODDESS
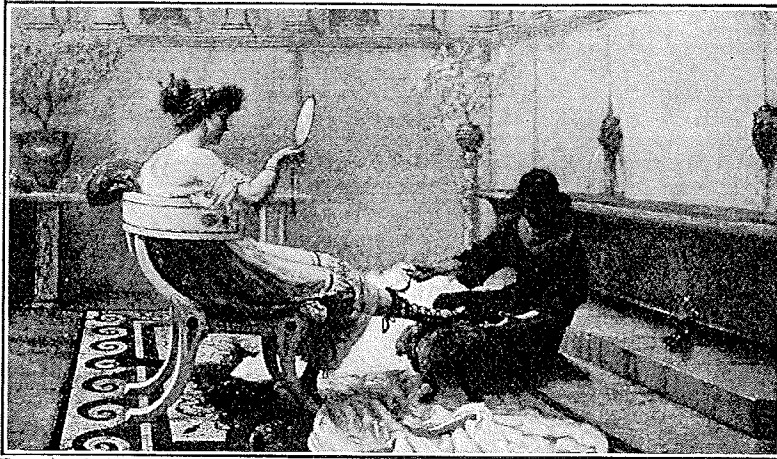
From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

THE MIRROR TALKS

VI

OPUSCULUM SEXTUM

DUX VĪTAE RATIŌ

The guide of life is common sense. The verb *est*, *is*, is understood. In short mottoes the verb is usually omitted. Each word in this motto suggests a familiar English word. A *duke* was a leader or guide; *vital* has to do with life; *rational* means sensible.

39. DOMINA PULCHRA ET BONA

In hāc pictūrā Cornēliam, fēminam pulchram Rōmānam, et
  this
Libyam, servam nigram Cornēliae vidēmus. Patria Cornēliae
         black
est Ītalia; patria Libyae est Āfrica. Cornēlia est domina
Libyae. Fēminae multae Rōmānae servās habēbant. Servae
                             had
fēminārum Rōmānārum nōn erant semper laetae. Dominae
                 were
nōn semper erant bonae. Vīta servārum dominae asperae
                                     harsh
erat misera.
was

Cornēlia in sellā pulchrā sedet et sē in speculō spectat.
         chair   sits   herself   mirror
Libya dominam vestit. In Āmēricā, patriā meā, servae nōn
           dresses
sunt. Nunc neque in Āmēricā neque in Ītaliā servae sunt.
     now   neither   nor

40.   VOCABULARY

A mē′ri ca America	vīta life
do′mi na mistress	mea my
pa′tri a native land	mi′se ra wretched
serva slave girl	semper always
-ne * (*attached to a word in a sentence makes it a question*)	

41.   SPOT LIGHTS ON THE LESSON

In this story, **Domina Pulchra et Bona,** we learn a Latin way of expressing possession. It is expressed by the case ending -ae in the singular and -ārum in the plural. **Cor nē′li ae** means *of Cornelia,* or *Cornelia's;* **fē mi nā′rum** means *of the women,* or *women's.* In Latin, the case of possession is called the *genitive.* What other case has the same ending as the genitive singular? Find in the story three other genitive singulars and one other genitive plural.

Fē mi nā′rum in line 5 is modified by the adjective **Rō mā nā′rum.** See how many adjectives you can find which have the same endings as the nouns they modify.

42.   ORAL EXERCISE

What idea does the genitive case express? Give the singular and the plural endings for the genitive case of **domina.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Est′-ne vīta ser vā′rum laeta? Vīta ser vā′rum mul tā′rum est mi′se ra. 2. Erant′-ne [1] servae fē mi nā′rum Rō mā nā′rum semper mi′se rae? Servae

---

* When -ne is attached to a word, the accent is always given to the syllable immediately before it.

do mi nā'rum bo nā'rum nōn erant mi'se rae.   3. Cu'ius (*whose*)
pa'tri a est Ī ta'li a?   Cor nē'li ae pa'tri a est Ī ta'li a.   4. Cuius
do'mi na est Cor nē'li a?   Libyae do'mi na est Cor nē'li a.

43.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: 1. Cor nē'li a est do'mi na serv— bon—.   2. Fē'mi-
nae Rō mā'nae erant do'mi nae serv— mult—.   3. Fē'mi nae
A mē'ri c— servās nōn habent.   4. Servae domin— bo nā'rum
sunt laetae.   5. Servae domin— asper— nōn amant.   6. Libya
est laeta, quod do'mi na est bon—.

44.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *dominate, miserable, patri-
otic, servant,* and *vital* derived?

Domina, *mistress, lady,* has many descendants in modern languages.
In Italian the word for lady is *donna.   Madonna,* i.e., my lady, is the
title usually given to the Virgin Mary.   In French, **domina** became
dame, which means lady ; *madame,* my lady, is also used for Mrs.
In English, *dame* and *madam* came from Latin through French.

### 45.   LATIN IN ENGLISH

Note the words of Latin origin in the opening sentences of the
Declaration of Independence, given below.   Read the passage
aloud, omitting the italicized words.   How much sense does it
make without the words of Latin ancestry?

> " When in the *course* of *human events* it becomes *nec-
> essary* for one *people* to *dissolve* the *political* bands which
> have *connected* them with another and to *assume* among the
> *powers* of the earth the *separate* and *equal station* to which
> the laws of *nature* and of *nature's* God *entitle* them, a
> *decent respect* to the *opinions* of mankind *requires* that they
> should *declare* the *causes* which *impel* them to the *separa-
> tion.*"

SUOVETAURILIA

The most important of the Roman sacrifices for the resanctification of the people
was that in which a boar, a ram, and a bull were made an offering.   This is a
photograph of a fine Roman bas-relief which represents that religious rite.
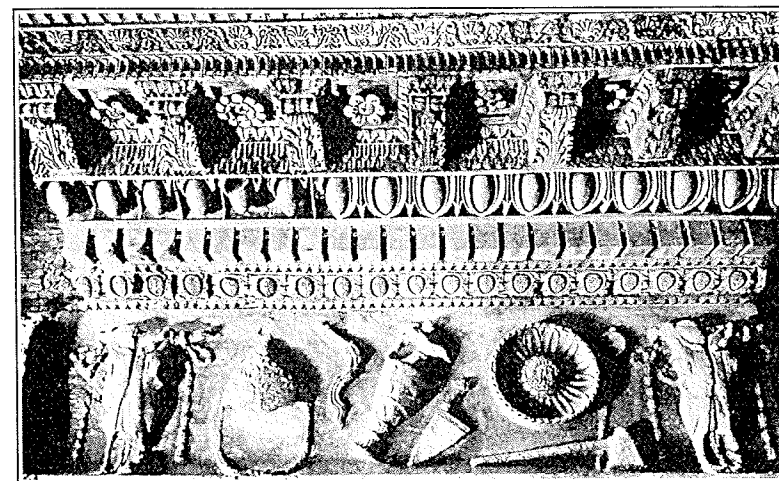
ROMAN SACRIFICIAL IMPLEMENTS

Only one piece is left of the frieze that decorated the temple of Vespasian, the
emperor of Rome from 69 to 79 A.D.   Between the two carved ox-heads, from the
horns of which hang fillets, a decoration used only on animals about to be sacri-
ficed, are the implements used in performing such a religious act.

From left to right we see the cap worn by the priest, the blood-sprinkler, the
pitcher, the knife with which the throat of the ox was cut, the hand-ax with which
it was killed, the **patera,** or bowl, in which the blood was caught, and the dipper.
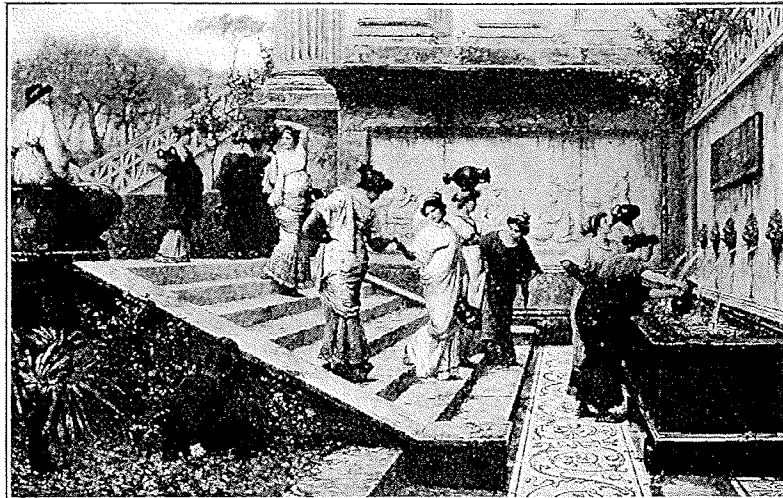
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

A ROMAN FOUNTAIN

VII

OPUSCULUM SEPTIMUM

GAUDEĀMUS IGITUR IUVENĒS DUM SUMUS

Let us be joyful therefore while we are young. This is the beginning of a Latin song, part of which goes back as far as 1267 A.D.

46.   PUELLAE PULCHRAE AD FONTEM

Ad fontem appropinquāmus et urnās portāmus. Sumus
<small>fountain</small>   <small>water jars</small>
puellae Rōmānae. Nostra patria est Ītalia. Aqua in fonte
                                           <small>fountain</small>
gelida et grāta est. Aquam in urnīs portāmus. Pulchrae
<small>cold</small>
sunt urnae puellārum Rōmānārum. In scālīs nunc stāmus.
                                 <small>on steps</small>   <small>we stand</small>

Cornēlia puerum Mārcum spectat. Mārcus Cornēliae fābulam
            <small>boy</small>   <small>looks at</small>
bonam nārrat. Mox Cornēlia aliīs puellīs fābulam novam
           <small>presently</small>

44

nārrābit.[1] Octāvia puellīs Iūliae et Camillae[2] armillam novam
<small>will tell</small>   <small>bracelet</small>
mōnstrat. Vītam puellārum līberārum in Ītaliā, nostrā patriā

pulchrā, amāmus.
         <small>we love</small>

47.   VOCABULARY

fā′bu la story	nova new
a′li a other	mōnstrō I show
grāta pleasant	nārrō I tell
lī′be ra free	portō I carry
nostra our	sum I am

48.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Nārrābit is the future of the verb nārrō. What does the ending -t show?

2. Iūliae and **Camillae**: these words are in the dative case, in apposition with the dative **puellīs**. Translate *to the girls, Julia and Camilla.*

49.   HIGH POINTS IN THE LESSON

Cor nē′li ae (in line 5) is the indirect object of **nārrat.** Translate the sentence either *Marcus tells Cornelia a good story,* or *Marcus tells a good story to Cornelia.* The indirect object is the person, *Cornelia,* to whom something is told. Verbs of showing, telling and giving take an indirect object. Can you find two other indirect objects in the story? In Latin, the indirect object is in the *dative case.* Nouns that end in -a in the nominative singular end in -ae in the dative singular and in -īs in the dative plural. What two other cases end in -ae?

Observe that the verb **appropinquāmus** ends in -mus. This is the ending of verbs in the first person plural active. Translate *we approach;* translate in a similar way all other verb forms ending in -mus. How would you translate a verb that ends in -t or -nt when no subject is expressed?

50.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the genitive singular and plural of **serva**; the dative singular and plural of **fēmina**; the accusative singular and plural of **fābula**.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Cui (*to whom*) Mārcus fā'bu lam nārrat? Cor nē'li ae Mārcus fā'bu lam nārrat. **2.** Quid in urnīs por tā'tis (*do you carry*)? Aquam in urnīs por tā'mus. **3.** Quibus (*to whom*) puer fā'bu lās nārrat? Pu el'līs puer fā'bu lās nārrat. **4.** Quid Iū'li ae Cor nē'li a mōnstrat? Ar mil'lam novam Iū'li ae Cor nē'li a mōnstrat.

51.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** Aquam ge'li dam (*we love*). **2.** Ar mil'lam novam Cor nē'li ae (*we look at*). **3.** Puer puell— pulchr— fā'bu lam nār-rat. **4.** In scālīs puell— fā'bu lās multās (*we tell*). **5.** Cor nē'li a fēmin— fā'bu lam bonam nār rā'bit. **6.** Pu el'la aquam da—; pu el'lae aquam da—.

52.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *demonstrate, grateful, liberal, narrate, novel,* and *porter* derived?

Why was the wealth of Croesus *fabulous?* What part of a trip by canoe is *portage?* Name someone whom you consider a *liberator.*
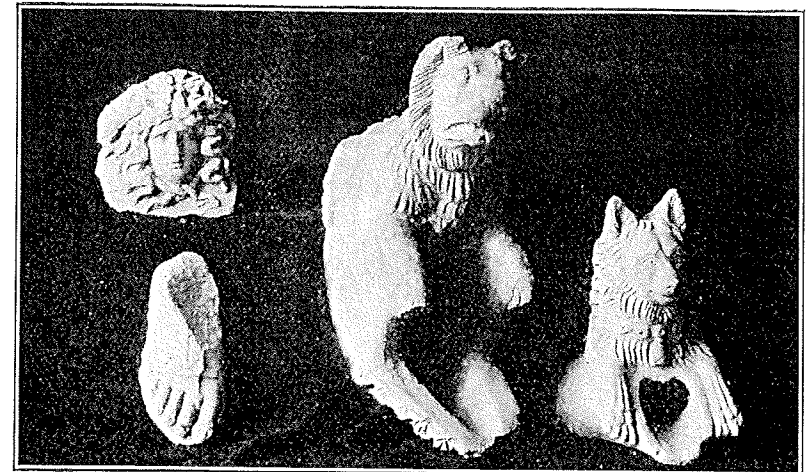
Courtesy of The Johns Hopkins University Museum

REMNANTS OF ANTIQUITY

The foot is of marble, the other pieces are of terra cotta. Looking at the piece in the upper left-hand corner one would guess, because of the stern look, the snaky hair, and the snakes' tails tied beneath her chin, that he is looking at a face of Me-dusa, whose glance, according to the story, turned the beholder into stone. The marble foot rests on a marble sandal. The strap over the instep and down between the great and the sec-ond toe is clearly seen. The two dogs of terra cotta were Roman water spouts from the eaves of a house. Do you think the dogs of today look very much like those of two thousand years ago?

From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

A HURRIED GREETING

VIII

OPUSCULUM OCTĀVUM

CUM DEĪS VOLENTIBUS

This phrase means literally *with the gods willing*, but a free and proper translation, provided one knows the exact literal meaning, would be *with Heaven's help*.

53.   IN VIĀ CUM RŌMĀNĪS

Haec est via longa in ōrā maritimā. In viā Mārcum in
_{this}
quadrīgā vidēmus. Octāvia, fēmina pulchra et nōta, in
_{4-horse chariot}   _{we see}
lectīcā est. Mārcus cum Octāviā pulchrā loquitur. Mārcus
_{couch}   _{talks}
ad vīllam properat. Servus niger cum dīligentiā equōs agit.
                    _{black}   _{horses}   _{drives}
Mārcus togam[1] albam gerit; Octāvia stolam et pallam
             _{white}   _{wears}   _{robe}   _{mantle}
gerit. Stola et palla erant vestīmenta fēminārum Rōmānārum.

48

Servī Octāviae tunicās albās gerunt. In viīs Rōmānīs erant
                _{tunics}
multae lectīcae, multae quadrīgae, multī et pulchrī equī.

54.   VOCABULARY

dī li gen′ti a care	nōta well-known
ōra coast, shore	pro′pe rō I hasten
toga toga, robe	cum with (*prep. with ablative*)

55.   NOTE ON THE STORY

1. **Toga :** when a Roman wore his toga, he was in dignified full-dress. The senators at Rome were very particular about the cut of their togas, and the way they hung in folds or creases. Nowadays, when you read that a man " aspires to wear the toga," it means that he would like to be elected to the United States Senate. The Roman poets often called their people **gēns togāta**, the *toga-clad race*.

56.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

What are the endings of the nouns in the story that immediately follow the prepositions **in** or **cum**? These nouns are in the *ablative case*. Nouns that end in **-a** in the nominative singular end in **-ā** in the ablative singular and **-īs** in the ablative plural. Certain prepositions are used with the accusative case, and others with the ablative case. Find a preposition used with a noun in the accusative case.

57.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give in both the singular and plural the endings of the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases of nouns ending in **-a.**
Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Est′-ne Oc tā′vi a in casā? Octāvia nōn est in casā; est in viā. 2. Quis (*who*) est in quadrī′gā? Mārcus est in quad rī′gā. 3. Quis cum Octāviā lo′qui-tur? Mārcus cum Octāviā loquitur. 4. Quis equōs cum dī li gen′ti ā agit? Servus bonus equōs cum dīligentiā agit. **5.** Ubi erant mul-

From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

A BIT OF COMEDY FOR A RAINY DAY

The elderly gentleman under the portico, at the left, is enjoying hugely the back-talk which the girl on the stepping stone is giving to the young nobleman who is trying to have some fun at her expense. You will find these same stepping stones in the streets of Pompeii today.

tae quadrīgae? In viīs Ītaliae erant multae quadrīgae.   6. Sunt'-ne servī Octāviae mi'se rī?   Servī Octāviae nōn sunt miserī; sunt laetī.

58.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: 1. Mārcus fābul– multās nārrat.   2. Mārcus et Oc tā'vi a sunt in vi—.   3. Mārcus in quadrīg—, Octāvia in lectīc— est.   4. Servus est in quadrīg—.   5. Mārcus cum fēmin— pulchr— lo'qui tur.   6. In vi— Rōmān— erant semper multae lectīc— et quadrīg—.

59.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *diligence* and *noted* derived?
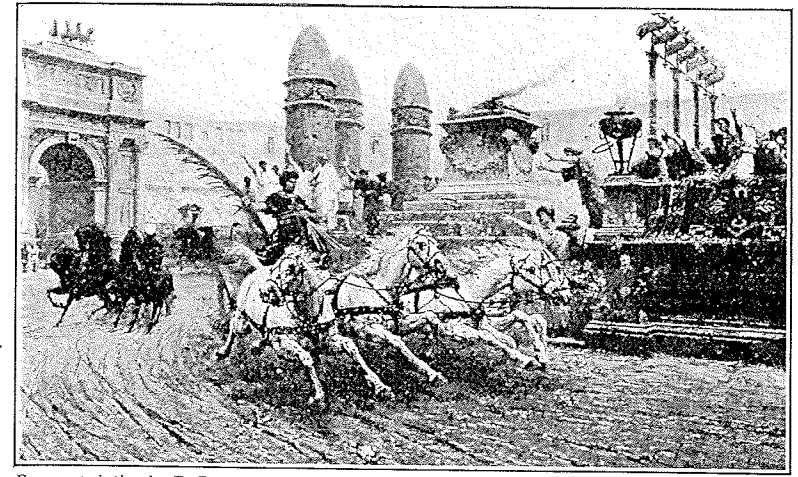
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
NERO IN HIS PALMY DAYS

The Roman emperor Nero was an ardent supporter of the "Greens," the name given to the faction whose charioteers wore a green driving jacket. But Nero also loved to drive his own favorite team of white Arabian steeds. Two things in the accompanying illustration show that Nero has just won a seven-lap chariot race in the Circus Maximus at Rome. First, the seven dolphins on the four poles are no longer upright but have been flipped over one at a time as each lap was completed. Secondly, the emperor holds the palm of victory. The race is over, and Nero is driving once more around the course, this time to receive the applause of the 300,000 spectators.
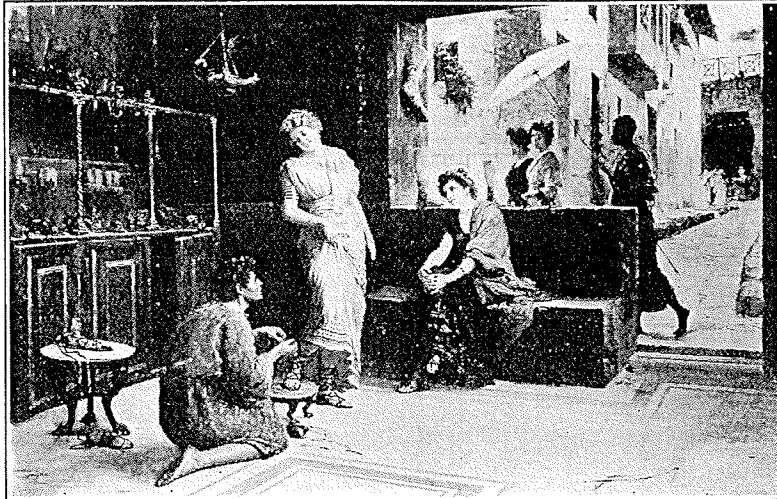
From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

NEW SANDALS

IX

OPUSCULUM NŌNUM

NĒ SŪTOR ULTRĀ CREPIDAM

A cobbler was once criticizing a painting by Apelles, in the presence of that famous Greek artist. After criticizing the sandals he began on other parts of the picture, at which Apelles said, " Cobbler, stick to your last!" literally, *let not a cobbler (go) beyond his last.*

60.   TABERNA RŌMĀNA

Cornēlia et Iūlia in tabernā sunt. Iūlia prope portam sedet et
shop   _sits_
Cornēliam spectat. Cornēlia soleās novās emit. Mercātor
      sandals   _buys_   _the merchant_
Cornēliae soleam aptat.[1] Cornēlia stolā, pallā, armillīs, soleīs,
   fits   _bracelets_
indūta est. Puellae Rōmānae stolīs, pallīs, soleīs indūtae sunt.
clothed
In viā Octāvia cum fīliā ambulat. Servus niger cum fēminīs
         walks
in viā ambulat. Servus dominās umbellā prōtegit. Soleae
                             shades

52

novae Cornēliae grātae sunt. Mox Cornēlia mercātōrī pecūniam
                                  to the merchant
dabit[2] et mercātor Cornēliae soleās dabit.[2] Cornēlia, soleīs novīs
will give
indūta, cum Iūliā domum laeta[3] īre properābit.[2]
                 home   _to go_   _will hasten_

61.   VOCABULARY

fī′li a   daughter   mox   soon, presently
pe cū′ni a   money   prope   near (*prep. with acc.*)

62.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. aptat: *fits*, literally, *a sandal to Cornelia.*

2. dabit and pro pe rā′bit: these verbs are in the future tense.

3. laeta: this word is an adjective, but is best translated here as an adverb, *i.e., joyfully.*

63.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Find in the story nine examples of the ablative case used without a preposition. What preposition did you use in translating these ablatives?

64.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis Oc tā′vi am um bel′lā prō′te git? Servus Oc tā′vi am et fī′li am um bel′lā prō′te git.   **2.** Quis Cor nē′li ae so′le am novam aptat? Mer cā′tor Cor nē′li ae so′le am novam aptat.   **3.** Cui mer cā′tor so′le ās novās dabit? Cor nē′li ae so′le ās novās dabit.   **4.** Quis tu′ni cā in dū′tus est? Servus tu′ni cā in dū′tus est.   **5.** Ubi sunt a′li ae fē′mi nae? In viā sunt a′li ae fē′mi nae.

65.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** In nostrā ta ber′nā sunt du— fēmin—.   **2.** Mer cā′tor pu el′l— so′le ās mōnstrat.   **3.** Ta ber′na mult— sole— ōr nā′ta (*supplied*) est.   **4.** Pu el′lae lī′be rae stol— et pall— in dū′tae sunt.   **5.** Servus tunic— in dū′tus est.   **6.** Stolae pu el lā′rum sunt long—.

AN EARLY ROMAN COIN
Notice the word ROMA under the ox on this early and roughly stamped
Roman coin.

66.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *filial* and *pecuniary* derived?

Pecūnia, the Latin word for *money,* came from **pecus,** meaning *cattle.* Before the early Romans had money they conducted business by exchanging goods. Cattle were the usual article of exchange. The first coin that the Romans had was a big piece of copper weighing a pound, with the form of an ox stamped on it.

What are *pecuniary* difficulties? Should you like to be an *impecunious* person? Give a reason for your answer.

X

OPUSCULUM DECIMUM

FIRST DECLENSION FORMS   RULES FOR ACCENT

PATIENTIA RĀRA VIRTŪS

Patience is a rare virtue in school as well as in life. *We learn by examples,* **exemplīs discimus,** to be sure, but it takes patience to do so. The Italians say: **il mondo è di chi ha pazienza,** *the world is his who has patience.*

67. We have now studied the names, uses, and endings, of nouns in the first declension for five cases. They ought to be learned in the following order: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative. There is also a *vocative case,* used in speaking to a person or persons, for example:

| Ubi, Iūlia, est tua soror? | *Julia, where is your sister?* |
| Properāte, puellae. | *Hurry, girls.* |

The vocative singular usually has the same form as the nominative singular; the vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

Gender. Nouns of the first declension, even if they refer to things, are *feminine.* In Latin, gender is determined by endings as well as by sex. The only nouns of the first declension that are masculine are those that refer to men, for example: **Galba,** *Galba,* a man's name; **nauta,** *a sailor;* a gri'co la, *a farmer.*

68. Study the following table, which is a review of what you have learned about nouns in previous lessons. Make sure that you know: (1) the names of the cases, (2) the English meaning of each case, (3) the use or uses of each case, and (4) the endings

used in forming each case both in the singular and in the plural. Tables of this kind occur in many of the following *opuscula*. You should learn them as thoroughly as you learn the words in the vocabularies. This is the only sure way of laying a solid foundation for all your future work in Latin.

The part of a noun to which case endings are added is called the *base*. What is the base of **terra**?

69. Declension of *terra*, land, earth. Here you will find the forms of **terra** in five cases, both singular and plural. The case forms of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, when written or given in the order shown here, make up what is called a *declension*.

	Singular		*Case Ending*
Nominative	terra,	land	-a
Genitive	terrae,	of the land	-ae
Dative	terrae,	to, for the land	-ae
Accusative	terram,	land	-am
Ablative	terrā,	with, in, on, at, by, from the land	-ā

	Plural		*Case Ending*
Nominative	terrae,	lands	-ae
Genitive	ter rā′rum,	of the lands	-ārum
Dative	terrīs,	to, for the lands	-īs
Accusative	terrās,	lands	-ās
Ablative	terrīs,	with, in, on, at, by, from the lands	-īs

70.　　　　WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the declension of some other noun from the preceding vocabularies. Show the word you choose to your teacher before you write it. Underline the endings.

The word for *forest* is **silva**. Write the Latin for the following: **1.** Of the forests. **2.** To the forest. **3.** The forest (*acc.*). **4.** In the forest. **5.** In the forests. **6.** The forests (*acc.*)

71. Rules for Accent

Review division of words into syllables in **36.**

1. Penult and Antepenult

   (*a*) The last syllable of a word is called the ultima. **Ultima** means *last*.

   (*b*) The syllable next to the last is called the penult. Pen- comes from **paene**, *almost*, and -ult is the abbreviation for **ultima**, *last*.

   (*c*) The syllable before the penult is called the antepenult.

   Example: **fē′mi na.** penult, **mi**; antepenult, **fē**.

2. Long Syllables. The penult or any other syllable is long

   (*a*) if it contains a long vowel, **a mā′bat**

   (*b*) if it contains a diphthong, **lae-ta**

   (*c*) if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants, **vi den′tur.**

NOTE: An exception under (*c*) regarding two consonants called a mute and a liquid need not concern us for the present.

3. Words of three syllables are accented on the penult if it is long; but if it is short, they are accented on the antepenult.

   Examples: Accent on the penult, **mer cā′tor, ta ber′na**
   Accent on the antepenult, **do′mi na, Cor nē′li a**

Where does the accent fall in a Latin word of two syllables?

72. Divide the following words into syllables and put the accent mark (′) where it belongs.

merīdiānam	terrīs	aedificābātur	mīlitēs
oppida	vidēbantur	cōnsiliō	templō

**73.**   WORD STUDY

Here are some English words related to **terra**:

Mediterranean	in the middle of the lands
subterranean	under the earth
terrace	a bank of earth
terrestrial	pertaining to the earth
inter'	to lay in the earth, to bury
terra cotta	Italian for *baked earth,* derived from Latin **terra cocta.** It is applied to such material as flower-pots are made of, and also to the red-brown color of that material.

Silva was spelled **sylva** in late Latin. How then did *Pennsylvania* get its name? What is a *sylvan* retreat? What girl's name means *wood-maiden?*

74.   A DECORATED ROMAN FLOWER HOLDER

This is one of four graceful female figures, all four being alike, which, moulded in relief, decorate the outside of a terra cotta flower holder that was owned and used by some Roman woman two thousand years ago.
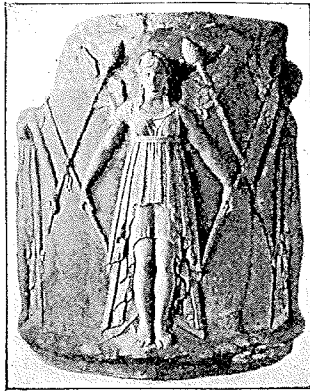
XI

OPUSCULUM ŪNDECIMUM

COLLOQUIUM
dialogue

75.   MĀRCUS CUM PUELLĪS LOQUITUR.

M. Quid, puellae, in urnīs portātis?

CORNĒLIA ⎱
IŪLIA   ⎰ Aquam portāmus.

M. Est'-ne bona aqua in hōc fonte?

this

C. Bona est et gelida.

M. Cūr, Cornēlia, urnam in terrā nōn locās?

C. Quod ad casam properō.

because

I. Cūr, Mārce,[1] nōn labōrās? Cūr in viā stās?

do you stand

M. Satis labōrō; sed in viīs cum puellīs et puerīs libenter[2] ambulō; casās pulchrās et statuās libenter spectō; prope ōram maritimam libenter stō. Nōnne[3] vōs libenter prope fontem cum aliīs puellīs stātis? Nōnne fābulās libenter audītis et narrātis?

enough   but   you   you hear

C. Libenter labōrāmus et aquam in urnīs portāmus; libenter prope ōram maritimam ambulāmus et in viīs lectīcās, quadrīgās, viātōrēs libenter spectāmus.

travellers

I. Valē, Mārce.[1]

good-bye

M. Valēte, puellae.

59

76.   VOCABULARY

labōrō I work	stō I stand
locō I place	cūr why?
spectō I look at	libenter gladly, willingly

nōnne a question-word, indicating *yes* as a probable answer

77. Present Tense Active of *portō*. Pronounce carefully after your teacher; then learn the forms thoroughly. They are the forms of the first, second, and third persons, singular and plural.

Singular		*Personal Ending*
Aquam portō,	I carry water	-ō
Aquam portās,	you (*s.*) carry water	-s
Aquam portat,	he (she, it) carries water	-t
Plural		
Aquam portāmus,	we carry water	-mus
Aquam portātis,	you (*pl.*) carry water	-tis
Aquam portant,	they carry water	-nt

78.   NOTES ON THE DIALOGUE

1. Mārce is the vocative (calling case) of Mārcus.

2. libenter with a verb makes what is called an idiom, *i.e.*, a way of expression peculiar to or characteristic of a language. The literal translation of libenter ambulō is *I walk gladly*, but the idiomatic translation is *I like to walk*.

3. nōnne, etc., *Do you not like to stand?* etc., or *you like to stand, don't you?*

79.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Observe the word portātis in line 1 of the Colloquium. It has the ending -tis and means *you* (*pl.*) *carry*. Find three other verbs which end in -tis.

The verb locās in line 5 ends in -s and means *you* (*s.*) *place*. Find two other verbs with the same ending.

The forms portātis and locās express action taking place in present time, and so are said to be in the *present tense*.

In 77 are the forms of the present tense of the verb portō. You will notice that the ending of a Latin verb indicates what subject pronoun is implied. You can form Latin sentences, therefore, without personal pronouns. You will learn these later. The endings -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt, are the *personal endings* of verbs in the active voice. Learn them. The part of a verb to which these endings are added is called the *present stem*. The present stem of portō is portā-.

80.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Cūr stās in viā? Quod lectīcās et quadrīgās spectō. 2. Quid puellīs nārrātis? Fābulam novam puellīs nārrāmus. 3. Quō (*whither*) aquam portās? Ad casam aquam portō. 4. Labōrātis'-ne semper? Nōn semper labōrāmus; in viīs ambulāmus.

81.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write in imitation of **77** the present tense active of :

1. Fābulam nārrō, *I tell a story.*
2. Statuam spectō, *I look at the statue.*
3. In viā stō, *I stand in the street.*

Complete: 1. In viā pulchrā (*you walk*). 2. Fīliābus* Octāviae fābulās (*you tell*). 3. Statuās novās (*we look at*). 4. Columbīs aquam (*you are giving*). 5. (*Are you working*) cum dīligentiā? 6. Silvam (*they love*). 7. Urnās in terrā (*they place*).
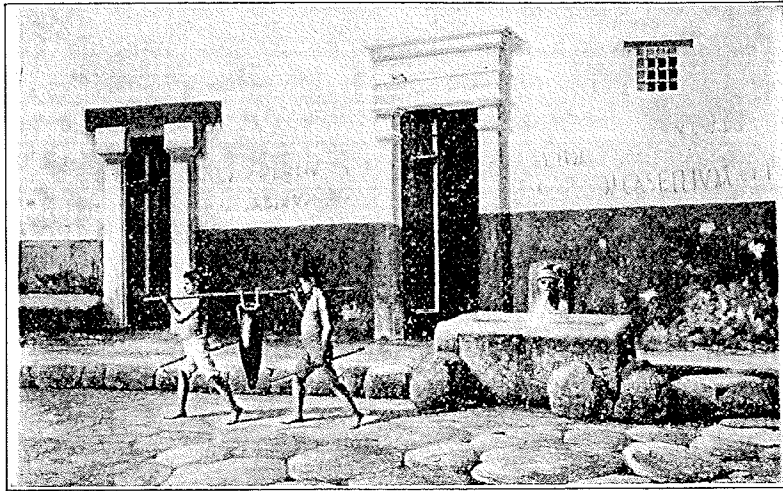
82.   WORD STUDY

With what word in the vocabulary is *locate* connected?

What sort of place is a *laboratory*? Why are some dresses called *elaborate*?

* Fīlia has an irregular form in the dative and ablative plural: fīliābus.

A Roman Water Brigade

XII
OPUSCULUM DUODECIMUM

83. Ē PLŪRIBUS ŪNUM

Multae sunt terrae Eurōpae. Britannia, Germānia, Gallia, Hispānia sunt in Eurōpā. Ītalia quoque est in Eurōpā. Rōma
_{also}
est urbs antīqua Ītaliae. Amērica terra Eurōpae nōn est.
_{city}
Amērica mea patria est.

Estis-ne, puellae, incolae Eurōpae? Minimē; incolae sumus
_{no}
Amēricae. Es-ne, Iūlia, incola Britanniae? Minimē; incola
sum Amēricae; Amērica est mea patria.

Terrās antīquās et pulchrās Eurōpae amāmus, sed Amēricam,
_{but}
nostram patriam cāram, magis amāmus.
_{our}   _{more}

62

84.   VOCABULARY

Eurōpa Europe	Hispānia Spain
Britannia Britain	incola inhabitant
Gallia France	antīqua ancient
Germānia Germany	cāra dear

85. Present Tense of *sum.* Learn the present tense of **sum** from these sentences.

Singular

Sum incola Amēricae	I am an inhabitant of America.
Es incola Amēricae	You (*s.*) are an inhabitant of America.
Est incola Amēricae	He, or she, is an inhabitant of America.
Iohannēs **est** incola Amēricae	John is an inhabitant of America.

Plural

Sumus incolae Amēricae	We are inhabitants of America.
Estis incolae Amēricae	You (*pl.*) are inhabitants of America.
Sunt incolae Amēricae	They are inhabitants of America.
Iohannēs et Cornēlia **sunt** incolae Amēricae	John and Cornelia are inhabitants of America.

86.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The verb **sum,** *I am,* is an irregular verb; but it has the same personal endings as **portō,** except in one form. Which form is that? Sum, like the English *I am,* does not have an object in the accusative case, but is used with a predicate word in the nominative case. Do not forget this fact. Never try to give an object to the verb **sum.** **Incola** and **incolae** in the preceding section are predicate nouns.

87.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. *Find:* eight predicate nouns and one predicate adjective in the section Ē PLŪRIBUS ŪNUM.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Estis′-ne incolae Eurōpae? Minimē; sumus incolae Āmēricae. **2.** Sunt-ne terrae Eurōpae cārae incolīs? Terrae antīquae Eurōpae in-colīs cārae sunt. **3.** Cūr Āmēricam amās? Āmēricam amō quod (*because*) est mea patria. **4.** Est-ne Āmērica terra pulchra? Āmērica, nostra patria cāra, pulchra est. **5.** Terrās Eurōpae amātis′ne? Terrās Eurōpae amāmus sed Āmēricam, nostram patriam, magis amāmus.

88.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: You (*s.*) work; Marcus works; we work; the women work willingly.

Complete: **1.** (*We are*) incolae terrae pulchrae. **2.** Mārcus (*is*) incola Ītaliae. **3.** Multae fēminae (*are*) in viā. **4.** Sunt-ne puellae (*pretty*)? **5.** Toga est (*long*); togae sunt (*long*). **6.** Dominae servārum mult— nōn sunt bon—.

89.   WORD STUDY

Antic. This English word comes from Latin **antīqua**, meaning *old, ancient, antique.* It came to mean *old-fashioned,* or *quaint.* Then it acquired the meaning *out-landish,* and finally became a noun meaning *outlandish conduct.*

XIII
OPUSCULUM TERTIUM DECIMUM

NIHIL DICTUM QUOD NŌN PRIUS DICTUM

ARS LONGA, VĪTA BREVIS EST
ERRĀRE HUMĀNUM EST

These two Latin sentences are so much like English that you would probably understand them if you knew no Latin. The Latin verb, like the German, is *usually* at the end of the sentence; in English the verb usually follows its subject. *Art long, life short is,* and *err human is,* are easily understood, although we should translate the first sentence, *art is long, life is short,* and the second, *to err* (because **errāre** is an infinitive used as a noun) *is human.*

90.   HOW LATIN HAS CONTRIBUTED TO ENGLISH

More than sixty per cent of the English words used by educated persons are derived from Latin. Many words have come into our language from Latin through French. When the Normans under William the Conqueror became the rulers of England in the eleventh century, their language, which was French, became the official language of that country. Their French was nothing but the language of the Roman conquerors of Gaul, Julius Caesar and others, of more than a thousand years earlier, with the changes that come into any language as the centuries roll by. Therefore, after these French-speaking rulers began to govern England, the English language gained many Latin words from them. An interesting and correct account of how Latin was gradually changed into English through French is found in the first chapter of *Ivanhoe.*

Since the Norman Conquest, and especially since the time of the Revival of Learning in the fifteenth century, the English

language has been enlarged and enriched by further additions from Latin. Therefore a large percentage of our words have been acquired from Latin, both from Latin through French and from Latin directly.

Almost every word in the vocabularies in this book has some relative in English. It is worth your while to become acquainted with these descendants of the Latin family, and thus enlarge your circle of word-friends.

The English descendants of Latin words do not always commence with the same letters as their Latin ancestors. There are many Latin prefixes, some of which you know already, which affect the meaning of English words.

91. NOTEBOOK WORK

Write these prefixes and their meanings in your Latin notebook. Keep this page of your notebook for reference. You will find these prefixes useful in discovering derivatives of Latin verbs.

1. ā, ab, abs away	8. ē, ex out of, from	15. prō for, forward
2. ad to	9. in in, not	16. re back
3. ante before	10. inter among	17. se apart
4. circum around	11. ob against	18. sub under, close
5. con with, completely	12. per through, completely	to
6. dē down, down from	13. post after, behind	19. super above
7. dis, di apart	14. prae at the head of (English pre-)	20. trāns across

92. See if you can find ten English words derived from **voc̄o**. Take as an example **prō**, from which we get *pro-voke*, meaning *to call forth*, but which has come to mean nowadays *to call forth anger*. Try to find five words that begin with *voc-*, and five

that begin with one of the prefixes in 91. Write these derivatives on a page of your notebook, and on the opposite page of your notebook, write their definitions.

If you prefer, draw a large wheel, with at least ten spokes. At the hub, write **voc̄o**. On each spoke write an English derivative of **voc̄o**. On the page opposite, write the derivatives again, with the definition of each.

93. NOTE ON THE TITLE

Nihil dictum quod nōn prius dictum, *nothing is said which has not been said before.* A Latin writer, Donatus, once wrote: **pereant quī ante nōs nostra dīxērunt,** *may those perish who have said our* (good phrases) *before us.*

94. In the preamble to the Constitution of the United States which follows, all the words of Latin ancestry are in italics. As you read the italicized words by themselves, you will see that they give nearly all the meaning of the passage, but if you read only the words of non-Latin origin, namely, those in plain type, the sentence means nothing. Of the 52 words, 26 are derivatives from Latin; but of the non-Latin twenty-six, six are the word *the*, three are *and*, and three are *of;* that is to say, twelve of the non-Latin twenty-six hardly count in giving the idea of the passage.

" We, the *people* of the *United States*, in *order* to *form* a more *perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide* for the *common defense, promote* the *general* welfare and *secure* the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity*, do *ordain* and *establish* this *Constitution* for the *United States* of *America.*"
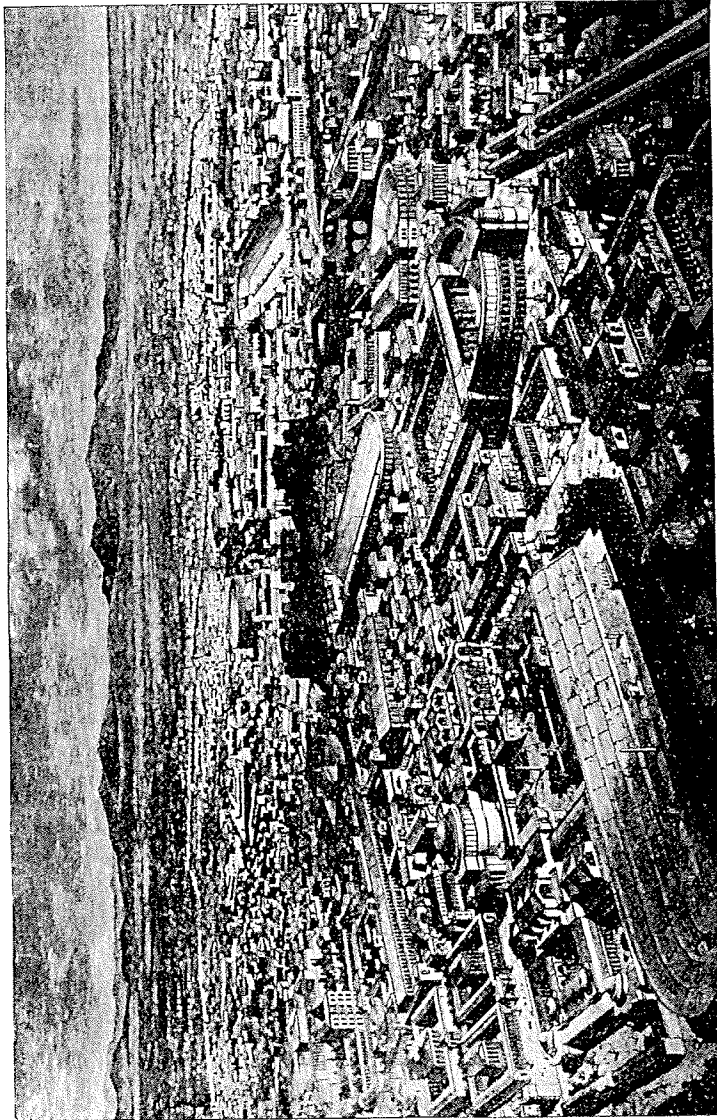
Pantheon
Stadium of Domitian
Forum
Capitoline Hill
Circus Maximus
Theater of Pompey

ROME IN HER GLORY
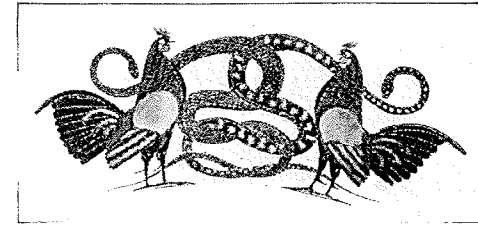
A PAINTED SERPENTINE KNOT

On an ancient Etruscan vase an artist painted this strange and wonderful design.
These animals of 2600 years ago in Italy were almost exactly like ours of today.

XIV

OPUSCULUM QUĀRTUM DECIMUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

LABOR OMNIA VINCIT

This is the motto of the American Federation of Labor, and
also of the University of Illinois. *Labor all things conquers* is the
literal translation, following the order of the Latin words. *Labor
overcomes all obstacles* is a good way to express it in English.

95. Two well-known sets of words are **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī** and
Stop–Look–Listen. Julius Caesar sent the first set, the shortest
dispatch known, to the Roman Senate after the battle of Zela
in 47 B.C. The words of the second set warn us at railroad
crossings before we go ahead. The title of this lesson is a state-
ment of success, warning, and invitation. The word for word
translation is: *We have arrived, it must be reviewed, let us pro-
ceed,* but we may translate it freely: We have come thus far;
but we ought to stop long enough to test our progress; now,
full steam ahead!

96.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. Name in the usual order the cases of the Latin noun. **2.** Explain
the use or uses of each case. **3.** Give the ending of each case, singular
and plural, in the first declension. **4.** What is the gender of first

declension nouns? **5.** Is there any exception? **6.** In what case is a predicate noun, and with what verb is it used? **7.** What is a predicate adjective?

1. Name two prepositions that are used with the ablative case. **2.** Give the endings of verbs that indicate the three persons, singular and plural. **3.** Does **sum** have the same personal endings as **portō** in the present tense? **4.** What is the *penult* of a word? What is the *antepenult?* **5.** Divide the following words into syllables and put the accent mark (') over the proper syllable of each: **portābiminī, vulnerābātur, servābuntur.**

Give: the genitive singular of **patria mea, fābula nova, puella pulchra;** the dative plural of **incola, terra grāta, via antīqua;** the accusative plural of **vīta laeta, serva bona, fēmina Rōmāna;** the ablative singular of **casa nova, pecūnia mea;** the genitive plural of **fīlia, terra nova, domina cāra;** the dative singular of **Ītalia, dīligentia nostra, porta antīqua.**

Conjugate: **puellam vocō** in the present tense. (Compare **77.**)

97. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write in Latin the words in parentheses, paying special attention to their endings; then translate the Latin sentences into English: **1.** Puellīs (*a good story*) nārrat. **2.** (*Many houses*) in viā vidēmus. **3.** Vīta servārum erat (*wretched*). **4.** Iūlia urnās (*of the happy girls*) spectat. **5.** Fēminīs fābulam novam (*you are telling*). **6.** Multās quadrīgās (*in the long street*) vident. **7.** Octāvia (*with her daughter*) ambulat [omit *her*]. **8.** Mārcus (*to the girls*) aquam dat. **9.** Nautae ad ōram maritimam (*are approaching*). **10.** Armillae Cornēliae sunt novae et (*beautiful*).

98. VOCABULARY REVIEW

You will notice that the two vocabulary reviews that follow cannot both be seen at the same time. When one of your classmates, or your teacher, reads the words in one list to you, you ought to be able to give quickly and correctly the corresponding words in the other list without referring to it.

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. Amērica	10. Eurōpa	19. Ītalia	28. serva
2. aqua	11. fābula	20. Iūlia	29. silva
3. Britannia	12. fēmina	21. Mārcus	30. terra
4. casa	13. fīlia	22. ōra	31. toga
5. Clāra	14. Galba	23. patria	32. via
6. columba	15. Gallia	24. pecūnia	33. vīlla
7. Cornēlia	16. Germānia	25. poēta	34. vīta
8. dīligentia	17. Hispānia	26. porta	
9. domina	18. incola	27. puella	

Adjectives

35. alba	40. grāta	44. mea	48. nōta
36. alia	41. laeta	45. misera	49. nova
37. antīqua	42. lībera	46. multae	50. pulchra
38. bona	43. longa	47. nostra	51. Rōmāna
39. cāra			

Verbs

52. labōrō	55. nārrō	57. properō	59. stō
53. locō	56. portō	58. spectō	60. sum
54. mōnstrō			

Adverbs

61. cūr	63. mox	65. nōn	67. semper
62. libenter	64. -ne	66. nōnne	

Prepositions

68. ad	69. cum	70. in	71. prope

Conjunctions   72. et   73. quod

99. VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. America	10. Europe	20. Julia	28. slave-girl
2. water	11. story	21. Marcus	29. forest
3. Britain	12. woman	22. coast, shore	30. land, earth
4. house	13. daughter	23. native land	31. toga
5. Clara	14. Galba		32. street, road
6. dove	15. France	24. money	33. villa, country-house
7. Cornelia	16. Germany	25. poet	
8. care	17. Spain	26. door	34. life
9. mistress	18. inhabitant	27. girl	
	19. Italy		

Adjectives

35. white	40. pleasant	44. my	48. well known
36. other	41. happy, glad	45. wretched	49. new
37. ancient		46. many	50. pretty
38. good	42. free	47. our	51. Roman
39. dear	43. long		

Verbs

52. work	55. tell	57. hasten	59. stand
53. place	56. carry	58. look at	60. be
54. show			

Adverbs

61. why?
62. gladly
63. soon, presently
64. (used to ask a question)

65. not
66. (used to ask a question when " yes " is probable answer.)
67. always

Prepositions

68. to	69. with	70. in, on, into	71. near

Conjunctions

72. and   73. because

100. REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

These English words are derived from the Latin words you have already learned in the vocabularies of the preceding *opuscula*. If you know the meanings of the Latin words in **98**, you will know the meanings of these English words, because they are derivatives. If you can spell the Latin words, you will also know how to spell accurately these words. What five of the following words do you think best illustrate these points?

1. album	16. graceful	30. patriotic
2. amiable	17. grateful	31. pecuniary
3. antic	18. impecunious	32. Pennsylvania
4. antique	19. inter'	33. portage
5. aquarium	20. laboratory	34. portal
6. cantata	21. liberal	35. porter
7. dame	22. liberator	36. servant
8. data	23. locate	37. spectacle
9. demonstrate	24. madam	38. subterranean
10. diligence	25. miserable	39. sylvan
11. dominate	26. multitude	40. terrace
12. elaborate	27. narrate	41. terra cotta
13. fabulous	28. noted	42. terrestrial
14. feminine	29. novel	43. vital
15. filial		
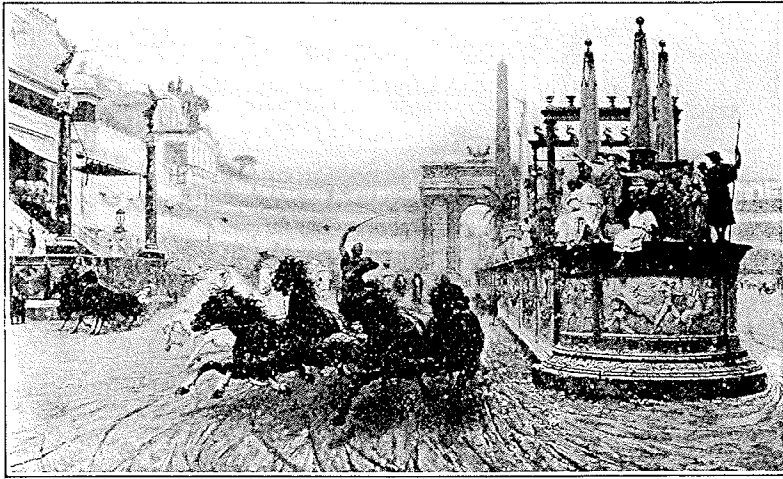
From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

XV

OPUSCULUM QUĪNTUM DECIMUM

ANTE VICTŌRIAM NĒ CANĀS TRIUMPHUM

Do not celebrate a triumph before the victory means about the same
as our saying "Don't count your chickens before they're hatched,"
or the French saying: il ne faut pas se moquer des chiens qu'on
ne soit hors du village, *don't mock the dogs until you are beyond
the village.*

101.   CIRCUS MĀXIMUS

Circus Māximus est māgnus et pulcher. Rōmānī hīc
here
circum arēnam sedent et lūdōs spectant. Equōs et quad-
rīgās spectant et laudant. Aurīgās salūtant. Pulchrī sunt
        praise   charioteers
equī albī et nigrī. Aurīga equōrum nigrōrum equōs māgnō
white
cum studiō urget. Māgna erit fāma et fortūna victōris.
        urges   will be   of the victor
Virī et puerī aurīgās māgnō cum studiō urgent.

74

102.   VOCABULARY

arēna sand, arena	lūdus game
Circus Māximus the largest	puer boy
race course	studium eagerness
equus horse	vir man
fāma fame	māgnus great
fortūna fortune	niger black

circum around (*prep. with acc.*)

103. Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension. Learn the
declension of these three nouns and their case endings. Notice
the long marks over the vowels.

	Singular			*Case Ending*
Nom.	equus, horse	puer, boy	vir, man	-us
Gen.	equī, of a horse	puerī, etc.	virī, etc.	-ī
Dat.	equō, to or for a horse	puerō	virō	-ō
Acc.	equum, a horse	puerum	virum	-um
Abl.	equō, by, with a horse	puerō	virō	-ō

	Plural			*Case Ending*
Nom.	equī, horses	puerī	virī	-ī
Gen.	equōrum, of horses	puerōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	equīs, to or for horses	puerīs	virīs	-īs
Acc.	equōs, horses	puerōs	virōs	-ōs
Abl.	equīs, by, with horses	puerīs	virīs	-īs

Make sure that you know these endings well enough to use
them in forming the cases of other second declension nouns.
One way to learn them perfectly is to copy them six or eight
times in the order shown.

104.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In this lesson we take up a group of nouns which have differ-
ent case endings from those you have learned. They belong
to the second declension. Many of them end in **-us** in the

nominative singular; others, with a base ending in **-r,** have no case ending in the nominative singular.

The nouns of this declension ending in **-us** or **-r,** in the nominative singular, are masculine. You have already learned that first declension nouns are feminine, unless they refer to males.

105.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Stat-ne Mārcus in Circō Māximō? Nōn stat, sed sedet Mārcus in Circō Māximō. **2.** Quis equōs nigrōs urget? Aurīga equōs nigrōs urget. **3.** Quī aurīgās māgnō cum studiō urgent? Virī et puerī aurīgās māgnō cum studiō urgent. **4.** Sunt-ne equī in arēnā pulchrī? Equī in arēnā sunt pulchrī. **5.** Quī lūdōs māgnōs spectant? Multī Rōmānī lūdōs māgnōs spectant. **6.** Quis est laetus? Aurīga equōrum nigrōrum est laetus.

106.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **fortūna** in the singular; **fāma** in the plural; **lūdus** in the singular and plural.

Complete: **1.** Virī Rōmānī lūd— māgnōs amant. **2.** Aurīga equ— nigr— est laetus. **3.** Mārcus in Circ— Māxim— sedet. **4.** Mult— sunt quadrīgae in arēnā Circ— Māxim—. **5.** Puer— quadrīg— et equ— alb— laudant.

107.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *equestrian, negro, study,* and *virile* derived?

The Romans used the word **circus** for a *place* where games and races were held. In Rome the Circus Maximus was famous for its chariot races. The word **circus** has become an English word. The modern circus reminds us of the ancient one in several ways. When you watch the exciting chariot race at the circus, remember that chariot races were the most popular amusement in the Circus Maximus at
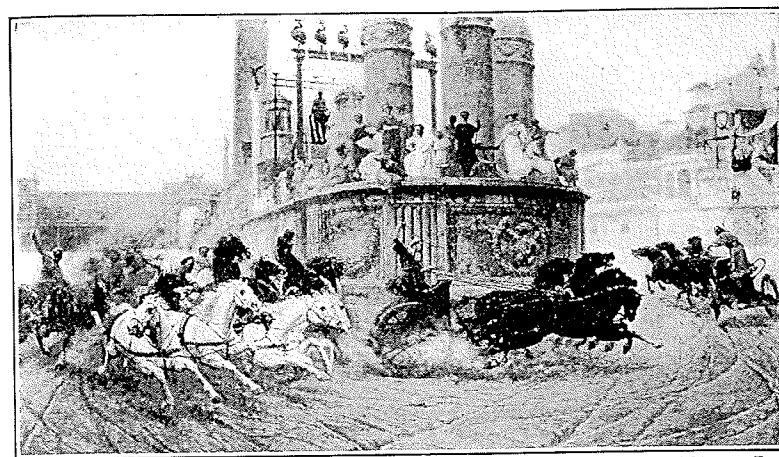
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
TURNING THE GOAL

The most dangerous moments in a Roman chariot race were when the charioteers made a dash for the inside track at the sharp turns at both ends of the spine, *spīna,* round which the seven laps of the race were run. Judges sat at the ends of the *spīna* to watch for fouling.

Rome. The procession that makes its way through the streets before the show is not new. In ancient Rome the boys stood in the streets, just as they do nowadays, to see the procession make its way to the entrance of the Circus.

Arēna means *sand.* After races, and after fights between or among gladiators, to level the course or to cover up blood, clean white sand was strewn over the ground. The word **arēna** soon came to mean the ground itself.

CINCINNATUS, THE ROMAN FARMER

XVI

OPUSCULUM SEXTUM DECIMUM

108. HONESTA FĀMA MELIOR EST PECŪNIĀ[1]

Cincinnātus, agricola[2] Rōmānus, in agrīs in casā[3] parvā[4]

habitābat. Agrōs lātōs māgnā cum dīligentiā arābat et cotīdiē
_{lived} _{plowed} _{every day}

cum servīs labōrābat.[5] Agrōs lātōs, casam parvam, vītam bonam

Cincinnātus amābat.

Ecce ! lēgātī ad agricolam bonum[6] appropinquant. Agri-
_{behold}

colam salūtant. Perīculum māgnum patriae nūntiant et Cin-
_{peril}

cinnātum ad imperium vocant. Servus ad casam properat et
_{power}

togam dominī ē casā portat. Tum Cincinnātus, togā albā
_{then}

78

indūtus, lēgātōs audit. Cum lēgātīs Rōmam[7] properat et
_{clad} _{hears}

māgnō cum studiō prō patriā labōrat. Pulchra erat fāma Cin-
_{was}

cinnātī, agricolae bonī,[8] quod patriam amābat et servābat.

109. VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, *m.* field	lātus broad
agricola, -ae, *m.* farmer	parvus small
dominus, -ī, *m.* master	nūntiō announce
lēgātus, -ī, *m.* ambassador	servō save
Rōma, -ae, *f.* Rome	ē, ex from, out of (*prep. with abl.*)
servus, -ī, *m.* slave	prō for (*prep. with abl.*)

110. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *An honorable reputation is better than money.*

2. **agricola:** a masculine noun of the first declension, in apposition with **Cincinnātus.** It is modified by the masculine adjective **Rōmānus.**

3. **casā:** the word for *house* in Italian and Spanish is *casa.*

4. **parvā:** with what noun does this adjective agree?

5. **labōrābat:** a verb in the imperfect tense; translate *used to work.* Find five other verbs in the same tense.

6. **bonum:** a masculine adjective modifying **agricolam.**

7. **Rōmam:** translate *to Rome.* To mean *to*, with names of cities, the accusative is used without a preposition.

8. **bonī:** masculine adjective, genitive singular, modifying **agricolae.**

111. Imperfect Tense Active of *portō.*

Singular	*Plural*
por tā′bam, I was carrying, I used to carry, I carried	por tā bā′mus, we were carrying, etc.
por tā′bās, you were carrying, etc.	por tā bā′tis, you were carrying
por tā-bat, he was carrying	por tā′bant, they were carrying

112. Declension of *ager*, field. When you have learned the different forms of this or any other word, you have learned to *decline*, or *inflect* it.

	Singular	Plural	Case Ending Singular	Plural
Nom.	ager	agrī	—	-ī
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum	-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs	-ō	-īs
Ac .	agrum	agrōs	-um	-ōs
Abl.	agrō	agrīs	-ō	-īs

113.　　SPOT LIGHTS ON THE LESSON

The imperfect tense in Latin always refers to an action that went on in past time or that was done several times. Notice the three possible translations of **portābam** given in **111**. A verb in the imperfect tense active is composed of three parts:

(*a*) the present stem

(*b*) the tense sign **-bā** (notice that **-ā** becomes a before **-m, -t,** and **-nt**)

(*c*) one of the personal endings, **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

Which of these endings is not used in the present tense of **portō**?

The imperfect tense active of **portō** is formed as follows:

Present stem	Tense sign	Personal ending
portā	**ba**	**m, s, t, etc.**

The declension of the noun **ager** differs slightly from that of **puer**. In **puer** the nominative singular and the base are the same; but in **ager** the nominative singular has an **e** inserted before the **-r** of the base **agr-** so that it can be pronounced. Can you pronounce *agr?* Some **-r** nouns of the second declension are declined like **puer**; others like **ager**.

From now on, the genitive singular, or the ending of the genitive singular, and also the gender will follow each noun in the vocabularies. These should be learned when the nominative singular is learned. If you drop the ending of the genitive singular of any noun, the part remaining is the *base*.

114.　　ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the present tense of **portō**; of **properō**.

Translate: properābam, properābāmus, properābātis, properātis, properāmus.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Quem (*whom*) salūtābant lēgātī? Agricolam bonum lēgātī salūtābant. 2. Ubi (*where*) est Cincinnātus? In agrīs cum servīs Cincinnātus est. 3. Quid, lēgātī, nūntiābātis? Perīculum Rōmae nūntiābāmus. 4. Quem ad imperium vocābātis? Cincinnātum, agricolam bonum, ad imperium vocābāmus. 5. Quid portābat servus? Togam albam dominī servus portābat. 6. Quī (*who*) ad agricolam appropinquant? Lēgātī Rōmānī ad agricolam appropinquant.

115.　　WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **lēgātus** in the singular; **agricola** in the plural.

Conjugate: **spectō** in the imperfect tense.

Complete: 1. Lēgātī togīs indūtī, agricolam salūtāba—. 2. Lēgātus (*to the farmer*) perīculum nūntiāba—. 3. Casa Cincinnātī est in agr— lāt—. 4. Servus togam ē casā (*was carrying*). 5. Cincinnātus est dominus agr— lāt—.

116.　　WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *agriculture, dominate, latitude,* and *preserve* derived?

What is an Indian *reservation?* What are mental *reservations?*

What is meant by *conservation* of forests? To what word in the vocabulary are these italicized words related?

The Society of the Cincinnati is an American patriotic society composed of descendants of officers in Washington's army. The founders called themselves after the Roman Cincinnatus because, like him, they left their fields to fight for their country, and after victory was won they too returned to private life as Cincinnatus did.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

Ō DOMINE DEUS

A FAVORITE PRAYER OF MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS

Ō Domine Deus: spērāvī in tē;
　Ō cāre mī Jēsū! nunc līberā mē.
In dūrā catēnā, in miserā poenā
　Dēsīderō tē
Languendō, gemendō, et genūflectendō
　Adōrō, implōrō, ut līberēs mē!

THE SEASONS' GREETINGS

1. Ecce grātum
et optātum
ver redūcit gaudia;
purpurātum
floret prātum,
sol serēnat omnia.
Iamiam cēdant trīstia!
Aestās redit,
nunc recēdit
hiemis saevitia.

2. Iam liquēscit
et dēcrēscit
grandō, nix et cētera;
brūma fugit
et iam sūgit
ver aestātis ūbera.
Illī mēns est misera,
quī nec vīvit
nec lascīvit
sub aestātis dexterā.

The two stanzas of this little Latin poem tell how Spring comes and how the meadows burst into flower; how the bitter winter retreats before the summer; and finally, how pitiable is the person who does not live to enjoy the delights of summer time.
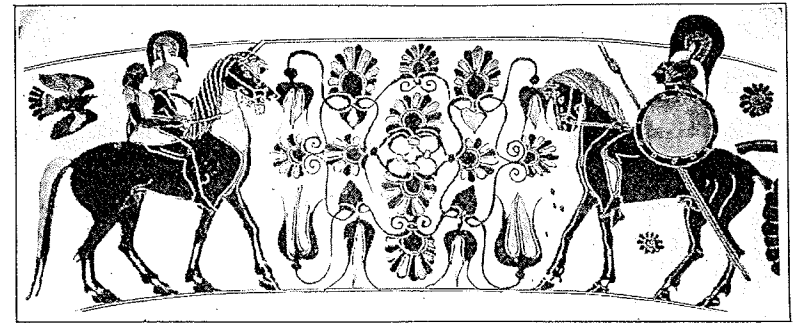
CAVALRY OF 2500 YEARS AGO

These two mounted warriors, each with an attendant on another horse, are painted on a terra-cotta vase found in a tomb in Etruria, modern Tuscany in Italy.

AN INSCRIPTION FROM A TOMB IN MUNICH

O	quid	tua	te
be	bis	bia	abit
ra	ra ra		es
	et in		
ram	ram	ram	
	i i		

See if you can work out this puzzling inscription!

A WAIN OF WINE

The Roman farmer picked his grapes, then had the juice trodden or squeezed out in his wine-press. After it turned to wine he filled a skin container and brought it to town in his wagon. Customers came and bought the wine by the jar, *amphora*, and carried it home.
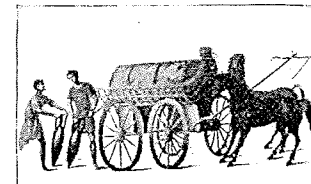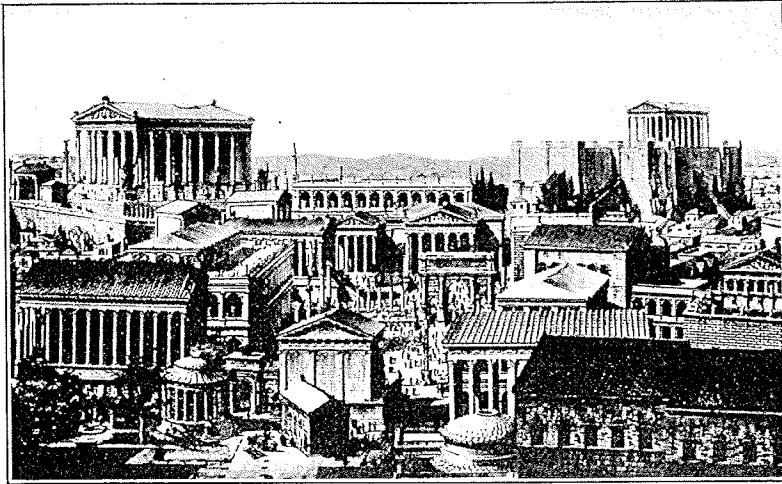
THE GREATEST SMALL SPOT ON EARTH

XVII

OPUSCULUM SEPTIMUM DECIMUM

SĪ VĪS PĀCEM, PARĀ BELLUM

If you want peace, prepare for war is a common saying. The
French say **bâton porte paix,** *a stick carries peace.* The Romans
had a hard time of it in their early days, because **omne initium est
difficile,** *every beginning is hard,* but their wars finally established
the first real peace the world ever knew, **PĀX RŌMĀNA.**

117. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

Rōma oppidum antīquum Ītaliae est. In mediō oppidō

Forum est. Rōmānī in Forō ambulābant, amīcōs salūtābant,

negōtium agēbant. In Forō multa et pulchra aedificia, multae
transacted

tabernae, multa templa erant. Plēnum erat Forum templōrum,
were full

tabernārum, aedificiōrum. In templīs erant pulchrae statuae
shops

deōrum. Rōmānī deōs multōs colēbant. Deīs dōna dabant.
worshipped

84

Templum Vestae aedificium rotundum erat. Prope hoc
circular this

templum habitābant Vestālēs, fēminae nōtae et bonae, quae
who

īgnem sacrum in Vestae templō servābant. Templa deōrum
fire watched

Rōmānōrum alba et pulchra erant. Cārum Rōmānīs erat

Forum, cāra erant templa deōrum, cārae erant viae oppidī

antīquī.

118.   VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī, *n.* building   negōtium, -ī, *n.* business
amīcus, -ī, *m.* friend   oppidum, -ī, *n.* town
deus, -ī, *m.* god   templum, -ī, *n.* temple
dōnum, -ī, *n.* gift   medius middle of
Forum, -ī, *n.* public square   dō give

119. Declension of *oppidum, oppidī* (*neuter*), town.

	Singular	Plural	Case Ending Singular	Plural
Nom.	oppidum	oppida	-um	-a
Gen.	oppidī	oppidōrum	-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	oppidō	oppidīs	-ō	-īs
Acc.	oppidum	oppida	-um	-a
Abl.	oppidō	oppidīs	-ō	-īs

120.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Nouns of the second declension ending in **-um** in the nomina-
tive singular are neuter. In the singular the declension of these
neuter nouns differs from that of masculine nouns only in the
nominative case. In what cases of the plural does the declen-
sion of **oppidum** differ from that of the masculine nouns you
have studied? Notice that the case endings of all neuter nouns

are alike in the nominative and accusative singular, and also in the nominative and accusative plural. The last two always end in -a.

Nouns in -ius and -ium end in the genitive singular in either -ī or -iī. The base, however, always ends in -i. In this book we shall use the ending -ī; *e.g.*, negōtium, genitive negōtī. The accent is on the penult, ne gō′tī. What is the genitive singular of aedificium? What is its base?

The dative is often used with adjectives like cārus, *e.g.*, cārum Rōmānīs erat Forum, dear *to the Romans* was the Forum.

121.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: templum in the singular; dōnum in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid in Forō vidēbās? Multa aedificia, multōs virōs vidēbam.   **2.** Sunt-ne templa deōrum in Forō pulchra? Templa deōrum in Forō pulchra sunt.   **3.** Cuius (*whose*) est templum rotundum? Vestae est templum rotundum.

122.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: fortūna bona in the nominative plural; equus in the accusative plural; lēgātus in the ablative plural.

Translate: You (*s.*) give, you (*s.*) gave; we love, we used to love; they save, they were saving.

Complete: **1.** In mediō oppid— sunt multa aedifici—. **2.** Portae templī pulchr— erant.   **3.** Virī et fēminae ad templa dōn— portāb—.   **4.** In templ— antīquīs statuae de— erant.   **5.** Templum Vestae Rōmānīs cār— erat.   **6.** Circum Forum aedificia pulchr— sunt.
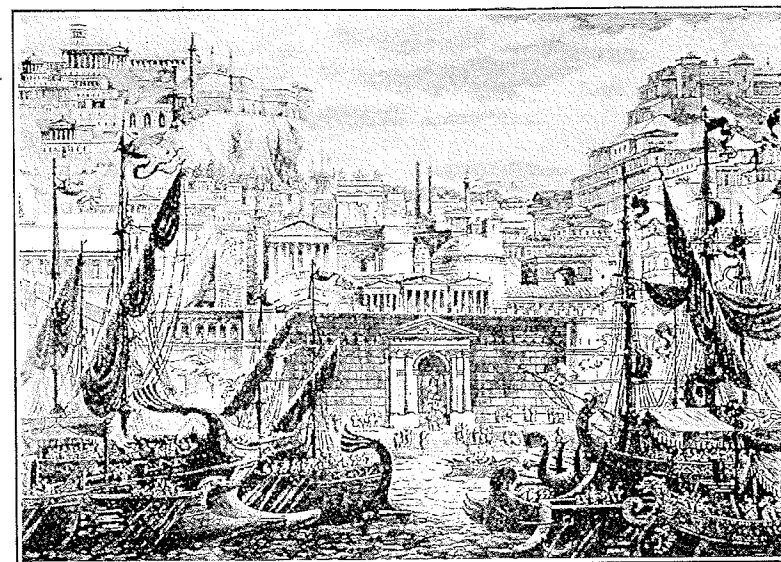
VIEW FROM THE TIBER TO THE FORUM

The Forum in ancient Rome was at first a market place where there were shops to which people came to buy and sell. Later, the little shops were replaced by beautiful temples and by buildings for law courts and government business. Here, too, stood a platform called a rōstra from which public men addressed the Roman people on political and other matters.

Forum is now an English word that denotes a meeting for general discussion of some topic. There is also an American magazine called *The Forum,* in which important topics are discussed from different points of view.

123.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *deity, donate, edifice, medium,* and *negotiate* derived?

XVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒVĪCĒSIMUM

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

124. Declensions of *lātus* and *līber*

Lātus, lāta, lātum, wide.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Gen.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat.	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Abl.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

Līber, lībera, līberum, free.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

125. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

A Latin noun can have only one gender, but every Latin adjective has all three genders, so that it may modify a noun of any gender. For example, *a wide field* is, in Latin, **ager lātus**; *a wide street* is **via lāta**; *a wide building* is **aedificium lātum**. Lātus has a masculine ending when it agrees with the masculine noun **ager**; a feminine ending when it agrees with the feminine

88

noun **via**; and a neuter ending when it agrees with the neuter noun **aedificium**.

In learning the declensions of the adjectives given in **124**, notice that **lātus** is declined in the masculine exactly like **equus**; in the feminine like **terra**; in the neuter like **oppidum**. Learn all three forms of the nominative singular, then all three forms of the genitive singular, and so on.

Līber is declined in the masculine like **puer**; but in the feminine and neuter its declension does not differ from that of **lātus**. The base of -r adjectives of the first and second declension is found by dropping the final **a** of the nominative singular feminine; for example, the base of **līber, lībera, līberum** is **līber-**. What is the base of **pulcher**?

126. VOCABULARY REVIEW

amīcus, -a, -um friendly
antīquus, -a, -um ancient
bonus, -a, -um good
cārus, -a, -um dear
grātus, -a, -um pleasant
laetus, -a, -um happy
lātus, -a, -um wide
līber, lībera, līberum free
longus, -a, -um long

māgnus, -a, -um large
medius, -a, -um the middle of
miser, misera, miserum wretched
multus, -a, -um much, many
niger, nigra, nigrum black
nōtus, -a, -um well-known
novus, -a, -um new
parvus, -a, -um small
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful

127. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: the adjective **amīcus** in all genders in the singular; **grātus** in all genders in the plural; **pulcher** in all genders in the singular and plural.

Complete: **1.** In oppidō (*beautiful*) sunt viae (*long*). **2.** Portae templōrum (*white*) sunt (*new*). **3.** In viīs (*long*), virōs (*many*) et fēminās (*many*) vidēmus. **4.** Rōma oppidum (*free and*

famous) Ītaliae est.   **5.** Rōmānī deīs (*ancient*) multa dōna
dabant.   **6.** Virī (*wretched*) prope portās templōrum (*Roman*)
sedēbant.   **7.** Agricola agrōs (*wide*) arābat.   **8.** In (*the middle
of*) templō statua Vestae est.
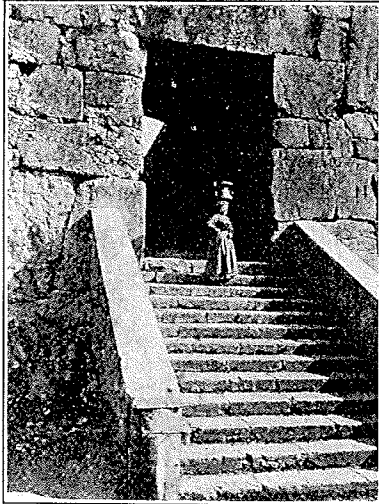
Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin

ITALY YOUNG AND OLD

This young Italian girl has filled her bronze jar with spring water at the fountain
jet inside the wall of the citadel, *arx*, of the ancient Italic town of Alatri, some thirty-
five miles south of Rome.   The lintel above the gate is about ten feet long, seven
feet high, and eight feet thick.   The wall itself, which can be seen through the gate,
is about twelve feet thick.   This gives you an idea of the municipal pride that ex-
isted in the fourth or fifth century B.C., which protected its citizens so well.   There
are dozens of such early walls in the hill towns of Italy.
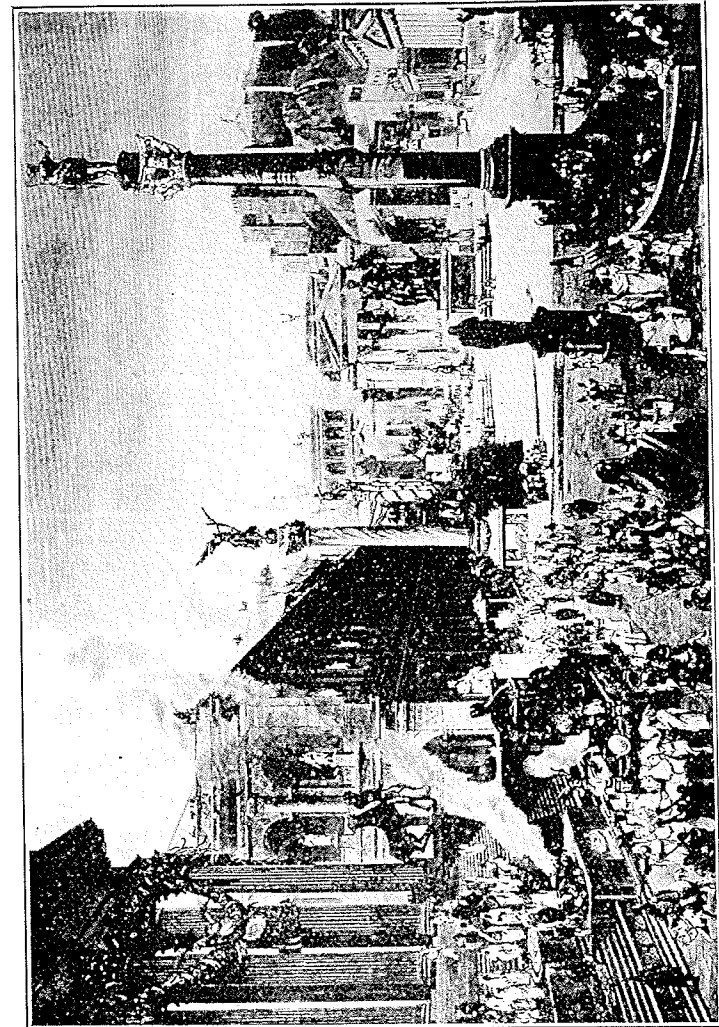
A FESTAL DAY IN THE ROMAN FORUM
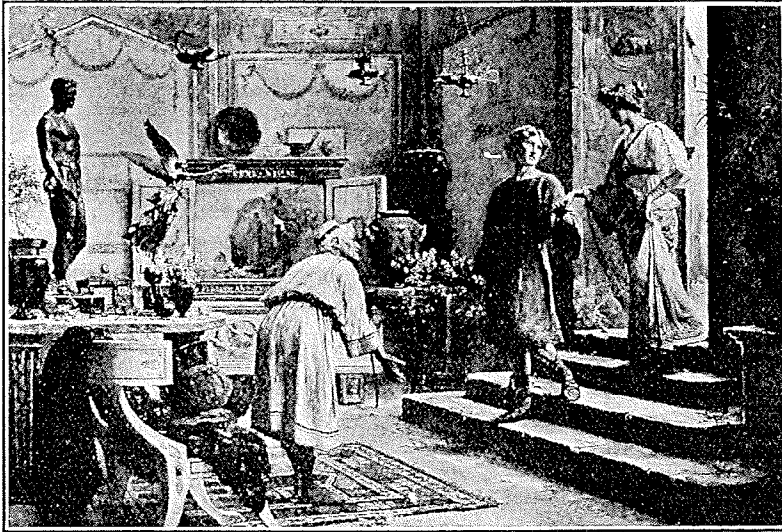
From a painting by E. Forti *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
A ROMAN "OLD CURIOSITY SHOP"

XIX

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒVĪCĒSIMUM

VĒRITĀS VŌS LĪBERĀBIT

This is the motto of The Johns Hopkins University, and also part of the motto of the University of Tennessee. In English it is: *the truth shall make you free.*

128. TABERNA ANTĪQUA

In tabernā antīquā rēs multae et pulchrae sunt. Mercātor
shop objects the merchant
multīs in terrīs lātē errābat. Ē Graeciā māgnam cōpiam statuā-
widely wandered
rum, tabulārum, vāsōrum in Ītaliam reportābat et in tabernā
of vases
collocābat. Virī Rōmānī et fēminae Rōmānae pulchra opera
works
Graeca vehementer amābant. Rōmānī viās oppidī, vīllās,

templa deōrum statuīs Graecīs ōrnābant.
adorned

92

Nunc Cornēlia, fēmina Rōmāna, cum amīcō prope portam stat. Mercātor Cornēliam salūtat. Mox Cornēlia in tabernā statuās, tabulās, vāsa pulchra spectābit. Mercātor Cornēliae multās fābulās dē statuīs et tabulīs nārrābit. Statua parva et nōta Victōriae Cornēliam vehementer dēlectābit.
will delight
Cornēlia mercātōrī pecūniam dabit. Servī statuam pulchram cum cūrā ad casam portābunt. Cornēlia amīcīs dē tabernā parvā et dē mercātōre bonō nārrābit. Multī Rōmānī ad tabernam appropinquābunt et mercātōrī multam pecūniam dabunt.

129. VOCABULARY

cōpia, -ae, *f.* supply	reportō bring back
cūra, -ae, *f.* care	nunc now (*adverb*)
tabula, -ae, *f.* painting	vehementer greatly (*adv.*)
Victōria, -ae, *f.* Victory, or the	dē about (*prep. with abl.*)
goddess of victory	in into (*prep. with acc.*)
collocō collect	in in (*prep. with abl.*)
quō to what place, whither	

130. Future Tense Active of *portō*.

In learning the conjugation of this tense, always accent the syllable before the **b** of the tense sign.

Singular	*Plural*
portābō, I shall carry	por tā′bi mus, we shall carry
portābis, you will carry	por tā′bi tis, you will carry
portābit, he, she, it will carry	portābunt, they will carry

131. SPOT LIGHTS

In the last two paragraphs of the story find eight verbs in the future tense. Five are in the third person singular, and

three in the third person plural. How do you know? Look at the forms of the future tense of **portō**.

A verb in the future tense active is composed of three parts:

(*a*) the present stem

(*b*) the tense sign **-bi**

The tense sign **-bi**, however, becomes **-b-** in the first person singular, and **-bu-** in the third person plural.

(*c*) the personal endings, **-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

What is the tense sign of the imperfect? How do the personal endings of the future and the imperfect tenses active differ from those of the present tense active?

132. ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **miser** in the singular, all genders; **niger** in the plural, all genders; **cōpia** in the singular; **cūra** in the plural.

Conjugate: **servō** in the future tense; **reportō** in the imperfect tense.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid in tabernā spectābis? Pulchra opera Graeca in tabernā spectābō. **2.** Quid mercātōrī dabitis? Pecūniam mercātōrī dabimus. **3.** Quō (*where*) servus statuam portābit? Ad casam servus statuam portābit. **4.** Ubi statuam Cornēlia locābit? In vīllā statuam Cornēlia locābit. **5.** Cūr Rōmānī ad tabernam appropinquābunt? Ad tabernam appropinquābunt quod statuās et tabulās vehementer amant. **6.** Ubi mercātor bonus errābat? Multīs in terrīs mercātor errābat.

133. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: he collects, he was collecting, he will collect; we bring back, we were bringing back, we shall bring back.

Write: **negōtium māgnum** in the ablative singular and nominative plural.
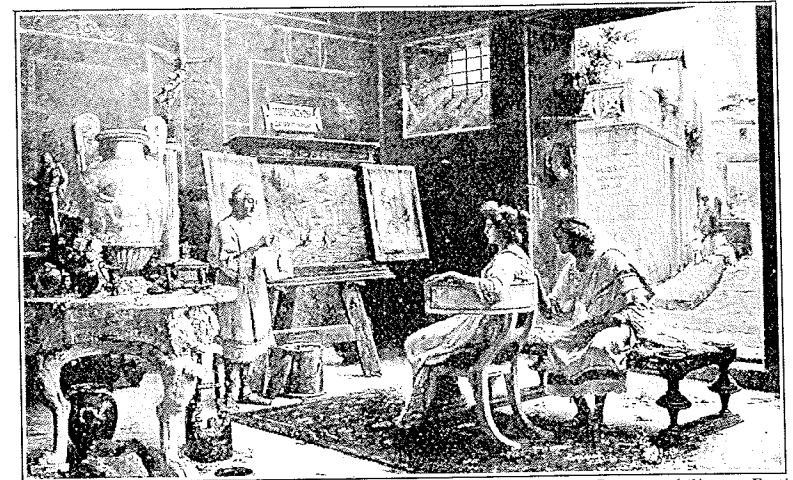
From a painting by E. Forti   A GREEK MASTERPIECE   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

On the easel is a painting by a Greek master that has just come into the Roman market. The dealer is reading its description to a Roman lady and her husband. She sits in rapt attention, paying no heed to the other beautiful articles displayed on the marble-topped table.

Separate: the forms **collocant, collocābant, collocābunt** to show the present stem, tense sign, and personal ending of each.

Complete: **1.** (*I shall save*) fēminam. **2.** Servī statuam ad casam (*will carry*). **3.** Rōmānī multa opera ex templīs Graecīs (*will bring back*). **4.** Fābulam dē statuā Victōriae (*you*, s., *will tell*).

134. WORD STUDY

With what words in the vocabulary are *accurate, copious, report,* and *tablet* connected?

Derivatives of **tabula.** This Latin word originally meant *a flat board.* Since a flat piece of wood could be written on, the word came to mean a writing *tablet;* since it could be painted on, it came to mean *a painting.* The French word for painting is *tableau* (pl. *tableaux*). In English the word *tableau* is the name given to a living picture. How did our word *table* get its meaning?

XX

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM

AMOR PATRIAE NOSTRA LĒX EST

This patriotic sentence, *love of fatherland is our law,* applies to the story below.

135.   CORIOLĀNUS ET MĀTER

Ōlim Rōmānī māximē timēbant, quod castra Volscōrum in
very much   of the Volsci
agrīs prope Rōmam vidēbant. Volscī hostēs erant populī
                                        enemies
Rōmānī, et Coriolānus, vir fortis Rōmānus, Volscōs dūcēbat.
                       brave   led
Māgnum erat perīculum oppidī et populī. Coriolānus populō

Rōmānō vehementer īrātus erat. Volscī māgnam cōpiam tēlōrum
                    angry
et multōs virōs habēbant. Mox Volscī et Coriolānus oppidum

Rōmam occupābunt.

Nunc māter et uxor et duo fīliī Coriolānī ex oppidō ad castra
             wife   two
īre properant. Ad Coriolānum appropinquant. " Cūr, Corio-
to go
lāne," inquit māter, " tē video apud hostēs Rōmae? Patriam-ne
        said   you   among
et amīcōs et nōs dēlēbis? Misericordiam prō patriā et prō
        us   mercy
populō Rōmānō ōrāmus." Tum Coriolānus, quī mātrem et
            we beg   who
uxōrem et fīliōs māximē amābat, " Nōs," inquit, " abībimus.
                                      we   shall go away
Valē, māter, valēte, uxor cāra, et fīliī cārī ! Rōmam et patriam

nōn dēlēbō."

136.   VOCABULARY

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.* camp	dēleō, dēlēre destroy
fīlius, fīlī, *m.* son	habeō, habēre have
perīculum, -ī, *n.* danger	occupō, occupāre seize
populus, -ī, *m.* people	timeō, timēre fear
tēlum, -ī, *n.* weapon	video, vidēre see

ōlim   once upon a time

**137. Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses Active of *video*,
*vidēre*** (Present stem *vidē-*), see. The form **vidēre** is the present infinitive, *to see.*

Present

Singular	*Plural*
video, I see, etc.	vidēmus, we see, etc.
vidēs	vidētis
videt	vident

Imperfect

vidēbam, I saw, etc.	vidēbāmus, we saw, etc.
vidēbās	vidēbātis
vidēbat	vidēbant

Future

vidēbō, I shall see	vidē'bimus, we shall see, etc.
vidēbis, you will see, etc.	vidē'bitis
vidēbit	vidēbunt

138.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Video is a verb of the *second conjugation.* Its present stem is vidē-. The present stem of portō, as you have learned, is portā-. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of video, as you will see in learning them, are formed almost like those of portō. What difference do you see in the formation of the first person singular, present tense, of these two verbs?

The present stem of a verb can always be seen in its present infinitive. The present infinitive always ends in **-re.** If you drop this **-re,** you will have the present stem. In the vocabulary of this lesson and in all later vocabularies, the present infinitive is written after the present indicative, first person singular. Always learn both forms.

Look at the verb **occupō** in the vocabulary and tell (1) what its present stem is, and (2) to what conjugation it belongs. Do the same with **timeō** and **dēleō.**

139. ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **populus līber; tēlum longum; castra lāta.**

Conjugate: **timeō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Castra-ne in agrīs vidētis? Castra māgna prope oppidum vidēmus. **2.** Timet-ne hostēs populus Rōmānus? Populus Rōmānus hostēs vehementer timet. **3.** Hostēs-ne templa deōrum Rōmānōrum dēlēbant? Templa deōrum Rōmānōrum nōn dēlēbant. **4.** Habēbitis'-ne in castrīs multa tēla? In castrīs multa tēla habēbimus.

140. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: we fear, we feared, we shall fear; you (*pl.*) have, you (*pl.*) had, you (*pl.*) will have.

Complete: **1.** Agrōs et oppidum populī Rōmānī (*they will destroy*). **2.** Quem in castrīs Volscōrum (*did you see*, pl.)? **3.** Hostēs multa tēla (*do not have*). **4.** Māter Coriolānī perīculum (*did not fear*), quod patriam māximē (*she loved*). **5.** Aedificia oppidī antīquī (*we shall not destroy*).

141. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *evident, habit, indelible, filial, peril, popular,* and *timid* derived?

Castra, *camp.* When the Romans conquered England, they established in that country many permanent camps with great

From a painting by E. Forti POMPEIAN PLEASANTRIES *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

A handsome young man of Pompeii has just driven out of the city through the arched gateway and is dashing along a Street of Tombs. As he passes two of his friends he wittily compares their slow walk to the speed of his galloping mares. Notice the four-horse chariot, *quadrīga,* of bronze, on top of the arch, and the smoke curling up from that dangerous neighbor of Pompeii, the volcano Vesuvius.

walls and moats. Tradesmen came to these camps to do business with the soldiers. Other people came here in order to live in safety. Thus these camps became towns. In such names as Manchester and Lancaster, the endings *-chester* and *-caster* show that these towns were once Roman camps.

Can you mention any other British towns whose names originated in the same way? How does it come that although the Romans never came to America, we have towns called Manchester and Lancaster?
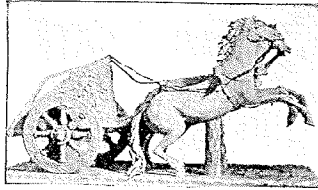
Vatican

A ROMAN CHARIOT IN MARBLE

XXI

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

142.   CERĒS ET PRŌSERPINA

Cerēs, dea frūmentī, cum suā fīliā Prōser'pinā in Siciliā habi-

tābat. Ōlim Plūtō, deus Īnferōrum, Prōserpinam pulchram

of those below

suīs nigrīs equīs abstulit. Tum Cerēs erat māximē īrāta propter

carried away

fīliam captam. "Nōn iam," inquit, "erit frūmentum in agrīs.

captured

Virī et fēminae quoque erunt miserī quod ego sum misera."

Māgnus erat dolor populī quod cibus nōn iam erat in casīs.

grief

Māgnus erat dolor deae bonae quod fīlia apud Īnferōs erat.

in the lower world

Māgnus erat dolor Prōserpinae quod Cererem nōn iam vidēbat.

Deinde Iuppiter, māximus deōrum, Mercurium, nūntium

at last   greatest

deōrum, ad Īnferōs īre properāre et Prōserpinam ad Cererem

redūcere iubet. Prōserpina ad templum Cereris īre properat.

to lead back   of Ceres

Laeta nunc est Cerēs quod suam fīliam habet. Mox erit cōpia

frūmentī in agrīs, cōpia cibī in casīs, quod Cerēs agrōs iterum

cūrābit.

Note. — For this story, and others of a mythological character, see Frances E. Sabin, *Classical Myths that Live Today.*

143.   VOCABULARY

cibus, -ī, *m.* food

dea, -ae, *f.* goddess

deus, -ī, *m.* god

frūmentum, -ī, *n.* grain

nūllus, -a, -um no

nūntius, -ī, *m.* messenger

suus, -a, -um his, her, its, their

propter on account of (*prep. with acc.*)

cūrō, cūrāre care for

iubeō, iubēre order

iterum again (*adv.*)

iam now, already

nōn iam no longer

quoque also (*adv.*)

144. Imperfect and Future Tenses of *sum*

Review Section 85.

Imperfect

Singular	*Plural*
eram, I was, etc.	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

Future

erō, I shall be	e'rimus
eris, you will be, etc.	e'ritis
erit	erunt

145.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The possessive adjective suus, sua, suum has four different meanings, *his, her, its, their.* To decide which of these is its correct meaning in any sentence you must know that:

   a. Suus, -a, -um, always refers to the subject of the sentence. For example, *Marcus loves his horse,* Mārcus suum equum amat.

   b. Suus, -a, -um agrees, like any other adjective, in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies, and does not agree with the noun to which it refers. It agrees with the person, place, or thing possessed, not with the possessor.* For example,

* Students of French will recall that the French words *son, sa, ses,* which are derived from suus, are used in exactly the same way.

the man loves his daughter, **vir suam fīliam amat.**   **Suam** is femi-
nine because it modifies **fīliam**, a feminine noun, although it refers
to **vir**, a masculine noun.   In the same way, *the woman loves
her son* becomes **fēmina suum fīlium amat.**   Here **suum** agrees
with the masculine noun **fīlium**, although it refers to the feminine
noun **fēmina.**

146.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **frūmentum multum** in the singular; **nūntius** in the
plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Ubi erat Proserpina?
Apud Īnferōs erat Proserpina.   **2.** Erit-ne fīlia deae semper
apud Īnferōs?   Nōn semper erit Proserpina apud Īnferōs.
3. Cūrābit-ne iterum dea frūmentum in agrīs?   Iterum cūrābit
dea frūmentum in agrīs.   **4.** Vidēbit-ne Cerēs dōna in suō
templō?   Cerēs dōna in suō templō vidēbit.   **5.** Cūr erat dea
misera?   Dea erat misera quod suam fīliam cāram nōn habēbat.

147.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Conjugate: **iubeō** in the future tense; **cūrō** in the imperfect
tense.

Complete: **1.** Dea ad (*her own*) templum īre properābit.
2. Fēminae nūllum cibum in casīs (*had*).   **3.** Agricolae frū-
mentum nōn iam (*will have*).   **4.** Cerēs cōpiam frūmentī nōn
(*will give*).   **5.** Fābulae dē Proserpinā (*are well known*).

148.   WORD STUDY

Derivatives of **cūra** and **cūrāre.**   What does the *curator* of a museum
do?   What does the *curate* of a church do?   If you are *secure*, from
what are you free?   What is a very important factor in the *cure* of a
disease?   " His position is a mere *sinecure.*"   The Latin **sine** means
without.   What kind of position then is meant by *sinecure* in the sen-
tence just given?   What do you do to be *accurate*?   Does *curious*
come from **cūrāre** ?

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

ET TŪ, BRŪ'TE!

Julius Caesar knew the family of Brutus well, and had seen
him grow up from childhood.   His surprise therefore was over-
powering when he saw his young friend among his would-be
murderers.   It may not be true that Caesar thus exclaimed, but
the tradition that he did is well worthy of belief.

149.   LUPUS ET ĀGNUS

Vōbīs fābulam dē lupō et āgnō nārrābō.   Haec est fābula
              _{wolf} _{lamb}
Aesōpī.   Cui vestrum est nōta haec fābula?
         _{to whom}

Prope rīpam fluvī lupus et āgnus stant.   Lupus āgnum spectat
           _{of a river}
et " Tū," inquit, " cūr aquam mihi perturbās? "   Āgnus vehe-
         _{says}
menter timet, sed respondet: " Aquam tibi nōn perturbō;

aqua dē [1] tē ad mē fluit, nōn dē mē ad tē."
               _{flows}

Sed lupus iterum, " Cūr," inquit, " mihi unō ante annō
maledīcēbās? " [2]   Et āgnus miser, " Cūr falsō mē accūsās? "
                                              _{falsely}
respondet.   " Ego nōn sum nātus ūnum annum."   " Sī," inquit
              _{not   have been born}   _{if}
lupus, " nōn tū, tum tuus pater."   Statim āgnum rapit et necat.
                _{then}   _{father}   _{at once}   _{seizes}

150.   VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, *m.* year	**ūnus, -a, -um** one
rīpa, -ae, *f.* bank	**accūsō, accūsāre** accuse
ego I	**necō, necāre** kill
tū you	**perturbō, perturbāre** stir up
tuus, -a, -um your	**respondeō, respondēre** reply
	dē about, down from (*prep. with abl.*)

151.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Notice that dē here means *down from*.

2. male, *bad*, + dīcere, *to say*. Translate *why were you saying evil things about me a year ago?* Mihi is dative with the verb.

152. Declension of the Personal Pronouns *ego*, I, and *tū*, you.

Learn these declensions thoroughly.

	Ego		*Tū*	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	ego, I	nōs, we	tū, you	vōs, you
Gen.	meī, of me	nostrum / nostrī } of us	tuī, of you	vestrum / vestrī } of you
Dat.	mihi, to me, for me	nōbīs, to us, for us	tibi, to you, for you	vōbīs, to you, for you
Acc.	mē, me	nōs, us	tē, you	vōs, you
Abl.	mē, (by) me	nōbīs, (by) us	tē, (by) you	vōbīs, (by) you

153.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun; *e.g.*, *mother* says that *she* will go.

In Latin, the personal pronouns, except those in the nominative case, are used as commonly as they are in English. They are not used so commonly in the nominative case, because they are not needed, since verb endings in Latin indicate the person of the subject. These pronouns are used, however, as subjects, whenever it is desired to express emphasis or contrast, as in the following examples:

(*a*) **Ego sum Rōmānus; tū Britannus es.** *I* am a Roman; *you* are a Briton.

(*b*) **Tū-ne timēbās?** Were *you* afraid?

Notice that **tū** is used in addressing one person, but **vōs** in addressing more than one. In English, we no longer use the

singular *thou* in everyday speech; we say *you* whether we are speaking to one or to more than one. When **cum** is used with the ablative of ego or tū, it is attached to the pronoun, *e.g.*, **pāx vōbīscum,** *peace be with you!*

154.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis māgnō in perīculō est? Āgnus māgnō in perīculō est. **2.** Quis nostrum fābulam nōn amat? Iūlia fābulam dē lupō nōn amat. **3.** Cūr aquam nōbīs perturbātis? Nōs aquam vōbīs nōn perturbāmus. **4.** Nārrābat-ne Aesōpus tibi fābulam? Nōn mihi, sed Graecīs Aesōpus fābulam nārrābat. **5.** Sunt-ne lupī et āgnī semper nōbīscum? Lupī et āgnī sunt semper nōbīscum.

155.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** (*To you*), puerī et puellae, fābulam nārrābō. **2.** Fābulae multae Aesōpī (*to me*) sunt nōtae. **3.** Aqua fluvī dē (*you*, pl.) ad (*us*) fluit. **4.** Cūr (*to us*) fābulam nōn nārrās? **5.** (*We*) fābulās Aesōpī amāmus; (*you*, pl.) fābulās dē virīs et deīs Rōmānīs amātis.

156.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *annual, egotist,* and *union* derived?

Biannual and *biennial* have different meanings although they are both derived from **annus.** Learn their meanings. What is an *annu'ity?* In what year will the *centennial* of the Armistice (1918) be celebrated? What kind of plant is a *perennial?* Some books of history have been entitled *annals.* What system would be used in dividing such a history into chapters?

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM TERTIUM

WORD STUDY

IN STĀTŪ QUŌ ANTE

This legal phrase means, *in the same status* (or *state*) *as before.* The Latin words status quo have become Anglicized, and so they are not printed in italics, as is customary when one uses foreign words.

157. DERIVATIVES OF *STŌ, STĀRE,* STAND

Find ten English words related to the Latin word **stāre.** Look in the dictionary for words beginning *sta-.* Write these words, with their definitions, in your notebook. Use, if you like, the wheel diagram suggested on page **67.**

158. FAMILIAR ABBREVIATIONS

Some Latin phrases used in English are abbreviated. Learn these abbreviations, their corresponding Latin phrases, and the English meanings:

	Abbreviation	*Latin Phrase*	*English Meaning*
1.	e.g.	exem lī grātiā	for example
2.	i.e.	id est	that is
3.	cf.	cōnfer	compare (imperative)
4.	A.M.	(a) Ante merīdiem	before noon
		(b) Artium magister	Master of Arts
5.	P.M.	Post merīdiem	after noon
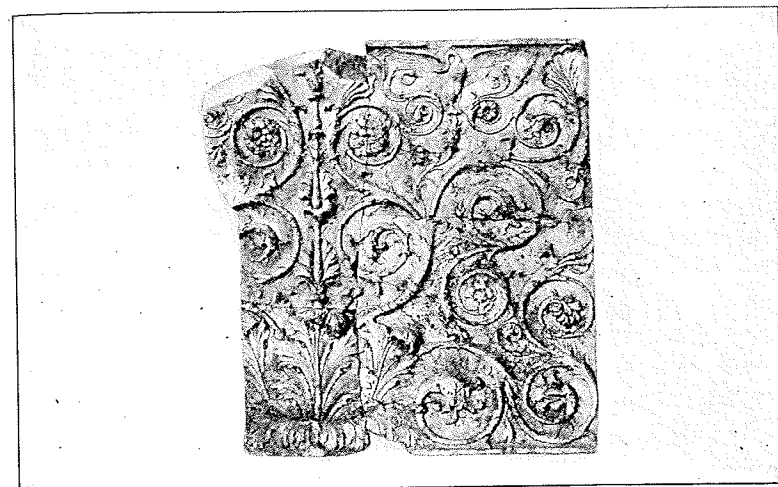
FLOWERS IN STONE

159. ĀRA PĀCIS

The Roman emperor Augustus built a beautiful Altar of Peace, *Āra Pācis,* of white marble. The best sculptors of the day worked on its decoration. This is a piece of one of the many slabs on which a plant design was carved. This graceful design, showing the beauty of leaf, flower, and spiral tendril, has been copied by many modern artists.

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

REPETĪTIŌ EST MĀTER STUDIŌRUM

These Latin words are so nearly like English that they need no translation. Repetition sharpens the point of any review lesson. Assidua stīlla saxum excāvat, *a steady drip makes a hole in a rock,* is another saying with about the same meaning. Two other Latin sayings are also pertinent without being impertinent: via trīta via tūta, *a beaten path is a safe path,* and scrībere scrībendō, dīcendō dīcere discunt, *people* (literally, *they*) *learn to write by writing, to talk by talking.*

160.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. What endings do second declension nouns have in the nominative case? **2.** What genders are represented in the second declension? **3.** On what does the gender of Latin nouns depend? **4.** Give the endings of all cases, singular and plural, of masculine nouns of the second declension. **5.** In what cases of the singular do neuter nouns of this declension differ from masculine nouns? **6.** In what cases of the plural? **7.** What endings do neuter nouns have in the cases you have mentioned?

1. How does **puer** differ from **ager** in declension? **2.** How many genders has a Latin adjective? **3.** Why does an adjective have more than one gender? **4.** What is the present stem of **portō**? of **videō**? **5.** How do you form the imperfect tense of these verbs? **6.** Tell how the future tense is formed. **7.** What irregular verb have you studied? **8.** In which of the following sentences, when translated into Latin, may some form of the adjective **suus** be used? (*a*) I saw his mother. (*b*) The boy loved his mother. (*c*) They obeyed their parents.

161.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: **1.** We order, we ordered, we shall order. **2.** You (*s.*) care, you cared, you will care. **3.** He replies, he replied, he will reply. **4.** They are, they were, they will be. **5.** You (*pl.*) collect, you collected, you will collect.

Complete: **1.** Āgnus parvus lupum vehementer (*feared*). **2.** Rōmānī oppidum (*their own*) et templa (*their own*) amābant. **3.** Multīs (*of you*) nōtae et grātae sunt fābulae Aesōpī. **4.** Rōmānī castra māgna prope Rōmam (*will see*). **5.** Vōs, Volscī, oppidum et populum antīquum nōn (*will destroy*). **6.** In Forō Rōmānō erant (*beautiful buildings*) et (*famous statues*).

162.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of the Latin words on the next page? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. aedificium	10. cōpia	20. Forum	30. rīpa
2. ager	11. cūra	21. frūmentum	31. Rōma
3. agricola	12. dea	22. lēgātus	32. servus
4. arēna	13. deus	23. lūdus	33. studium
5. amīcus	14. dominus	24. negōtium	34. tabula
6. annus	15. dōnum	25. nūntius	35. tēlum
7. castra	16. equus	26. oppidum	36. templum
8. cibus	17. fāma	27. perīculum	37. victōria
9. Circus	18. fīlius	28. populus	38. Victōria
Māximus	19. fortūna	29. puer	39. vir

Adjectives

40. antīquus	46. līber	51. multus	56. parvus
41. bonus	47. longus	52. niger	57. pulcher
42. cārus	48. māgnus	53. nōtus	58. suus
43. grātus	49. medius	54. novus	59. tuus
44. laetus	50. miser	55. nūllus	60. ūnus
45. lātus			

Pronouns

61. ego   62. tū

Verbs

63. accūsō	67. dō	71. nūntiō	75. respondeō
64. collocō	68. habeō	72. occupō	76. servō
65. cūrō	69. iubeō	73. perturbō	77. timeō
66. dēleō	70. necō	74. reportō	78. videō

Adverbs

79. iterum	81. nunc	83. quō	85. vehementer
80. iam	82. ōlim	84. quoque	

Prepositions

86. circum   87. dē   88. ē, ex   89. in   90. prō   91. propter

163.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words?   Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. building	11. care	21. grain	31. Rome
2. field	12. goddess	22. ambassador	32. slave
3. farmer	13. god	23. game	33. eagerness
4. sand, arena	14. master	24. business	34. painting
5. friend	15. gift	25. messenger	35. weapon
6. year	16. horse	26. town	36. temple
7. camp	17. fame	27. danger	37. victory
8. food	18. son	28. people	38. goddess of
9. Circus	19. fortune	29. boy	victory
Maximus	20. public	30. bank	39. man
10. supply	square		

Adjectives

40. ancient	46. free	51. much,	56. small
41. good	47. long	many	57. beautiful
42. dear	48. great	52. black	58. his own,
43. pleasant	49. middle of	53. well known	their own
44. joyful	50. wretched	54. new	59. your
45. broad		55. no	60. one

Pronouns

61. I   62. you (s.)

Verbs

63. accuse	67. give	71. announce	75. reply
64. collect	68. have	72. seize	76. save
65. care for	69. order	73. stir up	77. fear
66. destroy	70. kill	74. bring back	78. see

Adverbs

79. again	81. now	83. whither?	85. greatly
80. now, already	82. once upon a time	84. also	

Prepositions

86. around	88. from	90. for
87. about, down from	89. into, in	91. on account of

164.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

These English words are derived from Latin words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* XV–XXIII.   Give or write the Latin word from which each is derived.

1. accurate	13. copious	25. forum	37. report
2. agriculture	14. curate	26. habit	38. reservation
3. annals	15. curator	27. indelible	39. secure
4. annual	16. cure	28. latitude	40. sinecure
5. annuity	17. curious	29. medium	41. study
6. arena	18. deity	30. negotiate	42. table
7. biannual	19. dominate	31. negro	43. tableau
8. biennial	20. donate	32. perennial	44. tablet
9. centennial	21. edifice	33. peril	45. timid
10. cereals	22. egotist	34. popular	46. union
11. circus	23. equestrian	35. preserve	47. virile
12. conservation	24. evident	36. reiterate	

165.   HĪC MANĒBIMUS OPTIMĒ

The Romans were very proud of the strong wall around their city and their military strength.   But a horde of raiding Gauls defeated their army about 390 B.C., then captured Rome and burnt most of it.   The Romans were down-hearted.   The future looked dark.
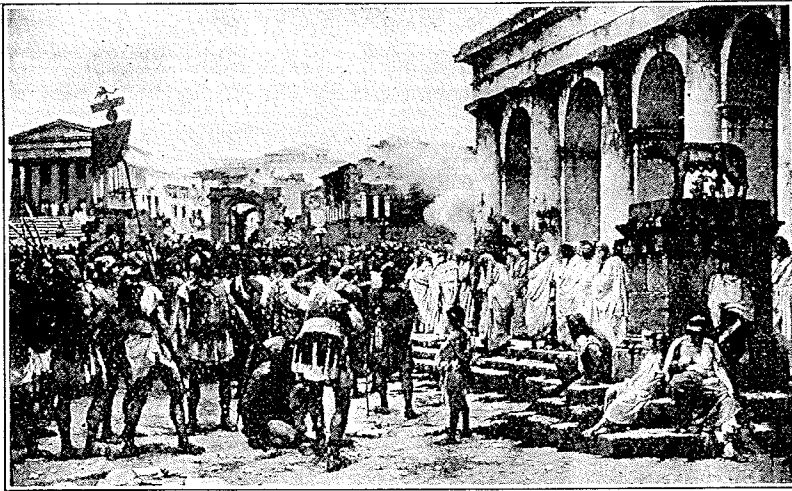
THE SECOND FOUNDING OF ROME

After the Gauls had gone, the Senate discussed ways and means of rebuilding Rome. A strong argument was advanced that it would be wiser to move twenty miles away to a higher site and to rebuild where they would have better natural protection than at Rome. The senators called the people together to propose the move. Just as the chief man of the Senate stepped forward to address the people, a centurion, or captain, with his soldiers came up, to keep order if necessary. He found a good place to plant the standard of his company, and gave the order: **hīc manēbimus optimē,** *here will be the best place for us to stay.* The senators and people heard the order and took it for a sign from their god Jupiter, because it came so accidentally and yet so opportunely at the very moment of a most momentous decision for the future of their city and nation. Therefore, they decided not to move to the other site.

Thus was Rome founded for the second time on its seven hills.

XXV

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

AFFLĀVIT DEUS ET DISSIPANTUR

After the defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1588, Queen Elizabeth had a medal struck to commemorate the victory. The Latin inscription on the medal gave the credit for the victory to God. *God blew, and they are scattered,* is a literal translation of this inscription, which might be expanded into *God raised up a tempest and the ships of the enemy were scattered and destroyed.*

166.   RŌMA ET FĪLIĪ RHEAE SILVIAE

Rōmulus et Remus fīliī erant Rheae Silviae et Mārtis, deī bellī.

Avunculus malus puerōrum Amūlius appellātur. Amūlius rēg-
_{uncle}
num habēre vult. Itaque Rhea Silvia ab Amūliō necātur, et
_{wishes}   _{is killed}
puerī parvī in cistā in fluvium iactantur. Sīc Amūlius rēgnum
_{chest}   _{are thrown}   _{thus}
occupāre spērat.

Sed cōnsiliō deōrum, cista cum puerīs ad rīpam iactātur.

Mox lupa puerōs invenit et cūrat. Puerī parvī ā lupā bonā mul-
_{she wolf}   _{finds}
tōs diēs cūrantur. Tum pāstor bonus, quī Faustulus appellātur,
_{days}   _{shepherd}
puerōs invenit et ad casam portat. Ā Faustulō et ab uxōre

Rōmulus et Remus multōs annōs cūrantur.

Sed puerī, iam adultī, Faustulum rogant: " Quī sumus?
_{ask}
Sumus-ne tuī fīliī? " Tum Faustulus respondet: " Vōs fīliī

estis Rheae Silviae; vōbīs rēgnum dēbētur. Rhea Silvia ab

Amūliō necāta est." Tum Rōmulus et Remus īrā commo-
_{was killed}   _{wrath}

ventur. Cum amīcīs multīs ad oppidum Amūlī properant. Multa tēla ā Rōmulō, ā Remō, ab amīcīs collocantur. Avunculus malus ā Rōmulō et ā Remō necātur.

Parvum oppidum prope rīpam Tiberis aedificant. Oppidum Rōma ā Rōmulō et ab amīcīs appellātur. Nunc oppidum māgnum et nōtum est. Statua lupae et puerōrum in oppidō vidētur. Semper Rōmulus ā Rōmānīs in honōre habētur.

167.   VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, *n.* war	**commoveō, commovēre** move
cōnsilium, -ī, *n.* plan	greatly
rēgnum, -ī, *n.* kingdom	**dēbeō, dēbēre** owe, ought
malus, -a, -um bad	**spērō, spērāre** hope
appellō, appellāre call	**ab, ā** by, from (*prep. with abl.*)

i′ta que therefore (*adv.*)

168. Present Tense Passive of *portō* and *videō*. Learn both the conjugation and the endings.

Singular	*Plural*	*Personal Ending*	
portor, I am carried	**portāmur,** we are carried	-r, -or	-mur
portāris, you are carried	**portāminī,** you are carried	-ris	-minī
portātur, he is carried	**portantur,** they are carried	-tur	-ntur
videor, I am seen	**vidēmur,** we are seen, etc.	-r, -or	-mur
vidēris, you are seen, etc.	**vidēminī**	-ris	-minī
vidētur	**videntur**	-tur	-ntur

169.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In the story there are a great many verbs ending in **-tur** and **-ntur**. These verbs are in the passive voice. In Latin, as in English, verbs are said to be in the passive voice when the

subject is represented as being acted upon. In the sentence, **puer ab amīcō appellātur,** *the boy is called by his friend,* the subject **puer** is being acted upon, and the verb **appellātur** is in the passive voice. In the sentence, **puer amīcum appellat,** *the boy calls his friend,* the subject **puer** is acting, and the verb **appellat** is in the active voice.

Look at **168,** and notice the endings. These are the *personal endings* of verbs in the passive voice. These endings are added to the present stems **portā-** and **vidē-** to form the present tense passive. Do you see any irregularity in the formation of **portor**?

Compare the corresponding personal endings given here and learn them:

Active		*Passive*	
Sing.	*Pl.*	*Sing.*	*Pl.*
-ō	-mus	-r, -or	-mur
-s	-tis	-ris	-minī
-t	-nt	-tur	-ntur

Passive verbs are often modified by an adverbial phrase consisting of the preposition **ab** (**ā**) and a noun or pronoun in the ablative case. In such phrases **ab** means *by*, and the phrase indicates the person by whom the act is done. **Ab** *is never omitted.* An example in the story is **ab Amūliō** (line 3). How many other similar phrases are there in the story?

170.   ORAL EXERCISE

Conjugate: **commoveō** in the present tense passive; **spērō** in the present active.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Ā quō (*by whom*) puerī in fluvium iactantur? Ab Amūliō puerī in fluvium iactantur. **2.** Videntur-ne puerī in rīpā? Puerī in rīpā ā lupā videntur. **3.** Ā quō Rōma aedificātur? Ā Rōmulō Rōma aedificātur. **4.** Fīliī-ne Faustulī appellāminī? Fīliī Rheae

Silviae appellāmur.   **5.** Timētis-ne avunculum malum? Avunculum malum nōn timēmus.   **6.** Timētur-ne avunculus malus ā Rōmulō?   Avunculus malus ā Rōmulō nōn timētur.

171.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: **1.** You (*s.*) are accused; you (*s.*) owe; we have.
2. We are ordered; it is announced; you (*pl.*) are feared; we are seen.

Complete: **1.** Amūlius propter (*his own danger*) perturbātur.
2. (*You*, s., *are moved*) fābulā antīquā.   **3.** (*We are cared for*) ā virō bonō.   **4.** (*You*, s., *are called*) amīcus puerōrum.   **5.** Puerī parvī ā Faustulō (*are seen*).   **6.** Oppidum prope rīpam (*is built*).

172.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *commotion, counsel, debtor, desperate, malice, rebellion,* and *reign* derived?

Malus. This word has given us the prefix *mal-,* which is often used in English to mean *bad* or *lacking in.*   What is meant by malnutrition?   Other examples of this use are found in:

maladroit   not skillful, awkward
malaria   a disease formerly supposed to be caused by bad air
malcontent   a discontented person
malformation   wrong formation, deformity

Define: malady, malefactor, malevolent.

PUERĪ IN LŪDŌ

A Roman elementary school, such as is shown on the next page from the painting on a Greek vase, was called *lūdus,* or play-place; their high school was a *schola,* from which our word comes.   Above, beginning at the left, is a teacher (*magister*) with a harp, giving a lesson to the boy seated in front of him.   Another teacher is either reading from a roll to the standing boy, or hearing
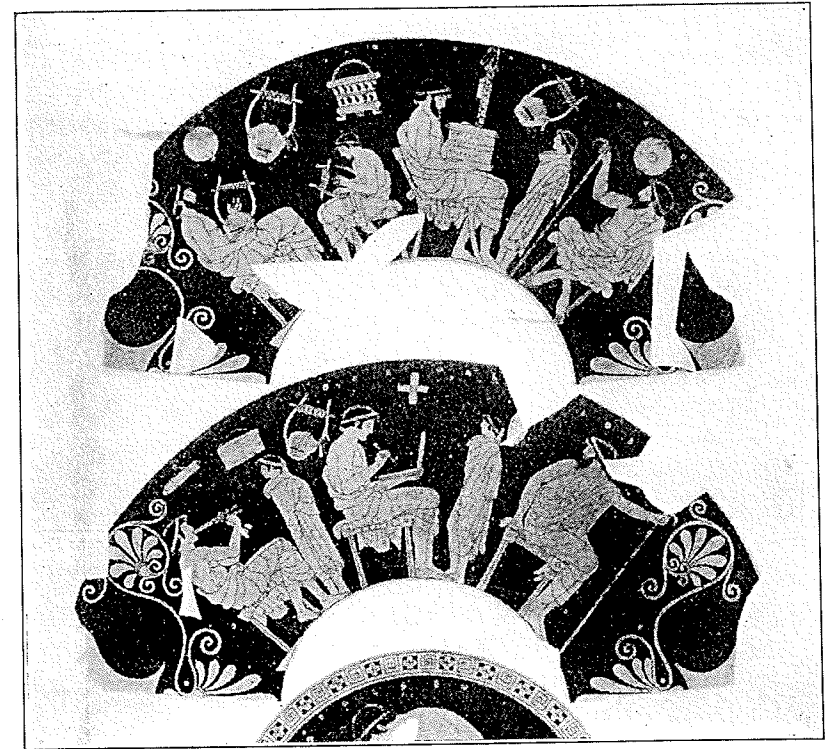
BOYS AT SCHOOL

him recite the lessons he had been given to learn by heart.   At the right end of both pictures sits a *paedagōgus,* a slave who takes the boy to school, carries his books, and helps him with his lessons.

Below, a teacher is giving a lesson on a flute to the boy before him.   Then another teacher with a pencil (*stilus*) in his hand is either writing on a wax-coated tablet some penmanship copy, or is grading the writing which the boy has brought up for examination.   The boy's attendant (*paedagōgus*) seems much interested.

From a painting by E. Forti *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

THE APPIAN WAY

XXVI

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM SEXTUM

173.   VIA APPIA, RĒGĪNA VIĀRUM

Rōmānī Ītaliam merīdiānam bellō superābant et multa oppida
southern
expūgnābant. Viam igitur lātam et pulchram mūnīvērunt.
constructed
Via ad oppida Ītaliae merīdiānae pertinēbat. Via Appia appel-
lābātur. Cōnsiliō Appī, Rōmānī clārī et bonī, mūniēbātur.
by advice
Hodiē Via Appia appellātur.
today

Haec via ōlim monumentīs pulchrīs, templīs albīs, statuīs
ōrnābātur. Rōmānī in Viā Appiā cum amīcīs saepe ambulābant
et lectīcīs portābantur. Cotīdiē in Viā Appiā vidēbantur multī
every day

equī, multae quadrīgae, multae lectīcae. Nūntiī ā Forō Viā
Appiā ad oppida merīdiāna et ad Graeciam properābant. Mīlitēs
soldiers
quoque Rōmānī per Viam Appiam ex Asiā et ā terrīs longinquīs
distant
Rōmam properābant. Tēla et arma fulgēbant. Laetī erant
glittered
mīlitēs quod rūrsus in suā patriā erant, quod Rōmam rūrsus
appropinquābant.

174.   VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, *n.* armor (*pl. only*)   superō, superāre conquer
clārus, -a, -um famous, bright   igitur therefore (*adv.*)
expūgnō, expūgnāre capture   rūrsus again (*adv.*)
ōrnō, ōrnāre adorn   saepe often (*adv.*)
pertineō, pertinēre extend   per through (*prep. with acc.*)

175. Imperfect Tense Passive of *portō* and *videō.* Con-
jugations thoroughly learned make all later work easier.

Singular	*Plural*
portābar, I was carried	portābāmur, we were carried
portābāris, you were carried	portābāminī, you were carried
portābātur, he was carried	portābantur, they were carried
vidēbar, I was seen	vidēbāmur, we were seen, etc.
vidēbāris, you were seen, etc.	vidēbāminī
vidēbātur	vidēbantur

176.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The verb **appellābātur** in lines 3–4 of the story means *was called.*
What shows that it is in the imperfect tense? What shows that
it is in the passive voice? If you look at the imperfect tense
active in **111** and **137**, you will see that the imperfect active and
imperfect passive are exactly alike except in the ending; **portāba-**
and **vidēba-** appear in both active and passive. Make sure that

you know the personal endings of the active and passive as given here.

Active			Passive	
Sing.	*Pl.*		*Sing.*	*Pl.*
-m	-mus		-r	-mur
-s	-tis		-ris	-minī
-t	-nt		-tur	-ntur

Find in the story four imperfect passive verbs besides **appellābātur**.

177.   ORAL EXERCISE

Translate: we accuse, we are accused, we were accusing, we were accused.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Quī multa oppida Ītaliae expūgnābant? Rōmānī multa oppida Ītaliae expūgnābant. 2. Quī in Viā Appiā cotīdiē vidēbantur? Multī et clārī virī, multae et pulchrae fēminae, multī nūntiī populī Rōmānī in Viā Appiā cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Erat-ne pulchra Via Appia antīqua? Via Appia antīqua multīs et pulchrīs aedificiīs ōrnābātur.

178.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the imperfect tense passive third singular of **pertineō** and **ōrnō**; the imperfect passive second plural of **superō** and **expūgnō**; the imperfect passive third plural of **dēbeō** and **locō**; the present active and passive third singular of **spērō**.

Decline: **bellum miserum** in the plural.

Complete: 1. Multa negōtia lēgātīs (*were given*). 2. Viae Rōmānae ad multās terrās (*used to extend*). 3. (*You,* pl., *used to be called*) amīcī populī Rōmānī.

179.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *insuperable, ornament,* and *pertain* derived?

XXVII

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

180.   ANDROMEDA ET MŌNSTRUM HORRIBILE

Haec fābula dē Perseō et dē Andromedā saepe nārrātur. Andromeda erat fīlia cāra rēgis Cepheī.[1] Cepheus et populus māximē dolēbant et timēbant quod mōnstrum horribile terram vāstābat. Cepheus deōs auxilium[2] ōrābat; ā deīs mōnstrō fīliam dare iubēbātur. Itaque Andromeda ad saxum prope ōram maritimam adligāta erat. Pater et māter et populus prope locum stābant.

Dolor māgnus animōs populī occupābat quod Andromeda māximē amābātur. Mox mōnstrum rūrsus appropinquābit et Andromeda dēlēbitur.

Sed Perseus, hērōs nōtus, subitō appropinquat et causam dolōris rogat. Pater miser respondet: " Nostra terra ā mōnstrō horribilī marīnō vāstātur; cotīdiē agrī et frūmenta[3] dēlentur et līberī[4] necantur. Mox meam fīliam cāram habēbit; tum patria et populus servābitur."

Tum Perseus "Tua fīlia," inquit, "mōnstrō nōn dabitur. Et puella et[5] patria auxiliō meō servābuntur; mōnstrum nōn iam vidēbitur. Vīs-ne mihi dare fīliam in mātrimōnium?"

121

181.   VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, *m.* heart, spirit

auxilium, -ī, *n.* aid

causa, -ae, *f.* cause

līberī, -ōrum, *m.* children (*plural only*)

locus, -ī, *m.* place

doleō, dolēre grieve

ōrō, ōrāre beg

vāstō, vāstāre lay waste

182.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Pronounce Ce′phe ĭ, but in English pronounce the nominative form Cépheus (*See′fews*).

2. deōs auxilium: the verb ōrāre, *beg*, is followed by two nouns in the accusative case. Translate: *asked the gods for aid*.

3. frūmenta, the plural of frūmentum, is used only of *grain* while standing in the field, *i.e., crops*.

4. līberī, *children*, comes from the adjective līber, *free*. The masculine plural of this adjective is used as a noun meaning *free-born children*, i.e., *the children of free parents*. The word could not be used of the children of slaves. Furthermore, it implies possession, *i.e., somebody's* children. The Latin for our word *children* is puerī.

5. et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

183. Future Tense Passive of *portō* and *video*. Learn these forms thoroughly, so that you will be able to form the future tense passive of other verbs.

Singular	Plural	Tense sign	
		S.	P.
por tā′bor, I shall be carried	por tā′bi mur, we shall be carried	-b	-bi
por tā′be ris, you will be carried	por tā bi′mi nī, you will be carried	-be	-bi
por tā′bi tur, he will be carried	por tā bun′tur, they will be carried	-bi	-bu

Singular	Plural	Tense sign	
		S.	P.
vi dē′bor, I shall be seen	vi dē′bi mur, we shall be seen	-b	-bi
vi dē′be ris, you will be seen	vi dē bi′mi nī, you will be seen	-be	-bi
vi dē′bi tur, he will be seen	vi dē bun′tur, they will be seen	-bi	-bu

184. Tense Signs of the Present, Imperfect, and Future.

Present (none)

Imperfect -bā

Future -b, -bi, -bu, -be

185.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

What shows that dēlēbitur, *will be destroyed*, in line 10 of the story is in the future tense? What shows that it is in the passive voice? Find four other future passive verbs. Which of them is in the third person plural? How do you know?

The tense sign -bi does not appear in all forms of the future tense passive; in three of them it becomes something slightly different. At the right-hand side of the page in **183** you will find all the forms of the tense sign of the future passive.

186.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis mōnstrō dabitur? Fīlia rēgis mōnstrō prō patriā dabitur. **2.** Cūr timent virī? Virī timent quod agrī ā mōnstrō dēlēbuntur et līberī necābuntur. **3.** Ā quō patria servābitur? Ā fīliā pulchrā rēgis patria servābitur. **4.** Cūr dolētis, virī et fēminae? Dolēmus quod Andromeda mōnstrō dabitur. **5.** Tū-ne, Andromeda, mōnstrō daberis? Mōnstrō dabor; semper igitur (*therefore*) ā populō amābor. **6.** Erat-ne mala fortūna puellae? Nōn mala, sed bona erat fortūna puellae.

187.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the future passive second singular of **vāstō** and **iubeō**;
the future passive first plural of **amō** and of **timeō**; the future
passive third plural of **commoveō** and of **accūsō**; the present,
imperfect, and future active third singular of **pertineō**.

Complete: 1. (*You,* pl., *will be conquered*) bellō ā Rōmānīs.
2. Auxiliō Perseī (*we shall be saved*).   3. Oppida Ītaliae (*will
be captured*).   4. Deī patrem et mātrem et puellam miseram
(*will see*).   5. Cōnsiliō deōrum bonōrum rēgnum (*will be saved*).
6. Agrī lātī rēgis ā mōnstrō (*will be destroyed*).

188.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *animate, auxiliary, devas-
tate, doleful, local,* and *oration* derived?
Derivatives of **ōrāre,** *beg, pray* are:

adore   pray to, worship with reverence.
oratorio   a musical composition usually on a religious theme.
orator   a public speaker, one who pleads a cause.
oracle   the answer of a god to an inquiry; the god who gives
             the answer; the place where the answer is given.

REMINDERS OF LONG AGO

In the Middle Ages, Italian nobles often built a watch tower on some lofty piece
of Roman antiquity. This shattered medieval tower, above an arch of a Roman
aqueduct, still stands where, ages before, the water used to run. This ruin is in
the Roman Campagna out near Tibur, the modern Tivoli, and is a striking sight
in its picturesque dilapidation.
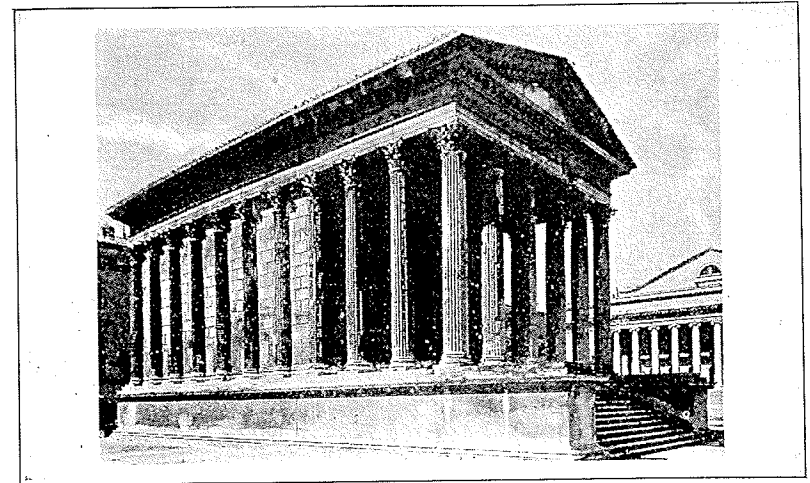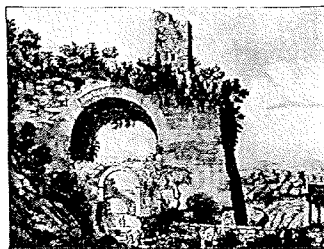
Courtesy of C. R. Ballance

THE MAISON CARRÉE IN NÎMES

ROMAN ART IN THE PROVINCES

The Roman Forum had its counterpart in nearly every city
in the far-flung expanse of Roman dominion. The provincial
when he visited Rome, and the Roman when he visited a great
colonial city, *colōnia,* or a provincial metropolis, *mūnicipium,*
both felt at home among the architectural beauties which were
so nearly alike throughout the empire, especially in its newer
western part.

MAISON CARRÉE

Today in Nîmes, in the French Provence, *prōvincia,* the beauti-
ful temple called the Square Mansion, *maison carrée,* stands in the
public square as a witness of the Roman type of temple architec-
ture.

Courtesy of C. R. Ballance
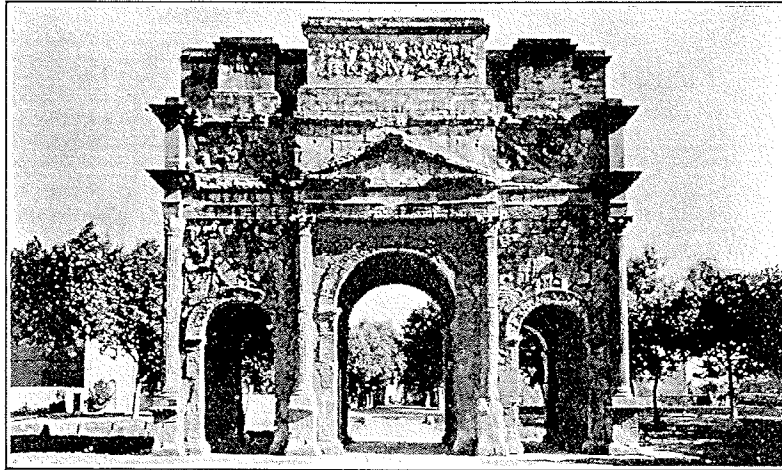
THE ROMAN ARCH AT ORANGE

A ROMAN ARCH IN FRANCE

We must go to the town of Orange, *Arausiō*, in southeastern France and study the relief sculptures on the triple-gated arch if we wish to learn how the ancient Gauls dressed and what kinds of offensive weapons and defensive armor they had. This arch was erected in 21 A.D., during the reign of the emperor Tiberius, to commemorate the suppression of a Gallic uprising.

PORTA NIGRA

The famous *Porta Nigra*, the main gate in the Roman wall around the town of **Augusta Treverōrum** (*Trêves*, *Trier*), has been preserved to modern times in an interesting way. A medieval Roman Catholic church was built around it, and the ancient gate was used for a monumental entrance. As can be seen in the lower picture on the next page, the steps of the cathedral were built up over the two main roadway arches. The tower of

Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin
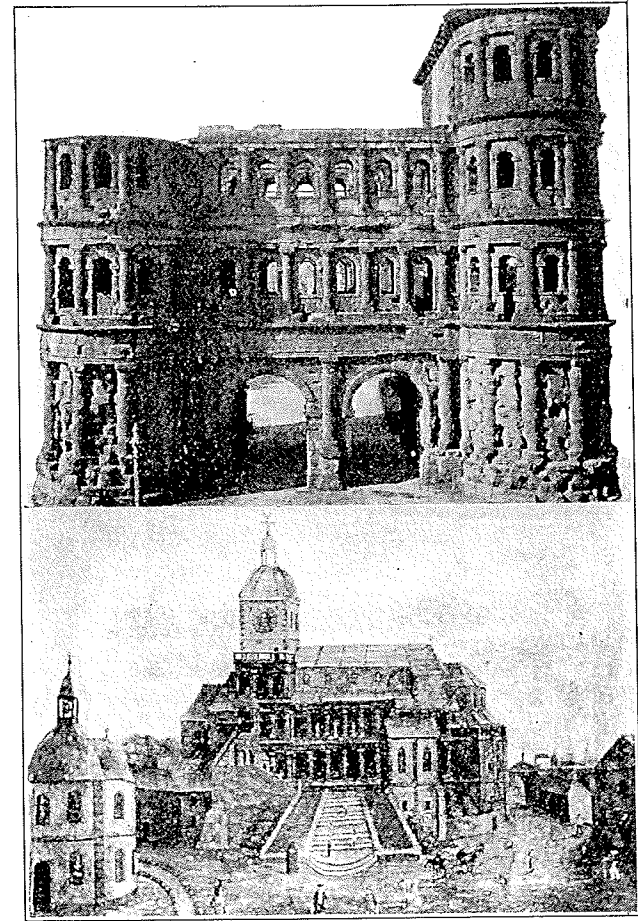
THE BLACK GATE IN TRIER, GERMANY

the gate is on the left in the lower picture, because the front of the cathedral is the other side of the arch. This illustration is made from a photograph of a medieval painting.
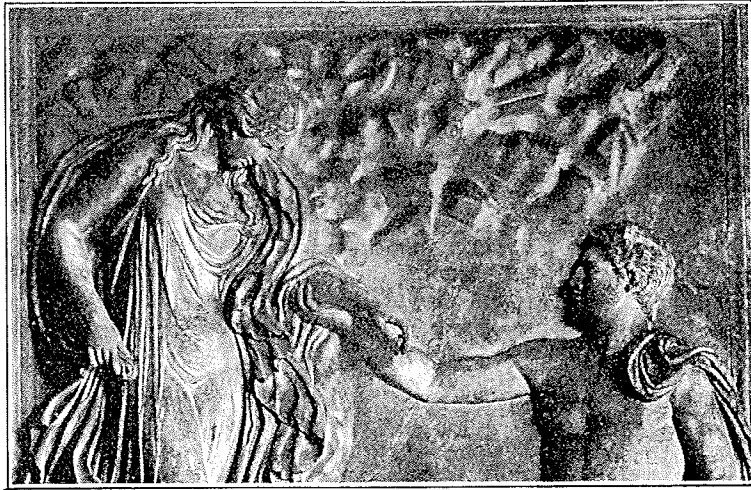
PERSEUS SAVES ANDROMEDA

XXVIII
OPUSCULUM DUODĒTRĪCĒSIMUM

189. PERSEUS MŌNSTRUM SUPERAT

Pater Perseō respondet: " Tibi meam fīliam libenter dabō
sī nōs tuō auxiliō servābis. Rēgnum quoque meum habēbis."
_{if}
Mox mare māgno sonitū perturbātur, et in aquā mōnstrum
_{sea}   _{with a sound}
horribile vidētur. Mōnstrum per aquam ad ōram properat.

Ecce! Perseus ālīs in āera sē tollit et mōnstrum dēsuper gladiō
_{behold}   _{with wings} _{air} _{himself raises}   _{from above}
vulnerat. Diū et ācriter Perseus cum eō pūgnat. Populus ab
_{fiercely}
ōrā pūgnam spectat. Māgnum gaudium animōs eōrum occupat
quod Perseus inimīcum eōrum superat.

Mōnstrum post pūgnam longam necātur et hērōs dēfessus ad
_{after}
terram rūrsus properat. Andromeda, nunc lībera et laeta, eum

128

māgnō cum gaudiō salūtat. Virī et fēminae quoque eum māgnō
_{greets}
cum studiō laudant. Rēx eī fīliam libenter in mātrimōnium dat.
_{praise}   _{king}
Perseus et uxor ā populō māximē amābantur. Laetī erant virī
quod agrī suī nōn iam vāstābantur. Fābula dē Andromedā
saepe nārrātur. Multae sunt aliae fābulae dē Perseō et dē eius
factīs; vōs eās posthāc audiētis.
_{hereafter   will hear}

190.   VOCABULARY

factum, -ī, *n.* deed	dēfessus, -a, -um tired
gaudium, -ī, *n.* joy	is, ea, id he, she, it
gladius, -ī, *m.* sword	pūgnō, pūgnāre fight
inimīcus, -ī, *m.* enemy	vulnerō, vulnerāre wound
pūgna, -ae, *f.* fight	diū a long time

191. The Personal Pronoun *is, ea, id*, he, she, it.

Singular

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	is, he	e′a, she	id, it	he, she, it
Gen.	e′ius	e′ius	e′ius	of him, his, of her, her, of it, its
Dat.	e′ī	e′ī	e′ī	to him, to her, to it
Acc.	e′um	e′am	id	him, her, it
Abl.	e′ō	e′ā	e′ō	with him, with her, with it

Plural

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	eī	e′ae	e′a	they
Gen.	e ō′rum	e ā′rum	e ō′rum	of them, their
Dat.	e′īs	e′īs	e′īs	to them
Acc.	e′ōs	e′ās	e′a	them
Abl.	e′īs	e′īs	e′īs	with them

192.　　　STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

You have learned in **152**, the declension of **ego**, the pronoun of the first person, and of **tū**, the pronoun of the second person. The pronoun of the third person is **is, ea, id**, *he, she, it*. All the cases of this pronoun have the same uses as the corresponding cases of a noun.

Eius and **suus**. The genitive case singular **eius** means *of him, of her, of it*, or *his, her, its*, and the genitive plurals **eōrum** and **eārum** mean *of them* or *their*. We learned in **145** that the forms of **suus, -a, -um** meaning *his, her, its, their*, refer to the subject of the sentence. The forms **eius, eōrum, eārum**, on the contrary, never refer to the subject. When you are reading Latin, you can always be sure that any forms of **suus, -a, -um** refer to the subject and that **eius, eōrum, eārum** do not; in writing Latin, you must always decide whether the words *his, her, its, their* do or do not refer to the subject. If they do not, then use **eius** for *his, her, its*, and **eōrum** or **eārum** for *their*.

Cepheus mōnstrō fīliam *suam* dabat. Cepheus gave *his* daughter to the monster.

Mōnstrō *eius* fīliam nōn dabimus. We shall not give *his* daughter to the monster.

193.　　　ORAL EXERCISE

Translate: he will be wounded; they will fight.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis eī arma dabat? Deus eī arma dabat. **2.** Quis eōs auxiliō servābat? Perseus eōs auxiliō servābat. **3.** Eōrum-ne agrī vāstābantur? Eōrum agrī diū vāstābantur. **4.** Mōnstrum posthāc vidēbunt? Mōnstrum nōn posthāc vidēbitur. **5.** Salūtat-ne Andromeda Perseum cum gaudiō? Andromeda eum māgnō cum gaudiō salūtat.
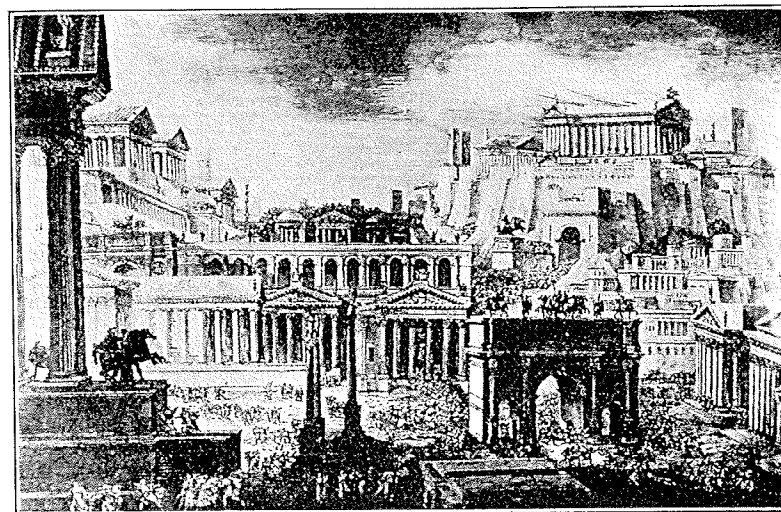
THE HUB OF THE ROMAN WORLD

194.　　　WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: it will be captured, it is captured; we shall adorn, we shall be adorned; they beg, they were begging.

Complete: **1.** (*His*) rēgnum Perseō dabitur. **2.** Virī līberōs (*their own*) servābunt. **3.** Perseus mōnstrum (*with his weapon*) vulnerābit. **4.** Mōnstrum (*them*) nōn iam dēlēbit. **5.** Hērōs clārus (*their fields*) servābat. **6.** Patria (*by him*) servātur. **7.** (*Her*) pater et māter māximē dolēbant.

195.　　　WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *fact, gladiator, pugnacious,* and *vulnerable* derived?

Inimīcus, *enemy,* is derived from **amīcus,** *friend.* What has happened to the a of **amīcus**? What is the meaning of the prefix **in-** in **inimīcus**? What does *amicable* mean? What does *inimical* mean? What is the meaning of **in-** in the words *import* and *inscribe*?

A ROMAN LABOR DAY PARADE

This is one of the "floats" in a Roman parade. The carpenters have their children on the float enacting their trade. The boy at the left is planing a board. The two boys in the center are cutting a plank with a crosscut saw.

XXIX

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒTRĪCĒSIMUM

Ē PLŪRIBUS ŪNUM

Of what country is this the motto? Explain how it applies to that country. Michigan has this same phrase for its motto.

196. VERBA PATRIS CŌNSILIUM BONUM SUNT

Pater moriēns fīliōs ad sē vocābat. Eīs[1] maestīs "Date," inquit,
    dying   sad   give

"mihi virgās." Puerī virgās dant; tum pater eōs virgās colligāre
    sticks   to tie together

iubet. "Potes-ne," fīliō māximō inquit, "virgās nunc frangere?"
                                     to break

Puer nōn poterat. "Quis vestrum," iterum inquit, "virgās col-
                who

ligātās[2] frangere potest?" Nēmō ē fīliīs id poterat.
            no one

Tum pater fīliōs virgās singulās[2] frangere iubet. Puerī eās singulās frangere facile poterant. Tum pater bonus "Sīc,"
                           easily

inquit, "meī fīliī, vōs, amīcitiā inter vōs colligātī,[2] vestrōs in-

imīcōs superāre poteritis. Nūlla vīs vōs colligātōs[2] frangere
                    no   force

poterit." Cōnsilium erat bonum, et fīliī, nunc virī, verba patris[3]

memoriā semper tenēbant.

197. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, f. friendship
cōnsilium, -ī, n. advice, plan
memoria, -ae, f. memory
    memoriā tenēre remember
verbum, -ī, n. word
māximus, -a, -um largest, oldest
singulī, -ae, -a one by one

vester, -tra, -trum your (pl.)
inter among (prep. with acc.)
    inter vōs among yourselves
sīc thus (adv.)
tum then (adv.)
possum, posse be able
teneō, tenēre hold

198. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. eīs: dative plural with inquit. To what noun in the preceding sentence does eīs refer?

2. No sentence like this can be understood unless you know what nouns the adjectives modify. Colligātās modifies virgās. It means literally, *the bound-together sticks*, but in good English one should translate the noun and adjective as *the sticks which have been bound together*. What do singulās, colligātī, colligātōs agree with? Translate them.

3. patris: genitive of pater, *father*.

199. Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses of *possum*. Review the present, imperfect, and future tenses of sum in 85 and 144.

Before looking at the conjugation at the top of the next page, see if you can give the forms of the verb possum in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Keep in mind as you do so, that the forms of this verb in the present, imperfect, and future tenses are the same as the corresponding forms of sum, with either pos- or pot- as a prefix. If the forms of sum begin with s-, use pos-; otherwise, begin with pot-. When you write any form of possum, write it as one word without a hyphen. Remember that you know the conjugation of the verb sum already. All you need to do is to prefix the pos- or pot- to those known forms.

Singular   *Plural*
                    Present
pos-sum, I am able, I can   pos'-sumus, we can
pot-es, you can   pot-es'tis, you can
pot-est, he, she, it can   pos-sunt, they can

Imperfect
pot'-eram, I was able, I could pot-erā'mus, we could
pot'-erās, you could   pot-erā'tis, you could
pot'-erat, he, she, it could   pot'-erant, they could

Future
pot'-erō, I shall be able   pot-er'imus, we shall be able
pot'-eris, you will be able   pot-er'itis, you will be able
pot'-erit, he will be able   pot'-erunt, they will be able

200.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

What forms of the verb **possum** are used in the story? In Latin, **possum** is not an auxiliary verb; it is the main verb of the sentence. An infinitive is used or implied with **possum** to complete its meaning. Such an infinitive is called a *complementary* infinitive. Find in the story a complementary infinitive.

201.   ORAL EXERCISE

Conjugate: **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
Decline: **is** in the masculine singular and in the neuter plural.
Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Potest-ne pater līberīs cōnsilium bonum dare? Pater līberīs cōnsilium bonum dare potest. **2.** Poterant-ne fīliī inimīcōs superāre? Fīliī inimīcōs superāre poterant. **3.** Poterunt-ne amīcī fīliam rēgis servāre? Amīcī eius fīliam servāre nōn poterunt. **4.** Potestis-ne, virī, mōnstrum necāre? Mōnstrum gladiīs necāre nōn possumus. **5.** Quis Perseō puellam in mātrimōnium dabit? Pater Perseō fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dabit.

202.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** Inimīcōs superāre (*we shall be able*). **2.** Virgās colligātās (*we can see*). **3.** Verba vestra memoriā tenēre (*they could not*). **4.** Virgās frangere (*you, s., will not be able*). **5.** Mihi eius cōnsilium nārrāre (*can you*, pl.)? **6.** Meīs fīliīs (*his plan*) nārrābō. **7.** Fābulam bonam dē Perseō (*we can tell*). **8.** Mōnstrum dēfessum necāre (*he can*). **9.** Eius fīliam (*we shall not be able to save*).

203.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *possible, single, tenant,* and *verbal* derived?

Possum. What is a *potent* drug? Distinguish between a real and a *potential* danger. Why are kings sometimes called *potentates?* Do you think a sheriff's *posse* deserves its name?

MORPHEUS OVERTAKES THE SLAVE

This little Roman slave boy, who had gone with a lantern to light his master home after a banquet, has fallen asleep while he waits.

XXX
OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM

DĒ PILŌ PENDET

When anything is " touch and go," people say *it hangs by a hair* (literally, dē means *down from*).

204.   GLADIUS DAMOCLIS

Inter amīcōs rēgis Dionysī[1] erat Damoclēs. Eī virō fortūna Dionysī bona et clāra vidētur.[2] " Quam laetus," ōlim inquit, " Dionysī, esse dēbēs ! Dominus es multōrum servōrum, et
<small>to be</small>
domūs pulchrae. Māgnam cōpiam pecūniae et statuārum et
<small>of house</small>
tabulārum pulchrārum habēs. Rēx es quoque oppidī pulchrī et nōtī, Syrācusārum." [3] Sed Dionysius, ea verba audiēns,
<small>hearing</small>
Damoclem ad cēnam invītat. Damoclēs māximō cum gaudiō ad
<small>dinner</small>
rēgiam properat.
<small>palace</small>

Damoclēs sōlus in lectō rēgis sedēbat. Luxuriōsae erant
<small>couch</small>
epulae; multī et pulchrī servī circumstābant. Subitō Damo-
<small>foods</small>   <small>suddenly</small>
clēs super caput gladium māgnum dē tēctō suspēnsum videt.
<small>head</small>   <small>roof</small>
Is gladius ūnā sētā equīnā tenētur. Tum Damoclēs propter id
<small>hair (of a) horse</small>
imprōvīsum perīculum nōn iam edere potest.
<small>to eat</small>

" Vidēs," inquit Dionysius, " meam fortūnam. Semper super meum caput gladium videō."

Fortūnam rēgis, igitur, nōn iam laudat Damoclēs.

<small>136</small>

---

205.   VOCABULARY

imprōvīsus, -a, -um unexpected   sedeō, sedēre sit
sōlus, -a, -um alone   super above (*prep. with acc.*)
                   quam how (*adv.*)

206.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Dionysī:** this form is the genitive (and also the vocative) of **Diony′sius.**

2. **vidētur,** *seems:* the passive of **video** often means *seems* instead of *is seen.*

3. **Syrācūsārum:** there is no singular. The form is genitive, in apposition with **oppidī.** *Syracuse* was a Greek colony on the east coast of Sicily, not far from the famous volcano, Mt. Etna.

207.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The Demonstrative *is, ea, id.* In **191** and **192,** we studied **is, ea, id** as a personal pronoun meaning *he, she, it, they.* The word has also the meanings *this, that, these, those,* and when so used, it is called a " demonstrative." Demonstrative means " pointing out," " showing."

Is, ea, id is both a demonstrative pronoun and a demonstrative adjective, as well as a personal pronoun. If it agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case, it is a demonstrative adjective; if it does not agree with a noun, it is a pronoun, either personal or demonstrative, according to its use in the sentence. Here are three sentences illustrating the three possible uses of **eius,** the genitive of **is, ea, id:**

(1) Personal Pronoun : **eius servus erat bonus,** *his* slave (slave *of him*) was good ;

(2) Demonstrative Pronoun : **causa eius erat nōta,** the cause *of this* was known ;

(3) Demonstrative Adjective : **causa eius perīculī erat nōta,** the cause *of this danger* was known.

Find in the story four different forms of **is, ea, id** used as a demonstrative adjective.

208.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Habēbat-ne rēx inimīcōs? Multōs inimīcōs rēx habēbat. **2.** Erat-ne is rēx laetus? Is rēx saepe miser erat. **3.** Vidēbat-ne semper id perīculum? Id perīculum semper vidēbat et timēbat. **4.** Quis est dominus eōrum servōrum? Rēx eius oppidī est dominus eōrum servōrum. **5.** Quis eum virum ad cēnam invītat? Dionysius eum virum ad cēnam invītat. **6.** Ubi sedēbat Damoclēs? Damoclēs in lectō eius rēgis clārī sedēbat. **7.** Vulnerābātur-ne eō gladiō? Eō gladiō nōn vulnerābātur.

209.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** (*This man*) est rēx māgnus et clārus. **2.** Incolae (*of these lands*) agrōs lātōs habent. **3.** In templīs (*of that town*) erant statuae nōtae. **4.** Damoclēs sōlus (*that sword*) vidēre poterat. **5.** Damoclēs (*those words*) memoriā semper tenēbit. **6.** (*On those roads*) multī nūntiī rēgis properābant. **7.** Fīliī singulī (*are not able to conquer*).

210.   WORD STUDY

Derivatives of **sedēre,** *sit.*

sediment matter which settles at the bottom of any liquid.
sedentary requiring much sitting, as a *sedentary* employment.
session   the time during which a court or other body of people meets or sits.
preside   be at the head of, sit at the head of. (Latin **prae** = English *pre.*)
reside   remain permanently.
subside   sink or fall (things); sit down, sit back (persons).
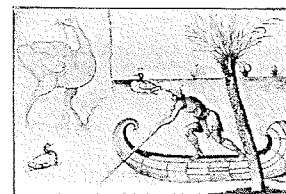
A SCENE ON THE NILE

On the floor of the temple of *Fortūna* at *Praeneste,* now the Italian town Palestrina, there was a mosaic made with millions of little stones of different colors. A small section of it pictured a scene on the Nile River in Egypt. It is easy to recognize the ostrich, the two ducks, the date-palm tree, and the Nile boatman.

XXXI

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

211.   AN UNEXPECTED ATHLETIC EVENT

In oppidō parvō habitābant virī sōlī, Rōmulus et amīcī. Nūllās fēminās habēbant, neque uxōrēs neque sorōrēs. Rōmulus igitur malum cōnsilium cēpit. Sabīnī, fīnitimī Rōmānōrum, fīliās multās et pulchrās habēbant. Rōmulus Sabīnōs cum fēminīs ad lūdōs māgnōs invītat. Eī māgnō cum gaudiō ad oppidum novum sine armīs et sine tēlīs properābant. In Forō sedēbant et lūdōs spectābant.

Sīgnum subitō ā Rōmulō datur. Adulēscentēs Rōmānī puellās Sabīnās raptant et in suās casās portant. Patrēs frātrēsque Sabīnī ob eam iniūriam imprōvīsam īrā māgnopere commovēbantur. Pūgnāre nōn poterant quod erant sine armīs.

Itaque domum properābant. In vīcīs diū manēbant et gladiōs
    home   villages
hastāsque (= et hastās) comparābant.
  spears

212.   VOCABULARY

iniūria, -ae, *f.* injury   comparō, comparāre prepare,
sīgnum, -ī, *n.* signal   collect
quis, quid who, what   maneō, manēre remain
quem ad modum, how, in what   māgnopere greatly (*adv.*)
              way   ob on account of (*prep. with acc.*)
fīnitimus, -a, -um near, neigh- sine without (*prep. with abl.*)
              boring   -que and (*attached to the ultima*)
fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m.* neighbors

213. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid,* who, which,
what. Learn the declension of this pronoun. Notice that the
forms of the masculine and feminine are the same in the singular.
You have already used most of the forms in your *Question and
Quick Answer Practice.*

	Singular		*Plural*		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	quis, who	quid, what	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cu'ius, whose	cu'ius, of what	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum
Dat.	cui, to whom	cui, to what	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus
Acc.	quem, whom	quid, what	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	(ā) quō, by whom	quō, by what	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus

The English equivalents of the Latin plural forms are the same as those of the singular.

214.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis erat rēx oppidī
parvī? Rōmulus erat rēx oppidī parvī.   **2.** Quī erant incolae
oppidī novī? Virī sōlī erant incolae oppidī novī.   **3.** Quōs
ad lūdōs invītābant Rōmānī? Sabīnōs et eōrum fēminās ad

lūdōs invītābant.   **4.** Quid erat cōnsilium Rōmānōrum? Fī-
liās fīnitimōrum raptāre erat cōnsilium Rōmānōrum.   **5.** Qui-
bus sīgnum Rōmulus dabat?   Amīcīs sīgnum Rōmulus dabat.
6. Cuius cōnsiliō raptantur puellae?   Rōmulī cōnsiliō raptantur
puellae.   **7.** In quōrum casās Sabīnae portantur?   In Rōmān-
ōrum casās Sabīnae portantur.

215.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete: **1.** (*Who*) circum Forum sedēbant?   **2.** (*To whom,*
pl.) sīgnum dat Rōmulus?   **3.** (*Whose,* pl.) fīliae raptābantur?
4. Ad (*whose*) oppidum properābant Sabīnī?   **5.** (*By whom*)
dabātur sīgnum?   **6.** (*Whose,* s.) fīlius erat Rōmulus?   **7.** (*To
whom*) Dionysius cōnsilium dabat?   **8.** (*To whom,* pl.) pater
moriēns cōnsilium bonum dabat?

THE FIXED FACE OF AN ETRUSCAN ANTEFIX

Along the eaves of ancient Etruscan temples was a line of painted terra cotta
decorations called antefixes. One of these is shown below. The faces very often
represented Medusa in a fixed conventional style. The out thrust tongue was
supposed to ward off the "evil eye." It would take the plastic surgery of today
to make a beautiful face out of this.
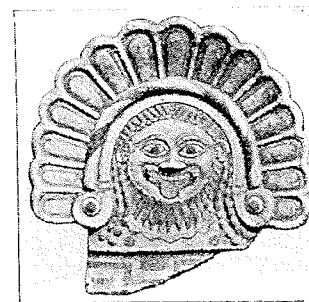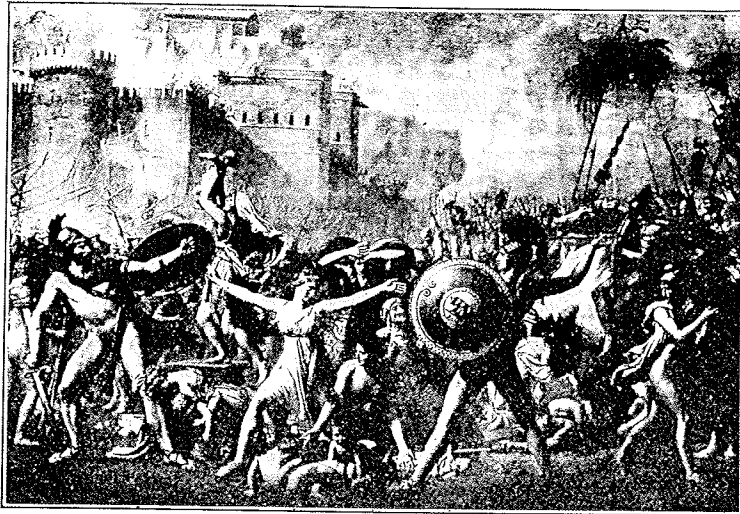
From a painting by David   Louvre, Paris

THE PEACE MAKERS

XXXII

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

Ā VERBĪS AD VERBERA DĒ FŪMŌ IN FLAMMAM
PER ANGUSTA AD AUGUSTA

From words to blows, from smoke to fire, through difficulties to honors, are the translations of these Latin phrases which show the usage of five different prepositions.

The Romans liked to play with words as we do. The two nouns in each of the first two phrases begin with the same letter, and in the third the nouns are spelled alike except for one letter.

216.   PĀX INTER RŌMĀNŌS ET SABĪNŌS

Sabīnī contrā Rōmānōs arma tēlaque comparābant. Tandem
_{at last}
dē clīvīs altīs, ab agrīs, ē vīcīs ad oppidum Rōmam appropinquant.
_{hills}
Multa et idōnea erant eōrum tēla. Rōmānī māgnō cum studiō in Forum properābant; grāta enim Rōmānīs antīquīs proelia et tēla erant. In Forō pūgnābant. Neque Rōmānīs

142

neque Sabīnīs erat victōria.[1] Multī et Rōmānōrum et Sabīnōrum vulnerābantur.

Tandem in medium proelium[2] properant fēminae ē casīs Rōmānōrum, līberōs parvōs suōs portantēs.[3] Pācem vehementer
_{carrying}   _{peace}
ōrant. " Vōs," Sabīnīs inquiunt fēminae, " estis patrēs frā-
_{say}
trēsque nostrī; nostrōs līberōs vidētis. Eōrum patrēs sunt Rōmānī. Et nostrōs patrēs Sabīnōs et nostrōs virōs[4] Rōmānōs māgnopere amāmus. Bellum nōn iam inter patrēs et virōs nostrōs esse potest."

Pāx igitur et amīcitia inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs cōnfīrmantur.

In parvō oppidō posteā habitābant Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs et cum
_{afterwards}
eīs ūnum imperium habēbant.

217.   **VOCABULARY**

imperium, -ī, *n.* government
proelium, -ī, *n.* battle
altus, -a, -um high
idōneus, -a, -um fit, suitable
cōnfīrmō, cōnfīrmāre establish
contrā against (*prep. with acc.*)

enim for (*usually the second word in a sentence*)
et . . . et both . . . and
neque . . . neque neither . . . nor
neque and not (*when used alone*)

218.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Literally, *neither to the Romans nor to the Sabines was victory*, or *neither the Romans nor the Sabines were victorious*.

2. in medium proelium, *into the middle battle*, i.e., *into the midst of the battle*.

3. portantēs is the present participle *carrying;* it is in the nominative case plural, and modifies fēminae.

4. vir means either *man* or *husband*. Which does it mean here?

219.   REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions used with the accusative case are:

ad, *to;* circum, *around;* contrā, *against;* in, *into;* inter, *among, between;* ob, *on account of;* propter, *on account of;* per, *through;* prope, *near;* super, *above.*

Those used with the ablative case are:

ā, ab, *by, from;* cum, *with;* dē, *down from, concerning;* ē, ex, *out of;* in, *in, on;* prō, *for, before;* sine, *without.*

220.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Inter quōs amīcitia cōnfīrmātur? Inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs amīcitia cōnfīrmātur. 2. Sunt-ne proelia vōbīs grāta? Neque proelia neque tēla nōbīs sunt grāta.   3. Quōs ōrābant fēminae Sabīnae? Et patrēs et virōs suōs fēminae Sabīnae māgnopere ōrābant.   4. In quōrum oppidō habitābant Sabīnī? In suō oppidō Sabīnī habitābant.   5. Cōnfīrmābātur-ne pāx inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs? Inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs pāx amīcitiaque cōnfīrmābātur.

221.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: cōnfīrmō in the second singular active, present, imperfect, and future tenses; altus in the genitive plural, all genders; idōneus in the accusative singular, all genders; id proelium in all cases of the singular; ea iniūria in all cases of the plural.

Complete and translate: 1. Fēminae (*into the battle*) (*with great eagerness*) properābant.   2. Līberī parvī (*by the women*) portābuntur.   3. (*In the ancient towns*) arma ā Sabīnīs comparantur. 4. Pācem (*with your* * *neighbors*) cōnfīrmābitis.   5. (*Neither battles nor weapons*) nōbīs sunt grāta.   6. (*On-account-of the danger*) fīliārum nostrārum pūgnābimus.

* Should you use vester or tuus in this sentence?
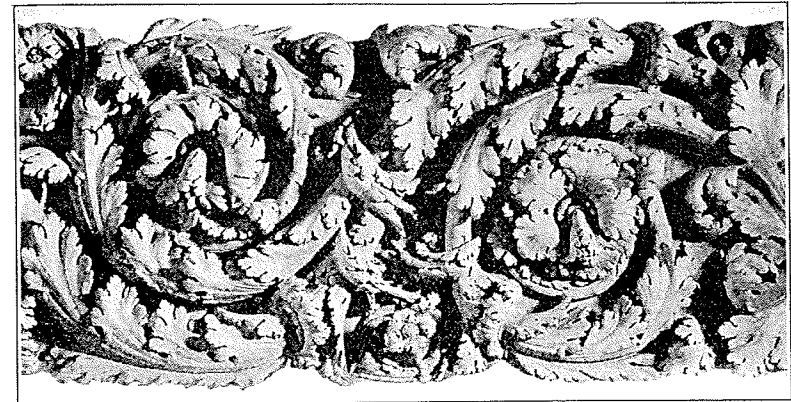
A LACY DESIGN IN LEAVES OF MARBLE

Both curling tendrils, carved in marble, are represented as springing from a stem, part of which can be seen at the right edge of the illustration. Ancient art set many patterns for modern sculpture, and the beauty and grace of this design has inspired many imitators.

222.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *altitude, contrary,* and *imperial* derived?

Find five English words beginning with *contr-*, and be ready to define each one.

The prefix con- often strengthens the meaning of a word. Cōnfīrmō is made up of con- and fīrmō, *strengthen.* Cōnfīrmō means *strengthen greatly, establish.* So commoveō, which you studied in **167**, is derived from moveō, *move,* but with the prefix, the verb means *move deeply.* What other meaning has the prefix con-?

XXXIII

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM TERTIUM

Word Study

223. Derivatives of *videō, vidēre*, see. Find ten English words related to **videō, vidēre.** Some English words derived from **videō** begin with one of the prefixes in the list of prefixes in your note-book; others do not. Some of these words will contain the syllable **vid-,** others **vis-.** All these derivatives, of course, will mean something about *seeing.* In looking for derivatives, look for these four classes :

     (*a*) With prefix plus **-vid-**
     (*b*) With prefix plus **-vis-**
     (*c*) **Vid-** with no prefix
     (*d*) **Vis-** with no prefix

224.   FAMILIAR ABBREVIATIONS

Learn these abbreviations, the corresponding Latin phrases, and the English meanings.

Abbreviation	*Latin Phrase*	*English Meaning*
A.D.	Annō Dominī	in the year of our Lord
P.S.	post scrīptum	written afterwards
vs.	versus	against
S.P.Q.R.	Senātus Populusque Rōmānus	the Senate and the Roman people
etc.	et cētera	and so forth
N.B.	nōtā bene	notice carefully

146

225.   OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Define: invisible, supervise, review, evidence, improvident. Use in your definition some form of the verb *see.*

Find the English meanings of A.B.; M.D.; Ph.D.; lb.; ad lib.; et al.

226.   ĪNFĀNS, PUER, ADULĒSCĒNS, IUVENIS, SENIOR, SENEX

If you had been born a Roman boy, you would have been called **īnfāns,** an *infant,* until you could talk; then **puer,** a *boy,* until about your seventeenth year. During this time you would have worn a **toga praetexta,** a white mantle with a purple hem. Then you would have been called an **adulēscēns** from the time you became a man until your thirtieth year. During this time you would have worn a **toga virīlis** (or **pūra** = *unornamented*). Then you would have been a **iuvenis** until you were forty-five, a **senior** until you were fifty-nine, and after that **senex,** an old man, until your death.

XXXIV

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

227.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. What are the personal endings of a verb in the present tense passive?   **2.** What are the personal endings of a verb in the imperfect passive? the future passive?   **3.** How do you recognize the imperfect passive?   **4.** Give the tense sign for the future tense passive, in all persons, singular and plural.   **5.** How would you translate the italicized phrase in, " the monster was killed *by the man* "? **6.** What Latin verb expresses the idea that *can* expresses in English? **7.** What irregular verb is a compound of **sum** ?

1. What is the Latin for *this, that?*   2. What are they called both in Latin and in English?   3. How many genders has is, ea, id ?   4. Give all possible meanings for the word is.   5. What is a common meaning of eius ?   6. How does eius differ in meaning and in use from suus ?   7. Give two short English sentences, in one of which, when translated into Latin, eius should be used, and in the other some form of suus.   8. How do cuius and quōrum differ in meaning?   9. What is the difference in meaning between these sentences: Quōs vidēs ?   Quem vidēs ?

1. What cases are used with prepositions?   2. Sort out the following prepositions, telling which case is used with each one : ab, ad, circum, contrā, cum, dē, ex, in, inter, ob, per, prō, propter, sine, super.   3. What is peculiar about the use of in ?   4. Divide each of these words into syllables and put an accent mark over the proper syllable : portābiminī, vulnerābātur, servābuntur.

228.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: **1.** I can, you (*s.*) could, we shall be able.   **2.** It is established, it will be established, it was established.   **3.** We sit, you (*pl.*) sat, they will sit.   **4.** You (*s.*) are held, you (*pl.*) were held, they will be held.   **5.** We wound, we are wounded.   **6.** He is accused, he was accused, he will be accused, they will accuse.

Write the Latin forms of the italicized words:

1. The Romans *can* conquer *these men*.   **2.** *Whose* daughters were captured *by the friends* of Romulus?   **3.** The monster *will be wounded* by Perseus.   **4.** *You* (*s.*) *were saved* by the plan of Perseus.   **5.** The king will give *his kingdom* to him.   **6.** *To whom* did you tell the story of the Sabines?

229.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of the Latin words on the next page?   Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. amīcitia	7. cōnsilium	13. iniūria	18. proelium
2. animus	8. factum	14. līberī	19. pūgna
3. arma	9. gaudium	15. locus	20. rēgnum
4. auxilium	10. gladius	16. memoria	21. sīgnum
5. bellum	11. imperium	17. modus	22. verbum
6. causa	12. inimīcus		

Adjectives

23. altus	26. fīnitimus,	27. idōneus	30. māximus
24. clārus	(fīnitimī,	28. imprōvīsus	31. singulī
25. dēfessus	-ōrum)	29. malus	32. sōlus

33. vester

Pronouns

34. is, ea, id   35. quis, quid   36. vester

Verbs

37. appellō	42. doleō	47. pertineō	52. superō
38. commoveō	43. expūgnō	48. possum	53. teneō,
39. comparō	44. maneō	49. pūgnō	memoriā
40. cōnfīrmō	45. ōrnō	50. sedeō	tenēre
41. dēbeō	46. ōrō	51. spērō	54. vāstō

55. vulnerō

Adverbs

56. diū	60. quam	62. rūrsus	64. sīc
57. igitur	61. quem ad	63. saepe	65. tum
58. itaque	modum		
59. māgnopere			

Prepositions

66. ā (ab)	68. inter	70. per	72. super
67. contrā	69. ob	71. sine	

Conjunctions

73. enim   74. et . . . et   75. neque . . . neque   76. -que

230.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. friendship	7. advice, plan	13. injury	18. battle
2. heart, spirit	8. deed	14. children	19. fight
3. arms	9. joy	15. place	20. kingdom
4. aid	10. sword	16. memory	21. sign, signal
5. war	11. government	17. sort,	22. word
6. cause	12. enemy	manner	

Adjectives

23. high	26. near	29. bad	31. one by one
24. famous,	(neighbors)	30. largest,	32. alone
bright	27. fit, suitable	oldest	33. your (*pl.*)
25. tired	28. unexpected		

Pronouns

34. this, that, he, she, it   35. who   what   36. your (*pl.*)

Verbs

37. call	42. grieve	47. pertain,	51. hope
38. move	43. capture	extend	52. conquer
39. prepare,	44. remain	48. be able,	53. hold,
collect	45. adorn	can	remember
40. establish	46. beg, pray	49. fight	54. lay waste
41. owe, ought		50. sit	55. wound

Adverbs

56. a long time	60. how	62. again	64. so, thus
57. therefore	61. in what	63. often	65. then
58. therefore	way		
59. greatly	how		

Prepositions

66. by, from	68. among, in the	70. through
67. against	midst of	71. without
	69. on account of	72. above

Conjunctions

73. for   74. both...and   75. neither...nor   76. and

231.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are derivatives from Latin words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* XXV–XXXIII. See if you can give or write the Latin words from which they are derived.

1. adore	15. imperial	29. malice	43. pugnacious
2. altitude	16. improvement	30. malnutrition	44. rebellion
3. animate	17. inexorable	31. oracle	45. reign
4. auxiliary	18. infant	32. oration	46. reside
5. commotion	19. insuperable	33. orator	47. review
6. contrary	20. invisible	34. oratorio	48. sedentary
7. counsel	21. local	35. ornament	49. sediment
8. debtor	22. maladroit	36. pertain	50. session
9. desperate	23. malady	37. posse	51. single
10. devastate	24. malaria	38. possible	52. subside
11. doleful	25. malcontent	39. potent	53. supervise
12. evidence	26. malefactor	40. potentates	54. tenant
13. fact	27. malevolent	41. potential	55. verbal
14. gladiator	28. malformation	42. preside	

XXXV

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

IN HŌC SĪGNŌ VINCĒS

Tradition says that the emperor Constantine, before a battle in 312 A.D., saw a flaming cross in the sky inscribed with Greek words of which the Latin sentence above is the translation; namely, (Trusting) *in this sign you shall conquer.* Constantine, the first Christian emperor, had the Cross on his banners, and the sacred monogram, IHS, on the shields of his soldiers.

This Latin sentence is the motto of the Masonic order known as Knights Templar.

232.   LACUS CURTIUS IN FORŌ RŌMĀNŌ

Apud Rōmānōs haec fābula dē Mārcō Curtiō nārrābātur. In

mediō Forō Rōmānō hiātus lātus subitō vidētur. Populus ob

opening
hoc portentum māximē timet. Tum deōs causam huius portentī

portent
rogant et eōrum cōnsilium ōrant. Deī sīc respondent : " In

hunc hiātum conicite vestrum dōnum optimum ! Tum hiātus

throw   best
nōn iam vidēbitur."

Tum Mārcus Curtius, adulēscēns Rōmānus bonus et fortis :

brave
" Dōnum optimum oppidī," inquit, " est vir amāns patriae et populō

says   patriotic
cārus." Statim armīs indūtus, cum equō in hunc hiātum dēsilit.

clad   jumps
Locus rūrsus erat opertus et Mārcus Curtius numquam posteā

closed
vidēbātur. Sed hic locus in Forō ubi suam vītam prō patriā

Mārcus dedit semper Lacus Curtius appellābātur. Cāra enim

gave   lake
populō erat memoria Curtī et huius beneficī clārī.

233.   VOCABULARY

beneficium, -ī, *n.* benefit	numquam never
hic, haec, hoc this	posteā afterwards
apud among (*prep. with acc.*)	statim immediately

ubi where

234. The Declension of the Demonstrative *hic, haec, hoc,* this.

	Singular				*Plural*	
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hu'ius	hu'ius	hu'ius	hō'rum	hā'rum	hō'rum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

235.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In this lesson we have another word for *this,* hic, haec, hoc. It differs from is, ea, id, which we studied in **191-192** because hic can never mean *that.* It always refers to something near the speaker, or to something just mentioned, so that its meaning is always *this* (*s.*), or *these* (*pl.*). Like the Latin word is, and like the English word *this,* hic may be either an adjective or a pronoun.

> *Adjective:* English, *of this boy*   Latin, huius puerī
> *Pronoun:* English, *do you see this?*   Latin, vidēs-ne hoc?

In the story, hic is used several times as an adjective. Tell what noun each form of hic modifies.

In the plural, what cases of hic, haec, hoc have endings like those of is, ea, id? What case in the singular?

236.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: hic animus in the singular; hoc imperium in the plural; is, ea, id, in all genders, singular and plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid est cōnsilium

huius virī? Patriam servāre est cōnsilium huius virī.   2. Cūr
Rōmānī hunc virum amant? Rōmānī hunc virum amant quod
vītam prō patriā dabat.   3. Servābuntur-ne incolae hōc
beneficiō? Incolae hōc beneficiō servābuntur.   4. Est-ne
hic locus in nostrā patriā? Hic locus in Ītaliā est.

237.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **hoc beneficium** in the singular; **hic lēgātus** in the
plural; **haec cūra** in the plural.

Complete and translate: 1. Virī (*of these towns*) patriam amant.
2. Dōnum optimum (*to this god*) dabitur.   3. (*These gifts*)
in templum portantur.   4. Deus (*to these men*) respondēbit.
5. Portentum deōrum (*these women*) terrēbat.   6. Mārcus
Curtius suam patriam māgnopere (*loved*).

DRY FOOTING IN A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

Water was brought to ancient Rome through aqueducts, the under-ground
channels of which emerged some miles outside the city, and were then carried on
arches the rest of the way. The water channel, *specus*, of one aqueduct is clearly
seen. A second aqueduct was later built on top of the first. Professor J. O.
Notestein of Wooster University, is seen standing on the floor of the broken upper
aqueduct.

From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
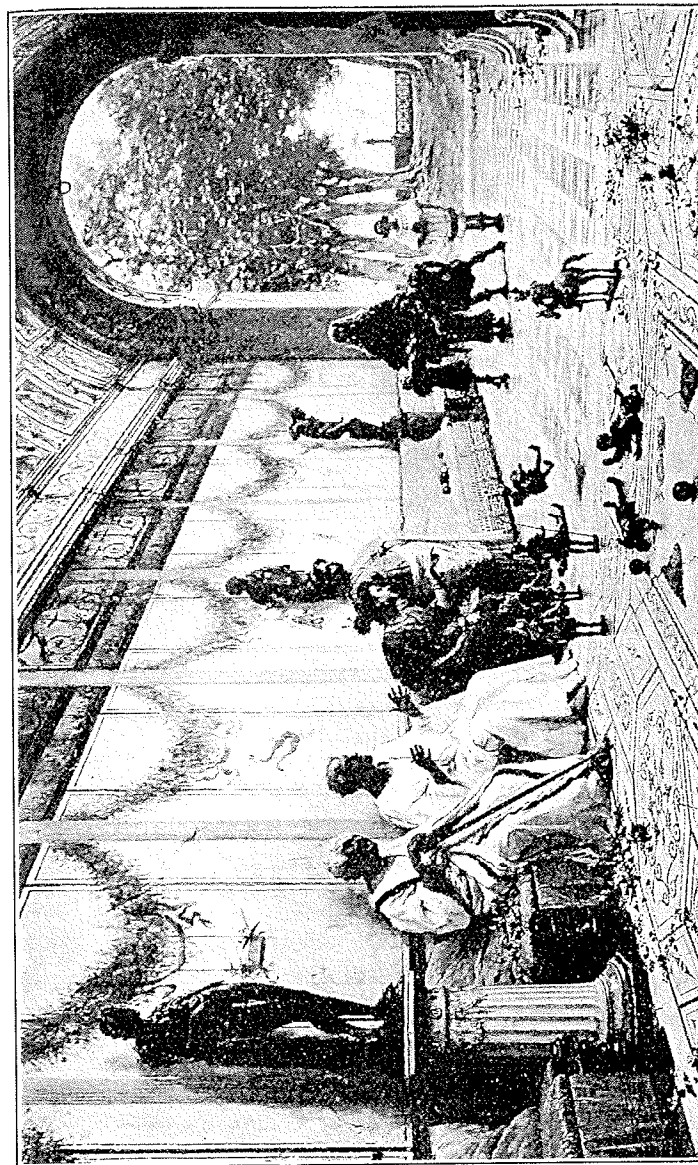
ROMAN BOYS BOWLING

HABET

238.

Our bowling pins are plain pieces of turned wood. When Roman boys bowled, the pins were wooden soldiers dressed in the armor of people with whom Rome was at war, or some enemy people against whom they expected to go to war. It is hard to imagine that the boy whose ball has bowled over the soldier in the front rank is shouting "habet" (*i.e.*, he has it), instead of "I hit him," but that is exactly what he is saying.

XXXVI

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM SEXTUM

THE VERB

239. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

The principal parts of a verb are those forms of a verb which you must know before you can use it in all its applications. A Latin verb has four principal parts. You have already learned the present indicative active and the present infinitive active of several verbs. These forms are two of the principal parts. The other two are the perfect indicative active and the perfect passive participle.

Learn the principal parts of **portō** and **videō**:

Present Indicative Active	portō, *I carry*	videō, *I see*
Present Infinitive Active	por tā're, *to carry*	vi dē're, *to see*
Perfect Indicative Active	por tā'vī, *I have carried, I carried*	vīdī, *I have seen, I saw*
Perfect Passive Participle	por tā'tus, *having been carried, carried*	vīsus, *having been seen, seen*

Observe that in **portō** the perfect indicative active consists of the present stem **portā-**, plus **-v**, plus **-ī**, **portā-v-ī**, and that the perfect passive participle consists of the present stem **portā-** plus **-tus**. Nearly all the verbs of the first conjugation form their principal parts exactly as **portō** does. The only exceptions among the verbs that you have studied are **dō** and **stō**. The principal parts of these verbs are given in the vocabulary of this lesson.

In the other conjugations, the perfect indicative active is formed in several different ways. Five of these different ways are shown in the list of second conjugation verbs in **240.**

The perfect passive participle ends in **-tus** or **-sus**. For a few verbs which have no perfect passive participle, the future active participle is given instead; *e.g.*, **stō** and **maneō** in **240.**

Hereafter the principal parts of all verbs, except those that are exactly like **portō**, will be given in the vocabularies. All should be learned.

240. PRINCIPAL PARTS

The principal parts of verbs are given in this order: present indicative active, present infinitive active, perfect indicative active, perfect passive participle.

First Conjugation Verbs

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus care for
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus wound
dō, dare, dedī, datus give
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus stand

Second Conjugation Verbs

Can you see why the following verbs are grouped as they are?

I. dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy

II. dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus owe, ought
doleō, dolēre, doluī, — grieve
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, — extend, pertain
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, — hold
timeō, timēre, timuī, — fear

III. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain

IV. commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus move

V. sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus sit
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus reply

241.   ORAL EXERCISE   ·

1. Name the principal parts of a verb.   2. In what two letters does the present active infinitive always end?   3. In verbs of the first conjugation, what letter precedes this ending?   4. Give the present stem of **portō** and of **videō**.   5. In what tenses is this present stem used?   6. In what letter does the perfect active indicative always end?   7. In the first conjugation what letter usually precedes this ending?   8. In what two letters does the perfect passive participle always end?   9. **Amō, occupō, necō, ōrnō,** are all conjugated like **portō**; give the present stem of each.   10. Give the principal parts of each.

242.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write the principal parts of the following verbs: **accūsō, appellō, ōrnō, vāstō** (these verbs form their principal parts as **portō** does).

Be prepared to write the principal parts of all the verbs in **240** as your teacher gives you the English meaning.

M. AURELIUS SACRIFICAT

The emperor Marcus Aurelius has taken the sacred meal from the boy attendant and put it in a bronze pan on top of the little portable altar. After oil has been poured on the meal, fire will be set to it, thus making a burnt offering. Later the bull will be killed by the man carrying the axe and blood from its cut throat will be sacrificed as a blood offering. Notice the chief priest whose head is seen between the heads of the emperor and the bull. He wears the regulation priest's cap with the point, *apex*, on its top.
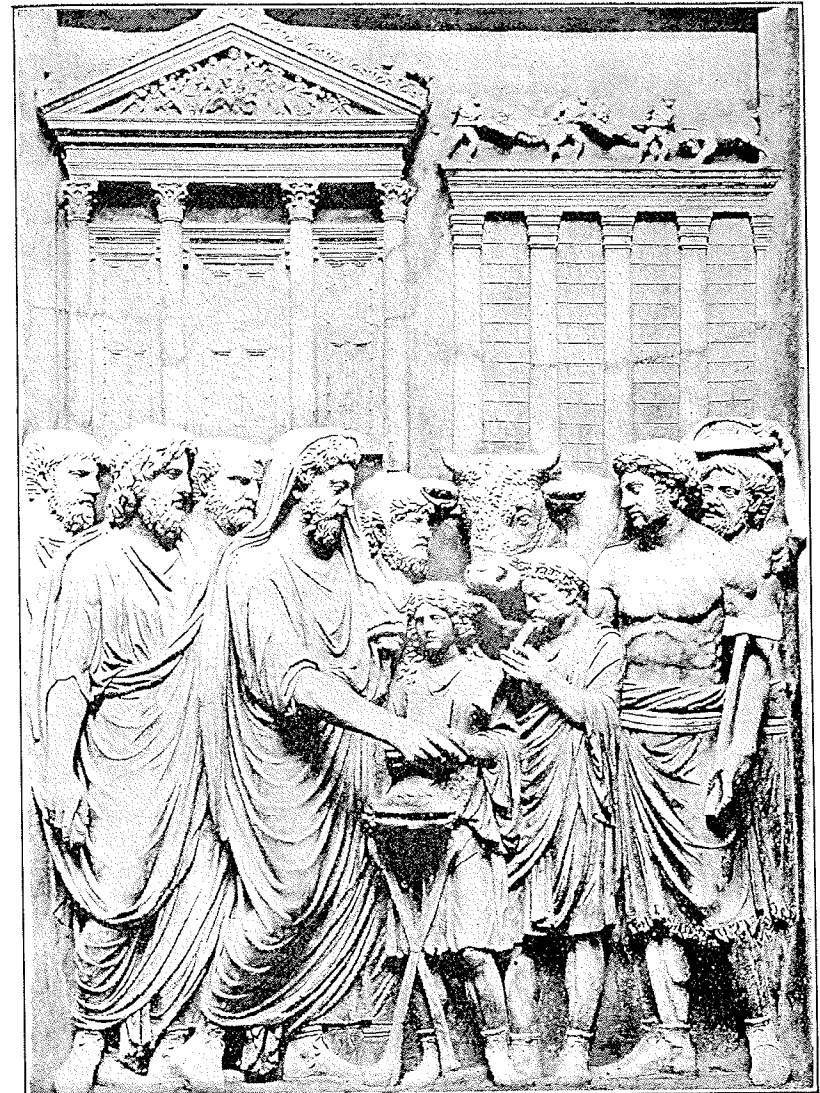
Capitoline Museum, Rome
AN EMPEROR OFFERS A SACRIFICE

non poterat.[1] Sed Graecī cōnsiliō Ulixis, equum līgneum aedi-
of Ulysses wooden

ficāvērunt et virīs armātīs eum complēvērunt. In ōrā maritimā

stābat equus et ā multīs Trōiānīs spectābātur.

Lāocoōn[2] sōlus dē perīculō monuit. " Semper," inquit,

" Graecōs et eōrum dōna timeō." Trōiānī tamen māgnō cum
nevertheless

studiō mōnstrum in suum oppidum trāxērunt et in Forō locāvē-
dragged

runt. Tum mediā nocte Graecī ex equō dēscendērunt et portās

oppidī statim aperuērunt. Sociī prope portās exspectābant;
opened

nunc per portās in oppidum properāvērunt. Sīc Graecī incolās

superāvērunt et necāvērunt. Oppidum antīquum bellō longō

occupāre nōn poterant, sed hōc cōnsiliō id dēlēvērunt.

244. VOCABULARY

socius, -ī, *m.* ally   armātus, -a, -um armed
decem ten   sed but

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus build
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus fill
exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus await
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus advise, warn
oppūgnō, oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvī, oppūgnātus attack, besiege

245. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. raptāvit, *carried off,* in the perfect tense, tells what Paris did
once; but oppūgnābat, *was besieging,* in the next sentence, in the im-
perfect tense, tells *about* an action that went on for ten years. **Poterat**
is also in the imperfect, and describes a situation that lasted for
some time. When you are telling of *a single event* in past time, use
the perfect tense; when you are describing *a state of affairs* in past
time, or an oft repeated action, use the imperfect.

THE WORLD'S MOST FAMOUS HORSE

XXXVII

OPUSCULUM TRĪCĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

EQUŌ NĒ CRĒDITE, TEUCRĪ!
QUIDQUID ID EST, TIMEŌ DANAŌS ET DŌNA FERENTĒS

*In the horse put not your trust, O Trojans! Whatever it is, I fear
the Greeks even bearing gifts.* You will read the entire story
sometime in the second book of the Aeneid written by the Roman
poet Vergil. The outcome may lead you to think that the
Trojans also believed in an old saying which in Latin is nōlī
equī dentēs īnspicere dōnātī, *don't inspect the teeth of a donated
horse,* or, as we say, " one does not look a gift horse in the mouth."

243. EQUUS LĪGNEUS TRŌIAM INTRAT

Apud Trōiānōs Priamus erat rēx. Fīlius Priamī, Paris
the Trojans

nōmine, Helenam, rēgīnam Spartae, raptāvit.[1] Haec erat causa
by name queen

bellī Trōiānī. Menelāus, rēx Spartae, īrātus ob iniūriam, cum

sociīs Trōiam decem annōs oppūgnābat,[1] sed oppidum expūgnāre
Troy

In the story the perfect tense third singular is used twice, and the perfect tense third plural is used ten times. See if you can find all these forms by using what you learn about the endings of the perfect tense in **246**. The Romans were very careful not to use a perfect instead of an imperfect, and *vice versa*. From now on see if you can detect the difference in their use.

2. **Lā o′co ōn**; a Trojan priest or seer.

246. The Perfect Tense Indicative Active of *portō* **and** *videō.*

Singular	*Plural*
portāvī, I have carried, I carried	portāvimus, we have carried, we carried
portāvistī, you have carried, etc.	portāvistis, you have carried, etc.
portāvit, he has carried, etc.	portāvērunt, they have carried, etc.
vīdī, I have seen, I saw	vīdimus, we have seen, we saw
vīdistī, you have seen, etc.	vīdistis, you have seen, etc.
vīdit, he has seen, etc.	vīdērunt, they have seen, etc.

Perfect Stem	*Perfect Ending*
portāv-	
vīd-	*Sing.* { -ī -istī -it *Pl.* { -imus -istis -ērunt

247.   SPOT LIGHTS

The perfect tense of a Latin verb expresses past time, as does the imperfect, but differs from the imperfect in its use. The imperfect tense expresses action as lasting for a long time, or as being done from habit, or as repeated many times; the perfect represents action as happening once, and then being completely finished.

Compare the two tenses of **portō** given below and then notice how their meanings differ :

Imperfect: portābam, *I was carrying, I used to carry, I carried*
Perfect: portāvī, *I carried (once), I have carried*

The perfect tense active is formed with the perfect stem and a special set of personal endings. The perfect stem is found by

taking off the ending -ī from the perfect indicative active. The following table shows the personal endings used for the present, imperfect, and future tenses active, and those used only for the perfect active. Review the personal endings you have already learned and learn those for the perfect tense active.

Personal Endings for the Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses Active		*Personal Endings for the Perfect Tense Active*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
-ō or -m	-mus	-ī	-imus
-s	-tis	-istī	-istis
-t	-nt	-it	-ērunt

248.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis suōs sociōs monuit? Ulixēs suōs sociōs monuit. **2.** Quī equum māgnum aedificāvērunt? Graecī equum māgnum aedificāvērunt. **3.** Vīdistis-ne equum līgneum? Equum līgneum numquam vīdimus. **4.** Quis Graecōs et dōna eōrum timēbat? Lā o′co ōn Graecōs et eōrum dōna timēbat. **5.** Ubi stābat equus līgneus? In ōrā maritimā equus līgneus stābat. **6.** Quid dēlēvērunt Graecī? Oppidum antīquum hōc cōnsiliō Graecī dēlēvērunt. **7.** Quī hanc fābulam posteā nārrāvērunt? Multī poētae hanc fābulam posteā nārrāvērunt.

249.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Conjugate: **pertineō** and **timeō** in the perfect tense active; **dō** in the perfect tense active (observe carefully its perfect stem).

Write: the principal parts of the following verbs, imitating those of **portō**: **vocō, appellō, appropinquō, spectō, nārrō, mōnstrō**; the perfect tense second plural of **habeō** and **vocō**; the perfect tense first plural of **ōrnō** and **dēbeō**; the perfect tense third singular of **stō** and **commoveō**; the perfect tense second singular of **moneō** and **occupō**.

250.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *admonish, associate, complete, decimal, edifice,* and *expect* derived?

Money.   This word comes from **moneō,** *advise,* although the meanings of these two words are quite different.   This is the explanation: on the Capitoline Hill at Rome stood a temple dedicated to a Roman goddess, **Iūnō Monēta,** *i.e.,* Juno the Adviser.   In the basement of this temple Roman money was coined.   All coins made here had **monēta** stamped on them.   After a while **monēta** came to stand for the coin itself.   From the same word, **monēta,** is derived *mint,* a place where money is coined.

THE TEMPLE OF JUNO MONETA

The ancient temple of Juno Moneta, long since destroyed, was on the Capitoline Hill at Rome, across from the temple of Jupiter.   These were the only two temples on the citadel, *arx,* of ancient Rome.
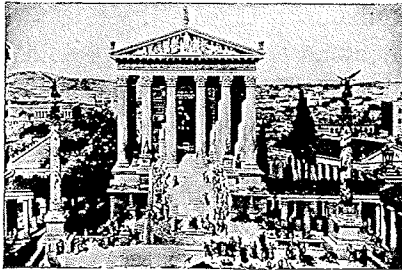
From a painting by Lionello Spada   *Louvre, Paris*

AENEAS AND ANCHISES

165

XXXVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒQUADRĀGĒSIMUM

FUIMUS TRŌES, FUIT ĪLIUM

In the story found in Vergil's *Aeneid*, Aeneas says to Dido, the queen of Carthage, *we Trojans have been, Ilium has been*. If the imperfect tense **erāmus** and **erat** had been used, it would have been merely a tale that said, " There were we Trojans, there was an Ilium." But the perfect forms **fuimus** and **fuit** add the touch of sad finality, and mean *we as Trojans exist no longer, Ilium has been destroyed*.

251.   TANTAE MŌLIS ERAT RŌMĀNAM CONDERE GENTEM[1]

Aenēās erat Trōiānus clārus et amāns patriae. Hic cum
patriotic
Graecīs cotīdiānīs proeliīs circum Trōiam pūgnābat et multōs[2]

superābat; sed frūstrā. Patriam servāre nōn potuit. Graecī
in vain
oppidum occupāvērunt. Tum Venus Trōiā[3] abīre et patrem
to go away
fīliumque sēcum ēdūcere Aenēān[4] iussit.
to lead away   Aeneas

" In Ītaliā," inquit dea, " novam patriam habēbis. Trōia

fuit; Trōiānus fuistī. Sed Rōma multōs[2] post annōs aedi-

ficābitur. Hīc[5] rēgnābunt tuī nepōtēs. Vōbīs auxilium semper
will reign   descendants
dabō. Māgna erit in Ītaliā glōria nostra; imperium Rōmānum

erit sempiternum."
everlasting

Hīs verbīs dea Aenēān incitāvit. Nōn iam viam longam

dūramque timēbat. Laetus[6] cum patre fīliōque, cum sociīs

paucīs trāns mare ad Ītaliam nāvigāvit. Hīc multōs post

166

annōs nepōtēs eius Rōmam aedificāre potuērunt. Inter nepōtēs

Aenēae fuērunt Rōmulus et Remus.

252.   VOCABULARY

cotīdiānus, -a, -um   daily
dūrus, -a, -um   hard
paucī, -ae, -a   few
sēcum (sē + cum)   with him
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus   arouse

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus   sail
possum, posse, potuī   be able, can
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus   be
hīc   here (*adv.*)
trāns   across (*prep. with acc.*)

253.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. This is verse 33 of the first book of Vergil's *Aeneid*. It is a famous line and worth learning by heart. The lines before this one give a brief sketch of the hardships through which Aeneas went. The translation is, (*Of*) *so great a task was it to found the Roman race.*

2. Observe the two uses of the word **multōs**. Multōs (l. 2) does not modify any noun, but is itself used like a noun. Because it is masculine and plural it means *many men*. Multōs (l. 7) agrees with **annōs**. In such prepositional phrases the adjective is often put before the preposition. The ending makes it clear that **multōs** agrees with **annōs**, and the phrase means *after many years*.

3. **Trōiā**: why is there no preposition with this ablative? Pronounce Trō ya; this i is the consonantal i, the same as our *j*.

4. **Aenēān**: the Latin here uses the form of the Greek accusative.

5. **hīc**, the adverb, must be carefully distinguished from the pronoun **hic**, *this, he*. In this lesson, both are used.

6. **laetus**, although an adjective, is best translated here *joyfully*, as if it were an adverb.

254. The Perfect Tense Indicative of *sum* and *possum*. In learning these tenses on the next page, notice particularly what syllables are accented.

Perfect tense of *sum.*

Singular	Plural
fu ī, I have been, I was	fu'i mus, we have been, we were
fu i'stī, you have been, etc.	fu i'stis, you have been, etc.
fu it, he, she, it has been	fu ē'runt, they have been

Perfect tense of *possum.*

Singular	Plural
po'tu ī, I have been able, I could	po tu' i mus, we have been able, could
po tu i'stī, you have been able, etc.	po tu i'stis, you have been able, etc.
po'tu it, he, she, it has been able	po tu ē'runt, they have been able

255.   SPOT LIGHTS

In **254** you see the perfect tense of **sum** and of **possum**. It is formed like the perfect tense of other verbs. What is the perfect stem of **sum**? of **possum**? From which principal part do we take the stem used to form the perfect tense? Do **sum** and **possum** have a passive voice?

256.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Virōs armātōs vīdistī-ne? Virōs armātōs in viīs vīdī. **2.** Fuistis-ne Trōiānī? Trō-iānī fuimus. **3.** Quōs superāre potuit vir? Graecōs multōs vir superāre potuit. **4.** Patriam servāre potuistī-ne? Patriam servāre nōn potuī. **5.** Quī ad Ītaliam nāvigāre potuērunt? Aenēās et fīlius et sociī paucī ad Ītaliam nāvigāre potuērunt. **6.** Fuit-ne in Ītaliā glōria huius virī māgna? In Ītaliā glōria huius virī māgna fuit.

257.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: **hoc imperium** in the dative singular, genitive plural, accusative plural.

Complete the following sentences and translate: **1.** (*You, s., have not been able*) patriam servāre. **2.** (*You, pl., have been*)

sociī Trōiānōrum. **3.** Haec via (*has not been*) dūra. **4.** Dea animum suī fīlī incitāre (*could*). **5.** Fāma (*of this new town*) erit sempiterna.

258.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *endure, excite,* and *navigate* derived?

RĒGNUM   IMPERIUM   DOMINĀTIŌ

Some years after Aeneas landed on the west coast of Italy, he married the beautiful daughter of King Latinus. He was thus able to hand down to his descendants a *kingdom*, **rēgnum**. Etruscan rulers later gained control of the early Roman **rēgnum**. When the last one, Tarquin the Proud, was ejected, the state became **rēs pūblica**, a *republic*, and was controlled by the **S. P. Q. R.**, **Senātus populusque Rōmānus**, whose power came to be called **imperium**. Rome became *mistress*, **domina**, of the world and established over it her *dominion*, **dominātiō**.

C. IULIUS CAESAR OCTAVIANUS AUGUSTUS

[1] This head of the first emperor of Rome, the great-nephew of Julius Caesar, is cut in cameo on a beautiful gem.

XXXIX

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒQUADRĀGĒSIMUM

259.   MARS IN CAELUM RŌMULUM RAPTAT

Rōmulus multōs annōs [1] in urbe novā cum sociīs habitābat.
Propter sua multa beneficia rēx Rōmānīs cārus erat. Sed
tempestās subitō coorta est.   Rōmulus in terrīs [2] nōn iam vidē-
arose
bātur, quod ā deō Mārte in caelum raptus erat.   Māgnus erat
heaven   carried off
dolor Rōmānōrum quod rēgem nōn iam vidēre poterant.

Paucōs post diēs tamen puer nōmine Proculus in viā prope
by name
oppidum Rōmulum subitō vīdit.   Māgna et clāra et pulchra erat
bright
forma Rōmulī.   Proculus māgnopere timēbat, sed ille " Nūlla,"
no
inquit, " est causa timōris.   Dīc meīs Rōmānīs haec verba.
of fear   say
Semper eōs spectābō et iuvābō.   Numquam aberō.   Bellō et
never
armīs Rōmānī multōs populōs superābunt; hōs posteā lēgēs
laws
docēbunt." [3]

Haec verba Proculus Rōmānīs nārrāvit.   Hī templum Rōmulī
māgnō cum studiō aedificāvērunt; in templum dōna saepe portā-
bant.   Verba illa semper memoriā tenēbant.   Rōmānī glōriā [4]
et fortūnā [4] māgnopere augēbantur.   Per multa saecula rēgnā-
centuries
bant et multōs populōs barbarōs lēgēs et beneficia pācis docēbant. [3]
of peace

260.   VOCABULARY

barbarus, -a, -um   savage

ille, illa, illud   that

absum, abesse, āfuī, —
            be absent

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus
            increase

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus
            teach

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus   aid

tamen   however (*adv.*)

post   after (*prep. with acc.*)

261.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **multōs annōs** is in the accusative case, but may be translated
for many years, because it expresses duration of time.   In Latin
this is the way to express an answer to the question *how long*.   This
accusative is not the object of the verb, but an adverbial modifier.

2. **in terrīs**: translate, *on earth*.

3. The verbs **docēbunt** and **docēbant** are each used with two
nouns in the accusative case.   The verb **doceō** is used with (1) an
accusative of the person taught, and (2) an accusative of the thing
taught.   Point out in each of these sentences the word that tells
who was taught, and the word that tells *what* was taught.

4. **glōriā** and **fortūnā**: which of the possible meanings of the abla-
tive, *by*, *with*, *in*, *on*, or *from*, is the best to use for these nouns?

262. The Declension of the Demonstrative *ille, illa, illud*, that.
Learn this declension thoroughly, as you will need to use these
forms often.

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	il lī'us	il lī'us	il lī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

263.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In what cases do the endings of **ille** differ from those of **lātus**? What is the genitive singular of **is, ea, id**? of **hic, haec, hoc**? of **quis, quid**? Give the dative singular of all these pronouns.

The use of **hic, is,** and **ille** may be illustrated by this diagram:

$$\longleftarrow \text{is} \longrightarrow$$

Speaker

hic *———————————————— ille
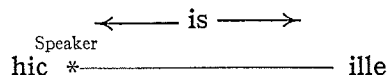
Hic indicates something near the speaker, or something of which he has just spoken; **ille** something at a distance from the speaker, or something of which he has spoken some time before. **Is** is not so emphatic as **hic** and **ille**, and may be translated by either *this* or *that;* it refers to something either near the speaker or remote from him. Like **is** and **hic, ille** may be either a pronoun or an adjective.

264.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis Rōmulum in viā vīdit? Ille puer Rōmulum in viā vīdit. **2.** Erant-ne amīcīs verba illīus grāta? Amīcīs verba illīus grāta erant. **3.** Quibus Rōmānī lēgēs dabunt? Illīs barbarīs Rōmānī lēgēs dabunt. **4.** Quōs Rōmulus iūvit? Suōs sociōs Rōmulus iūvit. **5.** Aux-it-ne Rōmulus fortūnam populī Rōmānī? Nōn ille sed Deus fortūnam populī Rōmānī auxit. **6.** Quam diū (*how long*) Rōmulus rēgnābat? Multōs annōs Rōmulus rēgnābat.

265.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: **ille socius** in the genitive singular and nominative plural; **illud beneficium** in the ablative singular and the accusative plural; **illa cūra** in the dative singular and genitive plural; **hoc negōtium** in the accusative singular and the dative plural.

Complete and translate: **1.** (*This man*) est Rōmānus; (*that man*) est barbarus. **2.** Verba (*of that man*) populō sunt grāta. **3.** (*That nation*) (*these barbarians*) bellō superāre nōn potest. **4.** Trāns mare patriam novam (*he will have*).

266.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *adjutant, augment, barbarian,* and *doctor* derived?

It is generally agreed that **ille,** *that,* became the article *the* in Italian, French, and Spanish. In Italian **il** and **lo** mean *the* when they modify a masculine noun; **la** with a feminine noun means *the.* Notice that **il** comes from the first syllable of **ille,** and **lo** and **la** from the second syllable. Examples: **Il trovatore,** *the ballad singer;* **lo stato,** *the state;* **la donna,** *the lady.* In French, **le** is the masculine article and **la** the feminine. Examples: **le fils,** *the son;* **la fille,** *the daughter.* In Spanish, **ille** became **el** in the masculine, **la** in the feminine.

AN IONIC CAPITAL

The most beautiful of the three orders of Greek architecture, so called from the type of capital, *caput,* or head, of the columns, is the Ionic. The capital of one of the columns of the Erechtheum, a temple on the Acropolis hill at Athens, is shown below.

XL

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM

SĪC SEMPER TYRANNĪS [1]

267. Post Rōmulum sex rēgēs in oppidō parvō imperium
six

tenēbant. Dē eōrum factīs multae sunt fābulae, aliae [2] falsae,

aliae [2] vērae. Septimus rēx, malus et audāx tyrannus, nōmine
the seventh   bold

Tarquinius, propter scelus māximum, ā populō ex urbe fugātus
crime   very great   was driven
est. [3]
out

Rōmānī Brūtum, ducem [4] huius bellī, cōnsulem [5] creāvē-

runt. Hic populum līberum bene cūrābat; lēgēs iūdiciaque
well

bene administrābat. Sed fīliī huius nōn aequē ac pater patriam
equally with

amābant. Hī cum rēge fugātō [6] coniūrāvērunt et eum armīs

cōnsiliīsque iūvērunt. Tum ille cōnsul, quamquam pater,
although

illōs fīliōs malōs ad mortem condemnāvit. Tantum [8] apud illum
death

Rōmānum amor [7] patriae valēbat. [8]
love

268.   **VOCABULARY**

cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.* consul
dux, ducis, *m.* leader
iūdicium, iūdicī, *n.* trial, law-
            court
lēx, lēgis, *f.* law
rēx, rēgis, *m.* king

vērus, -a, -um   true
administrō, -āre   manage
coniūrō, -āre   conspire, plot
creō, -āre   elect
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus
            be strong, prevail

269.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Sīc semper tyrannīs** is the motto of the State of Virginia, and also of the Virginia Military Institute.

2. **aliae . . . aliae:** translate, *some . . . others.*

3. **fugātus est:** perfect tense passive.

4. **ducem** is in the accusative case because it is in apposition with **Brūtum** which is in the accusative. In Latin, as in English, an appositive and the noun it explains are in the same case.

5. **cōnsulem** is one of the two accusatives depending on **creāvērunt.** **Brūtum** is the direct object of the verb; **cōnsulem** is in the accusative, referring to **Brūtum.** Nouns with this construction are usually used with verbs of *naming* and *electing.* Compare the use of the two nouns in the objective case in this English sentence: *They elected Brutus consul.*

6. **fugātō:** this word is the perfect passive participle of **fugō,** *put to flight.* Therefore, it means *having been put to flight.* It is used as an adjective to modify **rēge,** and, therefore, agrees with it in case and number. The phrase means *with the having-been-put-to-flight king.* Translate, *with the king who had been put to flight.* This use of a perfect passive participle as an adjective is very common in Latin.

7. **amor:** nominative case, subject of **valēbat.**

8. **tantum . . . valēbat:** literally, *prevailed so much,* but should be translated, *was so powerful.*

270. Third Declension Masculine Nouns, Consonant Stems.

	dux, *m.*, leader *stem,* duc-	lēx, *f.*, law *stem,* lēg-	cōnsul, *m.*, consul *stem,* cōnsul-	
	Singular			*Case Ending*
Nom.	dux	lēx	cōnsul	—, -s
Gen.	ducis	lēgis	cōnsulis	-is
Dat.	ducī	lēgī	cōnsulī	-ī
Acc.	ducem	lēgem	cōnsulem	-em
Abl.	duce	lēge	cōnsule	-e

		Plural		*Case Ending*
Nom.	ducēs	lēgēs	cōnsulēs	-ēs
Gen.	ducum	lēgum	cōnsulum	-um
Dat.	ducibus	lēgibus	cōnsulibus	-ibus
Acc.	ducēs	lēgēs	cōnsulēs	-ēs
Abl.	ducibus	lēgibus	cōnsulibus	-ibus

271.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

We have now come to the third declension of nouns. Some-
one has said that the first declension is like a family party,
where everybody has the same family name; that the second
declension is like a party that includes the cousins, but the third
declension is like a big picnic to which everybody comes, and
where you hear all sorts of names.

The nominative singular of many third declension nouns is
the stem with no case ending. The only case ending that
occurs in the nominative singular is -s. The stem is always to
be seen in the genitive singular. Drop the ending -is from this
case and you will have the *stem*. To this, add the case endings
to form the other cases.

When the stem ends in a consonant, the stem is the same as
the base.

Dux and **lēx** have each been changed to their present forms
from the following:

Stem Ending		*Present Form*
duc- + -s	c s = x	dux
lēg- + -s	g s = x	lēx

Case Endings. Review the case endings for the first and
second declensions and learn those for consonant stem nouns,
masculine and feminine, of the third declension.

	First Declension		*Second Declension*		*Third Declension* Consonant Stems, M. and F.	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	-a	-ae	-us, -r, -um	-ī, -a	—, -s	-ēs
Gen.	-ae	-ārum	-ī	-ōrum	-is	-um
Dat.	-ae	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-am	-ās	-um	-ōs, -a	-em	-ēs
Abl.	-ā	-īs	-ō	-īs	-e	-ibus

272.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Fuit-ne animus illīus
patris dūrus? Animus illīus patris dūrus fuit.   **2.** Cūr hic
rēx fugātus est? Propter scelus hic rēx fugātus est.   **3.** Quō-
cum fīliī cōnsulis coniūrāvērunt? Cum rēge fugātō fīliī cōn-
sulis coniūrāvērunt.   **4.** Quem creāvērunt Rōmānī cōnsulem?
Brūtum cōnsulem Rōmānī creāvērunt.   **5.** Quem ad modum
lēgēs administrāvit Brūtus? Bene lēgēs Brūtus administrāvit.
6. Ā quibus patria nostra servābitur? Ā ducibus bonīs patria
nostra servābitur.

273.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: **illud iūdicium** in the dative singular, the nominative
plural, the genitive plural; **lēx** in all cases, singular and plural.
   Complete and translate: **1.** Scelus (*of that king*) fuit māgnum.
2. Brūtum cōnsulem (*we elected*).   **3.** Fīliī (*of this consul*)
patriam nōn cūrābant.   **4.** Populus (*by that consul*) servābitur.

274.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *create, duke, judicial, legal,
regal, valiant,* and *veracity* derived?

Latin and French-Latin derivatives in English. We learned in **90**
that many words have come into English directly from Latin, while

others have come from Latin in a roundabout way through French. Sometimes we find two words, with almost the same meaning, one of which came by a direct route from Latin, the other, by the French route. They are like cousins who meet late in life after being separated in childhood. We have two examples in this lesson:

Latin	*Direct Route*	*French Route*
rēx, rēgis, king	*regal*	*royal*
lēx, lēgis, law	*legal*	*loyal*

Coniūrō is composed of iūrō, *swear*, and the prefix con-. What is the meaning here of con? What is the meaning of *pre-* in the English word *prejudice?* Define *illegal* and *invalid*. To what Latin words of the vocabulary are they related?

SEAL OF VIRGINIA
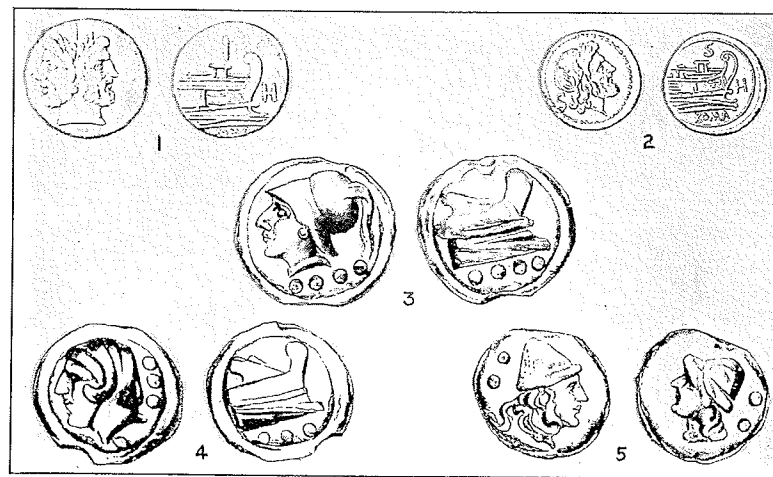
EARLY ROMAN MONEY

In very early times the Romans used for their standard of weight a bar of copper weighing one pound. They marked it off also into twelve equal parts, or inches. Later, when they began to coin metal into money, they took copper of the same weight as their pound or foot and melted it into a round coin, which they called an *ās*. On one side was stamped a head of the god Janus with two faces; on the other the prow of a ship (1). When the Romans flipped a coin, they called "Heads or Ships," which seems more true to facts than our "Heads or Tails."

The Romans began, probably at the same time, to issue smaller coins. What would be more natural than to divide up the libral *ās* (*lb.* is our abbreviation for *pound*) into twelve equal parts and call them ounces, *unciae;* as they did? (Hence, our Troy weight, 12 oz. to the lb.) A *semis* was a half pound in bronze money. It had a head of Jupiter on the "heads" side (2). The *triēns* (3) was one-third of an *ās*, or four ounces, as the four dots show. A head of Minerva was stamped on it. The *quadrāns* (4) bore a head of Hercules, and the *sextāns* (5) two heads of Mercury.

Numbers 1 and 2 are shown in a reduced scale. You can easily estimate how much larger relatively they should be than they are in the photograph.
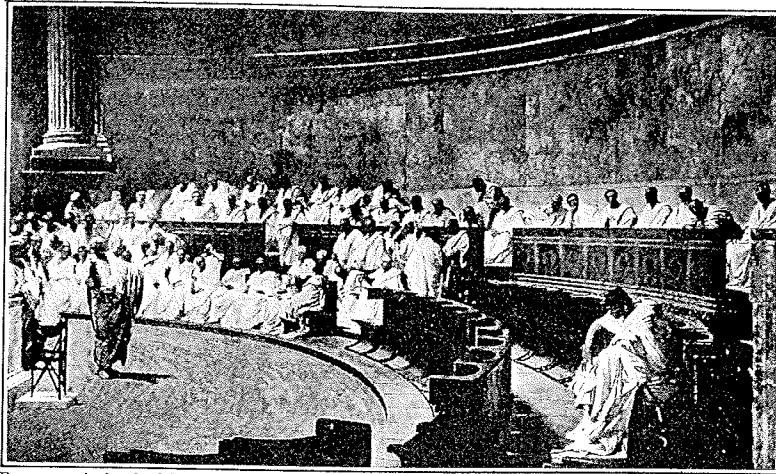
From a painting by Maccari   *Rome*

CATILINE SITS ALONE

XLI

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

Ā FONTE PŪRŌ PŪRA DĒFLUIT AQUA
BEĀTUS ESSE SINE VIRTŪTE NĒMŌ POTEST

These two sayings describe a character quite different from that of Catiline. *From a pure fountain flows pure water* is the literal translation of the first. Our English equivalent is *a man is known by the company he keeps.* The second, said by Cicero in his book about the nature of the gods, **Dē Nātūrā Deōrum**, is *happy can no one be without virtue.* **Virtūs** here means *moral character.*

275.   CICERŌ PATER PATRIAE

Cicerō clārus fuit ōrātor Rōmānus. Hic, cōnsul,[1] patriam

virtūte et cōnsiliō ē perīculō māgnō ēripuit. Catilīna, Rōmānus
_{rescued}

audāx et callidus, imperium occupāre volēbat et bellum in
_{clever}   _{wished}

patriam[2] parābat. Cōpiās māgnās in castrīs collocābat. Sociōs

quoque in oppidō habēbat. Sed Cicerō cōnsul cōnsiliō suō et
_{also}

auxiliō amīcōrum, coniūrātiōnem cōgnōvit.
                               _{learned of}

Hāc in pictūrā Cicerōnem et senātum in templō vidēmus.

Catilīna sōlus est, quod reliquī senātōrēs prope eum sedēre nōn
                                     _{other}

volunt. Cicerō in Catilīnam ōrātiōnem habet.[3] Nōta est haec
_{wish}

Ōrātiō Prīma Cicerōnis in Catilīnam. Ōrātor Catilīnam Rōmam

relinquere nōn iubet sed ōrat. Catilīna tandem verba ōrātōris
_{to leave}

ferre nōn potest; ē templō, ex oppidō exit, ad castra properat.
_{to bear}   _{goes out}

Mox in proeliō cadit Catilīna, dux coniūrātiōnis; sociī eius ad
                      _{falls}

mortem condemnantur. Sīc Cicerō, cōnsul bonus, patriae salū-

tem dedit.

276.   VOCABULARY

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.* Cicero, a famous orator and statesman

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, *f.* conspiracy

cōpiae, -ārum, *f.* troops (*from* **cōpia,** plenty)

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.* speech

ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.* orator

salūs, salūtis, *f.* safety

virtūs, virtūtis, *f.* manliness, courage

prīmus, -a, -um first

parō, parāre prepare

tandem at length (*adv.*)

277.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **cōnsul:** in apposition with **hic.** Translate, *when consul.*

2. **in patriam:** in with the accusative, as here, often means *against.* What does in with the accusative usually mean? What does it mean with the ablative case?

3. **ōrātiōnem habet:** *is making a speech.*

278. Declensions of Nouns with Modifiers.

	Singular		*Singular*
Nom.	ōrātiō prīma		hic ōrātor clārus
Gen.	ōrātiōnis prīmae		huius ōrātōris clārī
Dat.	ōrātiōnī prīmae		huic ōrātōrī clārō
Acc.	ōrātiōnem prīmam		hunc ōrātōrem clārum
Abl.	ōrātiōne prīmā		hōc ōrātōre clārō
	Plural		*Plural*
Nom.	ōrātiōnēs prīmae		hī ōrātōrēs clārī
Gen.	ōrātiōnum prīmārum		hōrum ōrātōrum clārōrum
Dat.	ōrātiōnibus prīmīs		hīs ōrātōribus clārīs
Acc.	ōrātiōnēs prīmās		hōs ōrātōrēs clārōs
Abl.	ōrātiōnibus prīmīs		hīs ōrātōribus clārīs

279. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The forms in the preceding section show you how to decline a noun of the third declension modified by an adjective of the first and second declension, and one modified by an adjective of the first and second declension and an adjective of irregular declension. Remember that *neither nouns nor adjectives ever change from one declension to another*. Hence it often happens that a noun and its modifying adjective have different endings.

In studying the vocabulary, notice that it is necessary to know the genitive of a noun in order to decline it. Notice also that masculine and feminine nouns in the third declension have the same endings, *i.e.*, are declined alike. Therefore, you should learn not only the nominative and genitive but also the gender of each noun. Unless you know the gender of a noun, you will not know which gender of an adjective to use with it.

280. ORAL EXERCISE

What is the stem of each third declension noun given in the vocabulary? What is the gender of nouns ending in **-iō** and **-ūs** in the nominative singular?

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis est dux coniūrātiōnis? Hic vir est dux coniūrātiōnis. **2.** Quis ōrātiōnem habuit? Cicerō, cōnsul bonus, ōrātiōnem habuit. **3.** Ubi cōnsul hanc ōrātiōnem habuit? In templō cōnsul hanc ōrātiōnem habuit. **4.** Ā quō salūs patriae datur? Ā cōnsule salūs patriae datur. **5.** Valēbat-ne amor patriae apud Rōmānōs antīquōs? Amor patriae apud Rōmānōs antīquōs multum valēbat.

281. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **ille rēx** in the singular; **ea coniūrātiō** in the plural; **virtūs māgna** in the singular; **hic populus barbarus** in the plural.

Complete and translate: **1.** Patria (*by courage*) eius servātur. **2.** Sociī (*of that conspiracy*) ad mortem condemnābuntur. **3.** Cōnsul ōrātiōne in Catilīnam (*the others*) virtūtem docuit. **4.** (*By this famous speech*) ōrātor populum incitāvit. **5.** (*By daily speeches*) cōnsul populum incitābat.

282. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *oration, primary,* and *salutary* derived?

At what stage of your education did you read from a *primer*? What is an *oratorical* contest? Where have you seen the word *exit* before? Why do you *salute* the flag of your country? What are *primitive* customs?

XLII
OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

DĒ MORTUĪS NIHIL NISI BONUM

Concerning the dead, (say) *nothing but good.* This motto is observed quite generally everywhere. The French, however, have a motto on the same subject that is very clever, but not so kind. It is **les morts font toujours tort,** *the dead are always wrong.*

283.   SĪC TRĀNSIT GLŌRIA MUNDĪ¹

Hominēs mortuī ad rīpam flūminis appropinquant, ubi senex
_{dead}

Charōn in nāviculā eōs exspectat.   Nōmen huius flūminis est

Styx.   Charōn deinde animās mortuōrum² nāviculā ad Īnferōs
_{souls}

vehit.   Dūrus est animus³ illīus portītōris, et terribilis eius
_{ferries}   _{ferryman}

forma.

Nūlla anima³ flūmen ad Īnferōs trānsīre potest nisi corpus
_{to cross}   _{unless}

ad sepultūram datum est.   (Antīquī,² igitur, māgnā cum
_{has been buried}

dīligentiā corpora suōrum² sepultūrae parābant.)¦   Apud Īnferōs

animae ā tribus iūdicibus iūdicantur.   Facta eōrum, bona et
_{three}

mala, nārrantur.   Bonōs, posteā, pāx ōtiumque in Ēlysiō⁴
_{rest}   _{Heaven}

exspectant; malōs in Tartarō poenae dūrae exspectant.
_{Hell}

284.   VOCABULARY

corpus, corporis, *n.* body
flūmen, flūminis, *n.* river
homō, hominis, *m.* man
iūdex, iūdicis, *m.* judge
nōmen, nōminis, *n.* name

pāx, pācis, *f.* peace
poena, poenae, *f.* punishment
senex, senis, *m.* old man
iūdicō, iūdicāre judge
deinde, then, next

285.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *Thus passes the glory of the world;* or more freely, *thus vanishes earthly glory.*

2. mortuōrum   These adjectives are used as nouns or substan-
   antīquī   tives.   Translate mortuōrum, *of the dead;* suōrum,
   suōrum   *of their own relatives.*

3. animus and anima: distinguish between these two words; anima means *soul;* animus means *feelings, spirit, heart.*

4. How do you think the name of the *Champs Élysées* in Paris originated?

286. Third Declension Neuter Nouns, Consonant Stems.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body
stem, corpor-

flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river
stem, flūmin-

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	corpus	corpora	flūmen	flūmina
Gen.	corporis	corporum	flūminis	flūminum
Dat.	corporī	corporibus	flūminī	flūminibus
Acc.	corpus	corpora	flūmen	flūmina
Abl.	corpore	corporibus	flūmine	flūminibus

287.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In the third declension, (1) neuter nouns differ from masculine and feminine nouns only in the nominative and accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural; (2) every neuter noun has the same form in the nominative and accusative singular; (3) every neuter noun has the same form in the nominative and accusative plural; (4) and the nominative and accusative plural end always in **-a.**   These four statements are true for neuter nouns in all other declensions.

Note that **corpus** is the third type of noun ending in **-us** that we have studied.   To what declension does **equus** belong?   Give the genitive case and the gender of **salūs.**   What shows how

each of these nouns is declined? Observe carefully that the stem of **flūmen** ends in **-min**, not **-men**.

288.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the stem of **homō, iūdex, nōmen, senex, pāx.**

Decline: **haec pūgna** in the singular; **ille rēx** in the plural; **hoc iūdicium vērum** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quō nōmine ille senex appellātur? Charōn ille senex appellātur. **2.** Quōs nāviculā vehit (*ferry*) Charōn? Animās hominum nāviculā vehit Charōn. **3.** Quis facta hominum iūdicat? Trēs (*three*) iūdicēs facta hominum iūdicant. **4.** Quī hanc fābulam dē mortuīs nārrant? Graecī et Rōmānī antīquī hanc fābulam nārrābant. **5.** Sunt-ne laetae eae animae? Nōn laetae sed miserae eae animae sunt.

289.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **id nōmen** in the plural; **homō dēfessus** in the plural; **pāx longa** in the singular; **prīma virtūs** in the singular.

Complete and translate: **1.** Prope rīpam flūminis (*many years*) exspectābat. **2.** (*The names of those judges*) mihi sunt nōta. **3.** Animae ad Īnferōs (*by the old-man*) vehuntur. **4.** Flūmen Styx ad Īnferōs (*extends*).

290.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *nominate, pacify, penalty,* and *senior* derived?

What kind of men were the earliest *senators?* What does a *pacifist* regard as the world's chief good? What kind of people make up *penal* colonies? What happens when a business is *incorporated?*

A Roman woman might be called by several different names. **Fēmina** meant *female,* the word opposite to **mās,** *male;* **mulier** was *woman,* its opposite being **vir,** *man;* **mātrōna** is perhaps best translated *lady,* and was applied to either a married woman or a widow; **uxor** was *wife,* its opposite being **marītus,** *husband;* and **coniunx** meant *consort* or *married partner.*
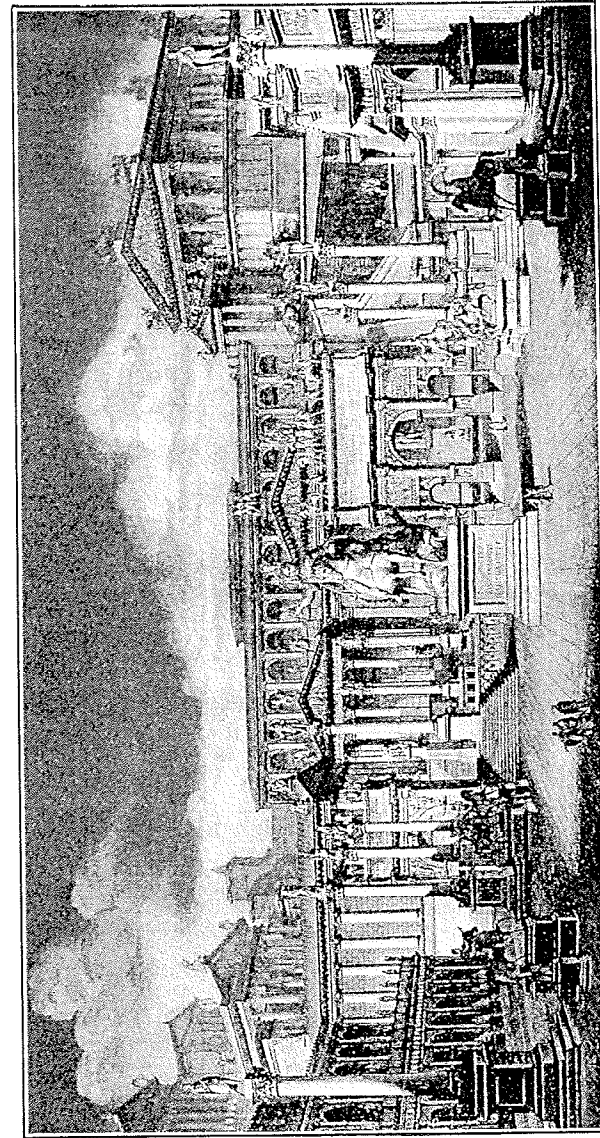
A RECONSTRUCTION OF ONE END OF THE ROMAN FORUM

Above the head of the equestrian statue of the emperor Domitian are the arches of the *Tabulārium,* Hall of Records. The temple of Jupiter rises on the hill to the left, that of Juno to the right.

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM TERTIUM

291.   WORD STUDY

Find ten English words derived from **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, —,** *hold.* Write these words, with their definitions, in your notebook. Refer to the table of prefixes given in **91.** Look for:

1. English words derived from **ten-,** with or without a prefix.
2. English words containing the syllable *-tain,* e.g., *obtain.*
3. English words containing the syllable *-tin,* e.g., *continent* Both *-tain* and *-tin* are derived from **ten-.**

292. To what Latin word is each of the following related?

beneficent	complement	docile	edify	judiciary
obdurate	pacific	salutation	social	valid

293. Learn the meaning of the following words, originally Latin, which are now used as English words:

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
alumnus	alumni	alumna	alumnae
datum	data	locus	loci
memorandum	memoranda	radius	radii
stimulus	stimuli	stratum	strata
stadium	stadia	vertebra	vertebrae

294.   OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Define the following words derived from **teneō,** and explain how the idea of *holding* appears in each one: lieutenant, tenacious, tenement, tenure.

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

295.   ORAL EXERCISES

1. Explain the difference in the use of **hic, is, ille.** **2.** What forms of a verb are called its principal parts? **3.** Why are the principal parts of a verb of the first conjugation easier to learn than those of other verbs? **4.** Give the principal parts of **dō, stō, iūvō, possum, sum.**

1. Give the personal endings used in forming the perfect tense active. **2.** To what stem of the verb are these endings added? **3.** From which principal part do you learn that stem? **4.** Give the perfect tense active of the verb **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus,** *prevent.*

1. Give all possible translations of: (*a*) **augēbat**; (*b*) **auxit.** **2.** In which of the following sentences should the perfect tense be used? (*a*) He-used-to-live in Rome; (*b*) They-have-prepared arms and forces for a long war; (*c*) The orator came into the temple and saw the traitor; (*d*) They-were-looking-at the beautiful buildings of the city. **3.** What is meant by the substantive use of an adjective?

1. What one word might express *good men,* used as the subject of a sentence? How might you say *many women,* without using the word **fēminae?** Can you guess how to say *many things* without knowing the Latin for *thing?* **2.** What case is used to translate the italicized words in the sentence: They stayed in town *for two days?* **3.** What construction is used with the verb **doceō?** Illustrate your answer by a short English sentence.

1. Give the case endings of masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. **2.** Give the case endings of neuter nouns of the

third declension.   3. From what case do you learn the stem in nouns of the third declension?   4. What facts do you know about the forms of neuter nouns in all declensions?

296.   WRITTEN EXERCISES

Decline: **illud flūmen** in the singular; **virtūs vēra** in the singular; **senex barbarus** in the plural; **haec toga** in the plural.

Write in Latin: he is absent, he was absent; you (*s.*) were teaching, you (*s.*) have taught; we are aided, we shall be aided; you (*pl.*) have remained; you (*pl.*) have been strong.

Write in Latin the italicized words:

1. Many Italians *have conspired* with Catiline.   **2.** Troy was besieged *for ten years*.   **3.** *By the kindness of the good consul*, these men were saved.   **4.** In the lower world, the *wicked* suffered punishment. **5.** The eloquence *of the speeches of Cicero* is great.   **6.** Cicero *could* not teach *Catiline virtue*.   **7.** The messenger, *having-been-ordered* to hurry, went immediately from camp.   **8.** *Have you*, Catiline, *prepared* war against your country?   **9.** *This great orator* has been elected consul.   **10.** *That conspiracy* was exposed *by the speech* of Cicero.

A ROMAN TOY

A little terra cotta toy like this shows us how Roman boys dressed, and what sort of ponies they rode. Through archaeological discovery, we are learning what the Romans did, and finding out that they were real people.

Courtesy of the Archaeological Museum, New York University

297.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. beneficium	6. corpus	12. lēx	18. rēx
2. Cicerō	7. dux	13. nōmen	19. salūs
3. coniūrātiō	8. flūmen	14. ōrātiō	20. senex
4. cōnsul	9. homō	15. ōrātor	21. socius
5. cōpiae	10. iūdex	16. pāx	22. virtūs
	11. iūdicium	17. poena	

Adjectives

23. armātus, -a, -um	27. dūrus, -a, -um
24. barbarus, -a, -um	28. paucī, -ae, -a
25. cotīdiānus, -a, -um	29. prīmus, -a, -um
26. decem	30. vērus, -a, -um

Pronouns

31. hic haec hoc   32. ille illa illud   33. sēcum

Verbs

34. absum	39. coniūrō	44. iūdicō	49. parō
35. administrō	40. creō	45. iuvō	50. possum
36. aedificō	41. doceō	46. moneō	51. sum
37. augeō	42. exspectō	47. nāvigō	52. valeō
38. compleō	43. incitō	48. oppūgnō	

Adverbs

53. deinde	55. numquam	57. statim	59. tandem
54. hīc	56. posteā	58. tamen	

Prepositions

60. apud	61. ob	62. post	63. trāns

Conjunctions

64. sed   65. ubi

298.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words?   Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. benefit, kindness	6. body	12. law	18. king
2. Cicero	7. leader	13. name	19. safety
3. conspiracy	8. river	14. speech	20. old man
4. consul	9. man	15. orator	21. ally
5. troops	10. judge	16. peace	22. manliness, courage
	11. trial, law-court	17. punishment	

Adjectives

23. armed	25. daily	27. hard, harsh	29. first
24. savage	26. ten	28. few	30. true

Pronouns

31. this	32. that	33. with him

Verbs

34. be absent	40. elect	46. advise, warn	50. be able, can
35. manage	41. teach	47. sail	51. be
36. build	42. await	48. attack, besiege	52. be strong, prevail
37. increase	43. arouse	49. prepare	
38. fill	44. judge		
39. conspire	45. aid		

Adverbs

53. then, next	55. never	57. immediately	59. at length
54. here	56. afterwards	58. however	

Prepositions

60. with, in the presence of, among	62. after
61. on account of	63. across

Conjunctions

64. but	65. where, when

299.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are derivatives from Latin words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* XXXV–XLIII.   See if you can give or write the Latin words from which they are derived.

1. adjutant	8. decimal	15. judicial	22. penalty
2. admonish	9. doctor	16. legal	23. primary
3. associate	10. duke	17. mint	24. regal
4. augment	11. edifice	18. navigate	25. salutary
5. barbarian	12. endure	19. nominate	26. senior
6. complete	13. excite	20. oration	27. valiant
7. create	14. expect	21. pacify	28. veracity

300.   TWO ROMAN AND ONE MODERN TERRA COTTAS

Roman girls and boys kept their nickels and dimes, which they called *sestertii* and *quīnāriī*, in savings banks just as you do. On the front of the right-hand terra cotta bank (3) is a figure of the Roman god of commerce, Mercury, coming out of a small temple with a bag of money in his right hand.   The left-hand bank (2) is a modern one costing more than the ancient one probably did.

The object at the top is a terra cotta lamp.   The wicks stuck out of the two round holes at the left.   The round top was turned back on a bronze or wooden pin that fitted in the two holes at the base of the handle.   Olive oil was poured in as fuel for the wicks.   The flame was bright.   This lamp will hold enough oil to burn about seven hours.
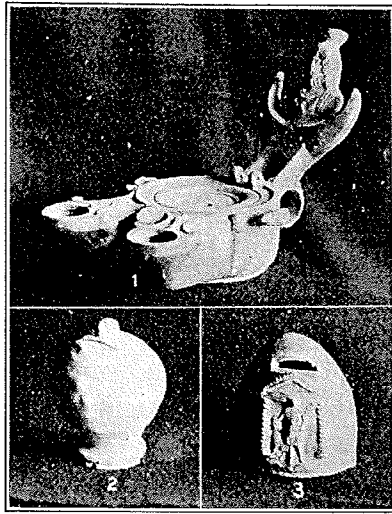
Johns Hopkins University Archaeological Museum
Courtesy of David M. Robinson

TWO BANKS AND A LAMP

<div align="center">

XLV

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

DEĪS ALITER VĪSUM   EXITUS ĀCTA PROBAT

</div>

To the gods it seemed (best) *otherwise* than to have the Sabines win. Homō prōpōnit sed deus dispōnit, *man proposes but God disposes*, is another way of saying the same thing. The family motto of George Washington also fits the story: exitus ācta probat, *the issue proves deeds*, i.e. *all's well that ends well*.

301.   PROELIUM CUM SABĪNĪS

Rōmulus, ōlim in proeliō cum multitūdine Sabīnōrum, in capite vulnerātus est [1] et paene cecidit. Mīlitēs eius, perterritī [2] sē
_{fell}
in fugam dedērunt. Sed Rōmulus mox sē recēpit; suōs [3] māgnā
_{recovered}
voce ad pūgnam revocāvit. Iovem [4] quoque patrem deōrum

sīc ōrāvit : " Rōmānōs, o Iuppiter, fugā prohibē,[5] virtūtem eōrum augē! " [5] Tum illī ex timōre sē recēpērunt et proelium redinte-grāvērunt. Sabīnī in fugam datī sunt. Victōria, igitur, propter
_{renewed}
virtūtem Rōmulī et auxilium Iovis ā Rōmānīs reportāta est.

302.   VOCABULARY

caput, capitis, *n.* head
fuga, -ae, *f.* flight
　in fugam dare put to flight
　sē in fugam dare flee
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* Jupiter, or
　Jove, the chief of the Roman
　　　　　　gods
mīles, mīlitis, *m.* soldier
multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f.* multi-
　　　　　　tude

pater, patris, *m.* father
timor, timōris, *m.* fear
vox, vocis, *f.* voice
perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī,
　　　　perterritus terrify
paene almost (*adv.*)
victōriam reportāre win the vic-
　　　　　　tory

303.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **vulnerātus est** is in the perfect tense passive. Its subject is **Rōmulus.** Find two other verbs in the same tense and voice. What is the subject of each of these verbs?

2. **perterritī**: what is the gender, number, and case of this participle? With what does it agree?

3. **suōs**: why is this word masculine?

4. **Iovem**: notice that the stem of this word is quite different from the nominative. In English we have the two names, Jupiter and Jove, derived one from the nominative and one from the stem.

5. **prohibē, augē**: these words are in the imperative active second person singular. A verb expressing a command is in the *imperative mood.* Notice that the second person singular has the same form as the present stem.

304. Perfect Tense Passive of *portō* and *videō*

Singular	*Plural*
I have been (was) carried, etc.	*we have been (were) carried, etc.*
portātus, -a, -um sum	portātī, -ae, -a sumus
portātus, -a, -um es	portātī, -ae, -a estis
portātus, -a, -um est	portātī, -ae, -a sunt
I have been (was) seen, etc.	*we have been (were) seen, etc.*
vīsus, -a, -um sum	vīsī, -ae, -a sumus
vīsus, -a, -um es	vīsī, -ae, -a estis
vīsus, -a, -um est	vīsī, -ae, -a sunt

305.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The perfect tense passive is formed by using the perfect passive participle together with the present tense of the verb **sum.** All verbs of all conjugations form the perfect tense passive in this way. The perfect passive participle is declined like **lātus.** It *agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.**

Puer vīsus est.	**Puerī vīsī sunt.**
Puella vīsa est.	**Puellae vīsae sunt.**
Oppidum vīsum est.	**Oppida vīsa sunt.**

306. The Translation of English Sentences into Latin.

Up till now you have translated only parts of English sentences into Latin. When you translate an entire sentence, you will not do anything new. You will only be translating the subject, predicate, and modifiers of an English sentence into Latin. Suppose you are asked to translate into Latin the sentence

Food was carried immediately into camp.

You might proceed as follows.

1. Ask yourself what part of speech *food* is. The answer is, a noun.

*Students of French will recall that the past participle conjugated with *être* is treated in the same way in that language: *il est venu*, he has come; *ils sont venus*, they have come.

2. How is this noun used? As the subject of the sentence.
3. *Food*, then, is in what case? Nominative. Singular or plural? Singular. The required form of the Latin word must be the nominative singular, and this is **cibus.**
4. *Was carried* is a verb. In Latin sentences the verb is usually written at the end, and so we shall consider the verb last.
5. What part of speech is *camp?* A noun.

In what case and number is it? Accusative case, because the Latin preposition **in,** when it means *into* is used with the accusative case. It is plural, because the Latin word for *camp* is **castra,** used only in the plural. *Into camp*, therefore, is translated **in castra.**
6. *Immediately* is an adverb, and in Latin is **statim.**
7. The verb *was carried* is in what tense? In English it is in the past tense; in Latin it should be written in the perfect tense because it refers to a single act in past time. Is it active or passive? Passive. In what person and number is it? Third person singular, to agree with its subject *food*. Shall you write **portātus, portāta** or **portātum est?** Answer, **portātus est,** because the subject, **cibus,** is masculine.

Now you have completed the sentence, and it reads as follows, in Latin:

Cibus in castra statim portātus est.

If you always study the words of the sentence one at a time, in some such way as this, you will find no trouble in translating English into Latin.

307.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the dative singular, the nominative plural, and the ablative plural of **mīles armātus; is iūdex dūrus.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis in capite vulnerātus est? Dux Rōmānus in capite vulnerātus est.   **2.** Cūr mīlitēs perterritī sunt? Mīlitēs perterritī sunt quod dux vulnerātus est.   **3.** Quis mīlitēs voce māgnā revocāvit? Rōmulus mīlitēs voce māgnā revocāvit.   **4.** Quem deum dux ōrāvit? Iovem patrem deōrum dux ōrāvit.

308.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Conjugate: **iubeō** and **moneō** in the perfect tense passive; **labōrō** in the perfect tense active.

Decline: **vox idōnea** in the singular; **mīles dēfessus** in the plural; **caput pulchrum** in the plural.

Write in Latin the italicized words: **1.** Many towns of the enemy *have been destroyed.*   **2.** *On-account-of the fear of the multitude* the war was lost.   **3.** *By the aid of Jupiter, the father* of the gods, we have won the victory.   **4.** Romulus *was not accused* of cowardice.

309.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *captain, chaperone, militia, paternal, timorous,* and *vocal* derived?

Per-, like **con-**, often strengthens the meaning of a verb; *e.g.,* **terreō** means *frighten;* but **perterreō** means *frighten greatly, terrify.*

Find an English word related to each of the following: **caput, mīles, fuga, paene, timor.**

The word penult comes from **paene,** *almost* and **ultima,** *the last,* and means *almost the last.* Therefore, the penult is the next to the last syllable.

In Latin words with diphthongs, the first vowel often disappears in the English word derived from it. For example, from **poena,** we have *penalty,* and from **oboediēns,** *obedient.*
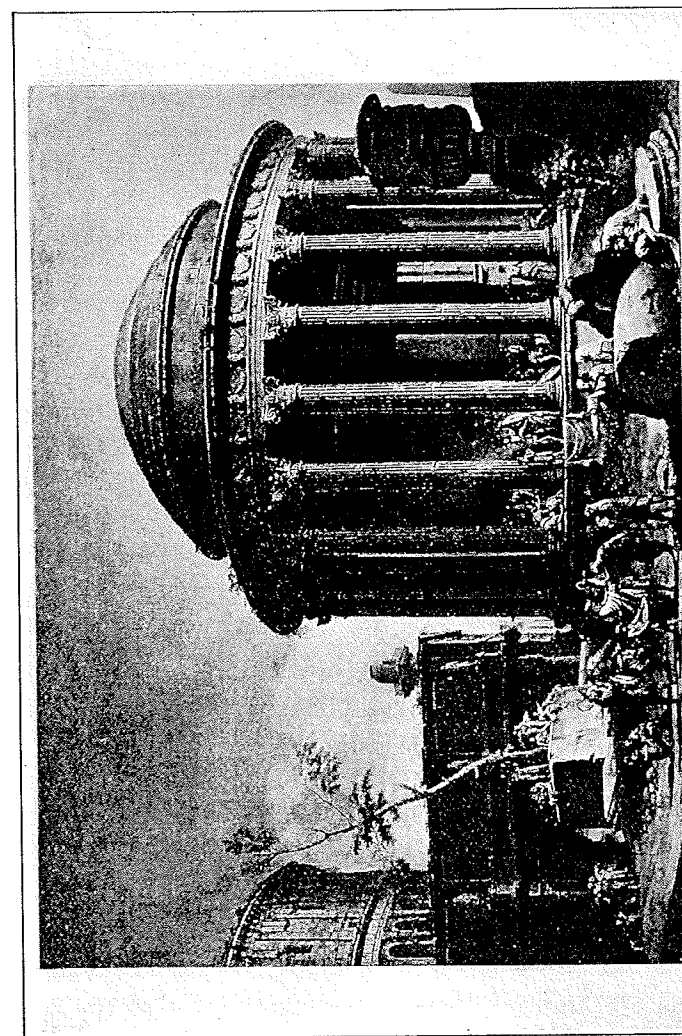
From a painting by P. Van Bloemen   THE TEMPLE OF VESTA RESTORED

XLVI
OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM SEXTUM

310. THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS, I

Inter lūdōs Graecōs, Androgeus, fīlius rēgis Crētae, necātus est. Itaque pater eius, īrā et dolōre commōtus, cōpiās māgnās comparāvit, in Graeciam properāvit, cum Athēniēnsibus pūgnā-
_{Athenians}
vit. Athēniēnsēs, bellō superātī, quotannīs dare septem ē
_{every year}
fīliīs, septem ē fīliābus[1] ā victōre dūrō iussī sunt.

Ob hanc calamitātem māgnus fuit dolor patrum et mātrum. Vehementer dolēbant[2] quod quotannīs līberōs cārōs in nāve nigrā
_{ship}
collocātōs vidēbant. Multīs cum lacrimīs in ōrā maritimā patrēs
_{tears}
mātrēsque nāvem spectābant.

Sed līberī ad īnsulam Crētam vectī, ā rēge crūdēliter necā-
_{carried}   _{cruelly}
bantur. Eōs enim singulōs in Labyrinthum rēx Mīnōs iactābat,
_{threw}
aedificium[3] mīrum ā Daedalō aedificātum, in quō[4] erant viae
_{wonderful}
multae et tortuōsae.
_{winding}

Ē labyrinthō exīre līberī numquam poterant; diū frūstrā
_{to go out}
errābant; deinde perterritī et dēfessī, Mīnōtaurum vīdērunt, mōnstrum generis mīrī et terribilis,[5] quī in Labyrinthō habitābat. Caput eius erat taurī,[6] corpus erat hominis. Hoc mōnstrum
_{of a bull}
līberōs Athēniēnsium facile superābat et necābat. Sīc rēx Mīnōs fīlium necātum ultus est.
_{avenged}

311. VOCABULARY

calamitās, calamitātis, *f.* disaster
dolor, dolōris, *m.* grief
genus, generis, *n.* kind
īnsula, -ae, *f.* island

māter, mātris, *f.* mother
victor, victōris, *m.* conqueror
quī who (*relative pronoun*)
septem seven

errō, errāre wander

312. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **fīliābus:** the noun **fīlia** has an irregular form in the dative and ablative plural, **fīliābus.** Otherwise it would be impossible to distinguish between the two words **fīlia** and **fīlius** in those cases.

2. **dolēbant:** this verb and many others in the story are in the imperfect tense because they refer to something that happened repeatedly, year after year. Can you tell why the verbs of the first two sentences in the story are in the perfect tense?

3. **aedificium:** accusative, in apposition with **labyrinthum.**

4. **in quō:** *in which;* **quō** is a relative pronoun in the ablative case.

5. **terribilis:** adjective in the genitive agreeing with **generis.**

6. **taurī:** a genitive modifying **caput** understood; i.e., *the head of it was* (the head) *of a bull.* In the same way **hominis** modifies **corpus** understood.

313. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The Perfect Passive Participle. In previous lessons we have seen this participle used as an adjective. Here we shall study another very important use. In the story, **commōtus,** line 2, is masculine nominative singular. The only noun in its sentence with which it can agree, therefore, is **pater.** This participle means *having been aroused* or *aroused.* That is to say, in Latin the perfect passive participle is often used where in English we use a subordinate clause introduced by *when, because, since, although, who.* The participle is, in fact, a convenient short-cut for

expressing almost any kind of dependent or explanatory idea. Therefore, the phrase **pater . . . īrā commōtus** can be translated in at least three ways:

(1) The father . . . moved by anger, *or*
(2) The father . . . who was moved by anger, *or*
(3) The father . . . because he was moved by anger.

In a similar way, **superātī**, in line 4, because it is nominative plural masculine, must agree with **Athēniēnsēs.** Translate the phrase, **Athēniēnsēs, bellō superātī:**

(1) The Athenians, conquered in war, *or*
(2) The Athenians, when conquered in war, *or*
(3) The Athenians, because they were conquered in war.

What nouns do **collocātōs, aedificātum,** and **necātum** modify? Translate each phrase in one of the ways suggested.

Be careful to distinguish between the use of the perfect passive participle *as a participle,* and its use with **sum** to form the perfect indicative passive. In the reading lesson **necātus est** and **iussī sunt** are verbs in the perfect indicative passive.

314.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **id genus** in the singular; **hic timor** in the singular; **calamitās nova** in the plural; **māter bona** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Cuius (*of what*) īnsulae fuit Mīnōs rēx? Īnsulae Crētae Mīnōs fuit rēx.   **2.** Cūr dolet rēx? Rēx dolet quod fīlius necātus est.   **3.** Cūr dolēbant illī patrēs mātrēsque? Patrēs mātrēsque dolēbant quod līberōs suōs in nāve nigrā vidēbant.   **4.** Ubi Mīnōtaurus habitābat? In aedificiō mīrō, Labyrinthō nōmine, Mīnōtaurus habitābat. **5.** Pūgnābant-ne puerī cum illō mōnstrō? Puerī cum illō mōnstrō pūgnāre nōn poterant.

315.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write in Latin: the nominative singular, all genders, of: having-been-taught, having-been-judged, filled, aided.

Complete and translate: **1.** Ille mīles (*having-been-conquered*) pācem rogāvit.   **2.** Patrēs ob fīliōs (*who-had-been-slain*) dolēbant.   **3.** Aedificia (*which-have-been-built*) sunt generis novī. **4.** Bellum ab illō rēge (*prepared*) erit longum.   **5.** Nōmina puerōrum in Labyrinthō (*slain*) nōn sunt nōta.   **6.** Rōmulus (*almost conquered*), Iovem auxilium ōrāvit.

Translate: The wretched children, *when-they-had-been-seen* by the king, were given to the monster.   What is the case, number, gender, and use of the words for *children, king, monster?* What single word means *when-they-had-been-seen?* With what does it agree?   In what tense, voice, person, number, will you put the word for *were-given?*

316.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *doleful, err, gender, insulate, maternal,* and *September* derived?

THE FACE THAT PETRIFIED THE BEHOLDER

Medusa, whose snaky locks framed the most feared face in ancient mythology, is here portrayed, carved on an ancient gem. The lapidary (*lapis* = stone), who was an artist, has cut Medusa's face in profile, as if it would be fatal to the beholder if she were to look straight out at us.

Rēx senex fīlium cārum diū spectābat; deinde multīs cum lacrimīs respondit. "Nōn poteris," inquit, "cāre fīlī,[2] Mīnōtaurum superāre, nam eris sine armīs, et frūstrā in Labyrinthō errābis. Māgnitūdinem perīculī nōn intellegis." Tum Thēseus, "Perīculum," inquit, "mi pater, intellegō sed nōn timeō."

Tandem senex, invītus, fīlium cum aliīs līberīs mīsit. Līberī ad numerum quattuordecim in nāvem nigram dūcuntur.
fourteen
Thēseus prīmus dūcitur, deinde sex puerī et septem puellae. Ex ōrā maritimā multitūdō nāvem līberīs suīs complētam spectāvit; līberī in nāvem conductī māgnā voce lacrimāvērunt.
wept
Thēseus sōlus neque timēbat neque dolēbat; nam suā sponte ad īnsulam Crētam addūcēbātur.

318. VOCABULARY

māgnitūdō, māgnitūdinis, *f.* greatness	condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus lead together, gather
numerus, -ī, *m.* number	inquit (inquiunt) says, (say)
invītus, -a, -um unwilling	intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus understand
sex six (*indeclinable adj.*)	
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead	mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus lead to	nam for (*conj.*)
	suā sponte of his (their) own accord

319. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. mi pater: mi is the vocative (case of address) of meus.
2. fīlī: vocative case of fīlius. Fīlius and proper names ending in -ius form the vocative thus: Gāius, Gāī, *voc.*

THE LABYRINTH ON AN ANCIENT COIN

XLVII

OPUSCULUM QUADRĀGĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

PRAEMONITUS PRAEMŪNĪTUS

AUT INVENIAM VIAM AUT FACIAM

Theseus probably said to his father in Greek, what these Latin sentences mean. In English the former means, *forewarned forearmed;* the latter, *I shall either find a way or make one.* The more common saying is *where there's a will, there's a way.* The French have a saying which means about the same, celui qui veut, celui-là peut.

317. THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS, II

Quotannīs illī līberī Athēniēnsium ad īnsulam Crētam missī, hōc modō barbarō necātī sunt. Deinde Thēseus, fīlius rēgis Athēnārum, adulēscēns pulcher et audāx, misericordiā com-
of Athens   young man   by pity
mōtus ob dolōrem populī, sīc patrem ōrāvit: "Mē mitte, mī
send!
pater,[1] ad illum rēgem dūrum! Mē, ōrō, cum sex puerīs et septem puellīs ad īnsulam Crētam mitte! Mīnōtaurum et dominum eius libenter vidēbō. Hoc mōnstrum superābō; tum patria nostra iterum erit lībera."

320. Third Conjugation Verbs (present stem ending, -e).

PRINCIPAL PARTS

mittō,	mittere,	mīsī,	missus,
I send	to send	I have sent, I sent	having been sent, sent

PRESENT TENSE

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
I send, etc.		I am sent, etc.	
mittō	mit'ti mus	mittor	mit'ti mur
mittis	mit'ti tis	mit'te ris	mit ti'mi nī
mittit	mittunt	mit'ti tur	mit tun'tur

PERFECT TENSE

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
I have sent, I sent, etc.		I have been sent, etc.	
mīsī	mī'si mus	missus, -a, -um sum	missī, -ae, -a sumus
mī si'stī	mī si'stis	missus, -a, -um es	missī, -ae, -a estis
mīsit	mī sē'runt	missus, -a, -um est	missī, -ae, -a sunt

321.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Stems of Third Conjugation Verbs.

Present **mitte-**   *Perfect* **mīs-**   *Participial* **miss-**

The present stem of the third conjugation ends in **e.** You remember that the stem of the second conjugation ends in **ē.** Distinguish carefully between the endings of **vidē-** and **mitte-.** Be sure, in pronouncing the infinitive of third conjugation verbs, to accent the antepenult, *i.e.,* to say **dū'ce re.**

Present Tense. The stem vowel **e** does not appear at all in the present tense active, and only in the second person singular of the present tense passive. What vowels are used in place of **e** in the present tense active and passive?

Perfect Tense. The perfect tense of the third conjugation is formed exactly like that of the first and second conjugations. The perfect stem is found in the perfect indicative active. The perfect tense active is formed by adding to this stem the same endings as in the other conjugations, *i.e.,* **-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt.** The perfect tense passive is formed by using the perfect passive participle with the present tense of **sum.**

322.   ORAL EXERCISE

Find in the story: four perfect passive participles; one verb in the perfect indicative passive.

Decline: **mīrum genus** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis trāns mare mittitur? Fīlius rēgis trāns mare mittitur.   **2.** Nōnne timēs hoc genus perīculī? Hoc genus perīculī vehementer timeō. **3.** Nōnne intelle'gi tis dolōrem multitūdinis? Dolōrem multitūdinis intellegimus.   **4.** Cūr invītus senex fīlium suum mīsit? Invītus senex fīlium suum mīsit, quod perīculum intellēxit. **5.** Dūcitur-ne invītus fīlius rēgis? Nōn invītus sed suā sponte fīlius rēgis dūcitur.   **6.** Dolēbat-ne senex ob fīlium ad īnsulam Crētam missum? Vehementer senex ob fīlium ad īnsulam Crētam missum dolēbat.

323.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Complete and translate: **1.** Patrēs invītī (*led-together the children*).   **2.** Senex nōn suā sponte fīlium (*is-sending*).

Translate: **1.** The king's son understands this kind of danger. **2.** On-account-of that disaster, Theseus was sent with the children.
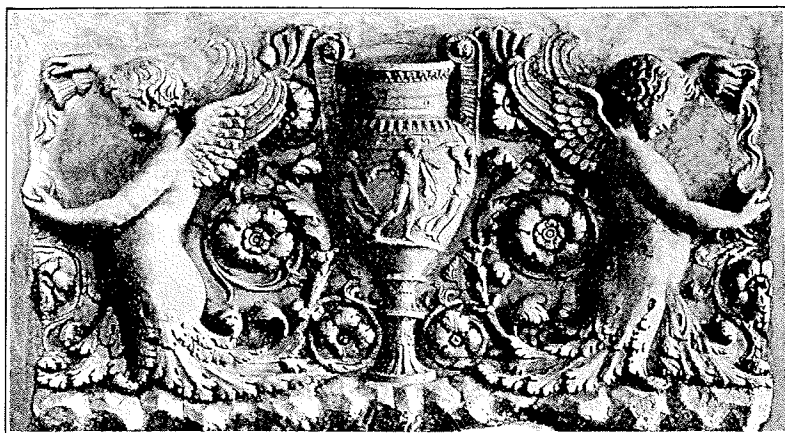
A ROMAN BAS-RELIEF

Could any carving in marble have a more tastefully arranged design?

324.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *conductor, intelligent, mission, numerous, sextet,* and *spontaneous* derived?

Name ten English derivatives formed from **mittō** by using with the stems **mit-, miss-,** the prefixes *per-, dis-, e-, sub-, inter-.*

What is a *missionary?* What is a *remittance?* From what two Latin words does *viaduct* come? From what two does *aqueduct* come?

Dūcō. Two Latin verbs derived from **dūcō** are given in the vocabulary. Name five other Latin verbs formed by combining **dūcō** with **prō-, re-, ē-, in-, de-.** Define each of these verbs. Define the English verbs *produce, reduce, educe, induce, deduce.*

XLVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒQUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM

325.   THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS, III

Post id iter maestum, nāvis nigra ad īnsulam Crētam appropinquāvit. Inter multitūdinem, quae puerōs et puellās Athēniēnsēs ex ōrā maritimā spectābat, erat Ariadnē, fīlia rēgis. Haec [1] Thēseum, illum adulēscentem pulchrum et audācem, statim amāvit. Cōnstituit igitur eī auxilium dare. Prope portam Labyrinthī Ariadnē Thēseum exspectāvit; eī gladium et glomus dedit.

" Hōc gladiō," inquit Ariadnē, " tē [2] contrā Mīnōtaurum dēfendēs; [3] glomere portam Labyrinthī rūrsus reperīre poteris. Tē hīc [4] exspectābō. Mē, ōrō, ēdūc tēcum [5] ex hāc terrā; nam mē relictam [6] pater ob hoc factum necābit."

Thēseus respondit: " Tuō auxiliō et virtūte meā mōnstrum certē vincam. Tū in hāc terrā nōn relinquēris, tē mēcum ēdūcam; in meā patriā tē in mātrimōnium dūcam."

Tum Thēseus paene sine timōre in Labyrinthum properāvit. Glomus ad portam adligātum [7] semper in manū tenēbat. Mox mōnstrum [8] cuius caput erat taurī, corpus erat hominis, vīdit. Diū et ācriter ille [9] gladiō, hic [9] lapidibus et cornibus pūgnāvērunt. Tandem Mīnōtaurus vincitur; ob vulnera multa nōn iam pūgnāre potest. Thēseus eum mortuum relinquit; dēfessus sed

laetus portam rūrsus petit. Ariadnēn [10] ad ōram maritimam clam dūcit; in nāve nigrā ad Graeciam nāvigant. Līberī Athēniēnsium numquam posteā ad mortem in īnsulam Crētam mittentur.

326.   VOCABULARY

iter, itineris, *n.* journey

vulnus, vulneris, *n.* wound

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus decide, place

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defend

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus lead out

petō, petere, petīvī (petiī), petītus ask, seek

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer (*cf.* victor and victōria)

in mātrimōnium dūcere marry

clam secretly (*adv.*)

327.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **haec:** this word is often used as a pronoun. Does it mean here, *he, she,* or *it?*

2. **tē:** object of **dēfendēs.** As **dēfendēs** means *you will defend,* **tē** must be translated *yourself.* In this usage it is called a reflexive pronoun.

3. **dēfendēs:** future tense, second person singular active of **dēfendō.** Refer to **328.**

4. **hīc:** pronoun or adverb?

5. **tē-cum:** remember that **cum,** when used with a pronoun, is attached to it. See **153.**

6. **relictam:** what form of **relinquō** is this word? with what word does it agree? Translate *if I am left.*

7. **adligātum:** this participle agrees with **glomus.**

8. **mōnstrum:** accusative case. It refers to **Mīnōtaurum.**

9. **ille, hic:** to whom does each of these words refer?

10. **Ariadnēn:** accusative case, a Greek ending.

328. Imperfect and Future Tenses, Active and Passive, of *mittō.*

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

Imperfect

I was sending, etc.		I was sent, etc.	
mittēbam	mittēbāmus	mittēbar	mittēbāmur
mittēbās	mittēbātis	mittēbāris	mittēbāminī
mittēbat	mittēbant	mittēbātur	mittēbantur

Future

I shall send, etc.		I shall be sent, etc.	
mittam	mittēmus	mittar	mittēmur
mittēs	mittētis	mit tē′ris	mittēminī
mittet	mittent	mittētur	mittentur

329.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

The imperfect tense of **mittō** is conjugated like that of **videō.** Notice that the short **-e** of the present stem becomes **-ē** in the imperfect tense. The verb in this tense looks as if it belonged to the second conjugation. *Cf.* **mittēbam** and **vidēbam.**

In the first and second conjugations, the future tense is indicated by some form of the tense sign **-bi-.** In the third conjugation the future tense is indicated by the tense sign **-a-** or **-ē-.** Before either of these tense signs the **-e-** of the present stem disappears. Review the future tense signs of the first and second conjugations and learn those of the third conjugation.

The future tense signs of the first, second, and third conjugations are given at the top of the next page for your convenience.

FUTURE TENSE SIGNS

First and Second Conjugations		*Third Conjugation*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
-b-	-bi-	-a-	-ē-
-bi-, (-be-, pass.)	-bi-	-ē-	-ē-
-bi-	-bu-	-e- (ē, pass.)	-e-

What is the difference in meaning between **mit tē′ris** and **mit′te ris**?

330.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **haec māter** in the singular and plural; **ea māgnitūdō** in the singular; **id iter** in the plural.

Conjugate: **relinquō** in the present tense passive; **vincō** in the future tense, active and passive; **cōnstituō** in the perfect tense active.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Līberīs-ne est causa itineris nōta? Līberīs causa itineris nōta est.   **2.** Quis patriam contrā rēgem Crētae dēfendet? Thēseus patriam contrā illum rēgem dēfendet.   **3.** Quis suā sponte ad Crētam nāvigābit? Thēseus suā sponte ad Crētam nāvigābit.   **4.** Cuius auxiliō Thēseus Mīnōtaurum vīcit? Auxiliō fīliae pulchrae rēgis Thēseus Mīnōtaurum vīcit.   **5.** Relinquētur-ne Ariadnē in īnsulā? Ariadnē in īnsulā nōn relinquētur.   **6.** Quis hanc puellam in mātrimōnium dūcet? Victor hanc puellam in mātrimōnium dūcet.

331.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: you (*s.*) are defended, he was defended, you (*s.*) will be defended, you (*pl.*) have been defended; he decides, we were deciding, you (*pl.*) will decide, they decided (once); he will be conquered; we shall be left; you (*pl.*) will be sought, they will be sought; I lead, I was leading, I shall lead, I have led.
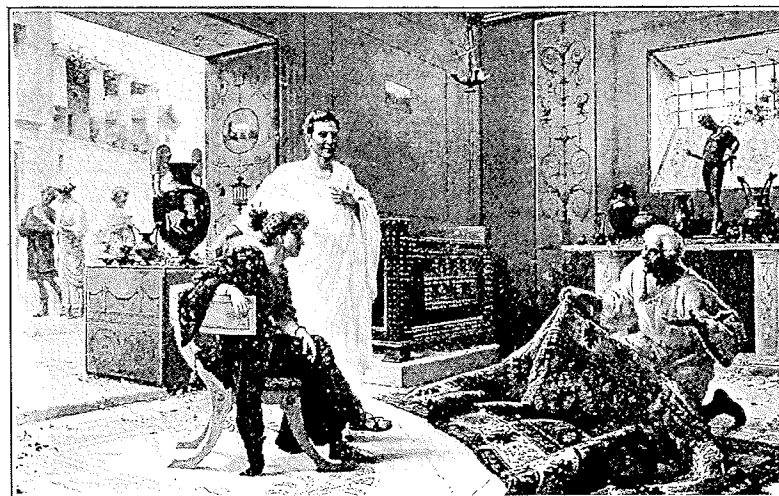
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
A ROMAN MATRON BUYING A RUG

The Romans loved oriental rugs. The dealer seems to have convinced the well-togated Roman and his beautifully dressed wife that he has what they want. The hair ornaments, bracelets, and earrings of the lady are magnificent examples of the goldsmith's art. Notice also the graceful lines of the chair in which she sits.

Complete and translate: **1.** Mīnōtaurus nōn sine auxiliō puellae (*was conquered*).   **2.** Vōs, līberī, in Labyrinthum (*will not be sent*).   **3.** (*On that long journey*) Thēseus dolōrem patris semper memoriā tenēbat.

Translate: They will lead him to the door of the Labyrinth.

332.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *constitution*, *defense*, *itinerary*, *petition*, and *relinquish* derived?

What is an *itinerant* musician? Why was Achilles said to be *vulnerable* in the heel? To what word in this vocabulary are *convince* and *convict* both related? What is the meaning of *con-* in these two words? Can you give the meanings of *repetition* and of *competitor* with the help of one of the verbs in the vocabulary of this lesson?

XLIX
OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒQUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM

333. MORS RĒGIS CODRĪ

Ōlim Lacedaemoniī, semper hostēs Athēniēnsium, bellum
Spartans
parāvērunt. Agrōs prope urbem vāstābant, agricolās agricul-
tūrā prohibēbant. Urbem ipsam [1] occupāre in animō habēbant.

Ōrāculum tamen Delphicum petīvērunt. (Illīs enim temporibus
homines nihil sine cōnsiliō deī suscēpērunt.) Apollō eīs respon-
undertook
dit: "Athēniēnsēs [2] nōn vincētis si rēgem eōrum necābitis."

Sīc monitī, ducēs Lacedaemoniōrum suōs mīlitēs regem Athēni-
ēnsem in proeliō nōn necāre iussērunt.

Hōc tempore, rēgnum [3] Athēniēnsium obtinēbat [3] Codrus, vir
bonus et amāns patriae, quī cīvēs suōs māgnō cum studiō cūrābat.
Hic igitur, quod cīvēs patriamque perīculō bellī līberāre vehe-
menter voluit, vestīmentīs servī indūtus, in castra hostium clam
in the clothing
intrāvit. Ibi ūnum ē mīlitibus verbīs ad īram incitāvit. Hic
entered   there
Codrum gladiō statim necāvit.

Sīc rēx suā morte [4] patriam servāvit. Nam hostēs urbem
expūgnāre nōn iam sē posse spērāvērunt.[5] Invītī igitur castra
mōvērunt, cōpiās ē terrā Athēniēnsium ēdūxērunt. Fāma
Codrī nōn sōlum antīquīs temporibus apud suōs cīvēs, sed
not only
posteā apud omnēs hominēs, clāra fuit.
all

214

334. VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, *m*. citizen (stem cīvi-)	ipse, ipsa, ipsum himself, herself, itself
hostis, hostis, *m*. enemy (in war) (stem hosti-)	in animō habēre have in mind, intend
mors, mortis, *f*. death (stem morti-)	līberō, līberāre free, set free
nihil nothing (*indeclinable noun*)	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move
tempus, temporis, *n*. time	castra movēre break camp
urbs, urbis, *f*. city (stem urbi-)	prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus keep from, prevent

335. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ipsam: this word agrees with **urbem**. Translate *the city itself*.

2. Athēniēnsēs: is this the subject or the object of **vincētis**?

3. rēgnum obtinēbat: *held the kingship*, i.e., *was king*.

4. suā morte: translate *by his own death*.

5. sē posse . . . spērāvērunt: translate *hoped that they could;*
literally, *hoped themselves to be able*.

336. Third Declension, Masculine and Feminine Nouns, I-Stems. Learn these declensions thoroughly.

	cīvis, cīvis, *m*., citizen (stem cīvi-)		urbs, urbis, *f*., *city* (stem urbi-)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	cīvis	cīvēs	urbs	urbēs
Gen.	cīvis	cīvium	urbis	urbium
Dat.	cīvī	cīvibus	urbī	urbibus
Acc.	cīvem	cīvēs, cīvīs	urbem	urbēs, urbīs
Abl.	cīve	cīvibus	urbe	urbibus

337. Declension of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum,* himself, herself, itself, themselves.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

338.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

I-Stem Nouns. A number of nouns in the third declension have a stem ending in -i. These nouns differ from all other nouns of this declension in the genitive and accusative plural. **Cīvis** and **urbs** are examples. We see that these nouns have -ium in the genitive plural where the other nouns have -um. They may have either of two endings in the accusative plural, -ēs or -īs. In this book we shall use only the accusative plural ending -ēs.

Cīvis ends in -is in the nominative singular and has the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. **Urbs** is a noun of one syllable; its nominative singular ends in -s, preceded by a consonant. All nouns like **cīvis** and **urbs** have -i stems. **Hostis** is declined like **cīvis**: **mors** like **urbs**. Hereafter, all i-stem nouns will be indicated in the vocabularies.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum. This is called an *intensive* pronoun because it intensifies or emphasizes the meaning of the word it modifies, *e.g.*:

Rēx **ipse** in castra intrāvit, the king *himself* entered the camp
Mīles rēgem **ipsum** necāvit, the soldier killed the king *himself*

Ipse means *self*. The noun or pronoun with which it is connected will enable you to decide whether to use *myself, ourselves; yourself, yourselves; himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

What other pronouns end in -ius in the genitive singular, and in -ī in the dative singular?

339.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Nōnne cōnsilium ab ōrāculō petīvistis? Cōnsilium ab ōrāculō petīvimus. **2.** Intellegis-ne verba ōrāculī? Verba ōrāculī intellegō. **3.** Timēbat-ne Codrus māgnitūdinem perīculī? Māgnitūdinem perīculī nōn timēbat. **4.** Fuit-ne mors Codrī hostibus grāta? Mors Codrī hostibus nōn grāta fuit. **5.** Quōs Codrus perīculō līberāvit? Suōs cīvēs Codrus perīculō bellī līberāvit.

340.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the genitive plural of **ea mors, hostis dūrus, hoc vulnus,** and **iūdex antīquus;** the third person singular active and passive of each tense of **relinquō;** the second person plural, active and passive, of each tense of **līberō** and **vincō**.

Translate: **1.** On that journey the messenger saw many cities. **2.** After the death of the good king, the enemy left the fields. **3.** The number of those soldiers was not great. **4.** Codrus had in mind to save his citizens by his death.

341.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *annihilate, civil, hostile, mortal, prohibit,* and *suburb* derived?

To what word in the vocabulary is each of the following related? civilian, temporary, urbane, immortality, annihilation. Give sentences that contain each of these English words.

From a painting by Michelangelo　　　　　*Vatican, Rome*

THE DELPHIC SIBYL

L

OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM

342.　　　　　SIBYLLA ET LIBRĪ

Antīquīs temporibus fuērunt in multīs locīs Ītaliae et Graeciae templa Apollinis. Fēminae, quae Sibyllae appellābantur, hominibus verba deī in templīs nārrābant. Apollō Sibyllās artem praedictiōnis docuit.[1] Delphīs erat clārissimum ōrāculum Apollinis,
at Delphi　　　　　most famous
inter montēs altōs Graeciae. Hūc hominēs omnium gentium

undique itinera fēcērunt, et cōnsilium deī petīvērunt. Sibylla
made
eīs [2] verba Apollinis nārrāvit.

Ōlim anus rēgem Tarquinium clam petīvit; eī novem librōs [3]
old woman
māgnō pretiō [4] vēndere voluit. Rēx recūsāvit; anus igitur
to sell　　　　　refused
discessit, trēs ē librīs [5] dēlēvit. Posterō diē iterum adfuit; sex
on the next day
librōs nunc habuit, et hōs eōdem pretiō vēndere cupīvit. Iterum
same　　　　　she wished
recūsāvit Tarquinius. Posteā tamen sacerdōtibus factum nār-
to the priests
rāvit. "Haec anus," inquiunt, "est Sibylla. In librīs īnsunt
are in
māgnae praedictiōnēs dē fortūnā urbis Rōmae."

Posterō diē anus ad rēgem trēs librōs apportāvit. Tum Tarquinius, ā sacerdōtibus doctus,[6] pecūniam libenter dedit. Anus, quae Sibylla vēra erat, discessit neque posteā vīsa est.
who
Trēs librī Sibyllīnī in templō Iovis collocātī,[6] māgnā cum cūrā servābantur. Rōmānī saepe in perīculīs librōs Sibyllīnōs cōnsulēbant.

343.　　　　　VOCABULARY

ars, artis, *f.* art
　(arti-)
gēns, gentis, *f.* nation
　(genti-)
liber, librī, *m.* book
mōns, montis, *m.* mountain
　(monti-)

adsum, adesse, adfuī be present
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus consult
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus depart
hūc to this place (*adv.*)
undique from all sides (*adv.*)

344.　　　　　NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **docuit:** how many accusatives are used with this verb? Point them out.

2. **eīs**: dative plural of **is**.

3. **librōs**: in what two ways does this word differ from **līberōs**, *children?*

4. **māgnō pretiō**: ablative. Translate *at a great price*.

5. **tres ē librīs**: Latin numerals, when used as nouns, are used with **ē** and the ablative instead of the genitive, as one would expect. Translate *three of the books*.

6. **doctus** and **collocātī**: with what noun does each of these participles agree?

345. Numerals for One to Ten.

Learn these so you can say them as rapidly as you can the corresponding Arabic numerals.

ūnus, -a, -um	one	**sex**	six
duo, duae, duo	two	**septem**	seven
trēs, tria	three	**octō**	eight
quattuor	four	**novem**	nine
quīnque	five	**decem**	ten

346. Declension of *ūnus* and *duo*.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	ū nī′us	ū nī′us	ū nī′us	du ō′rum	du ā′rum	du ō′rum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	du ō′bus	du ā′bus	du ō′bus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

347. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

As you have seen in **346**, the numerals, **ūnus** and **duo**, can be declined; **trēs** can also be declined. The others in **345** are indeclinable.

Ars and **mōns** are **i**-stem nouns. In what ways are they like **urbs** in the nominative singular?

348. ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **haec ipsa gēns** in the plural; **illa ars** in the singular.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quō hominēs dōna portāvērunt? Ad templum inter montēs altōs hominēs dōna portāvērunt. **2.** Quot (*how many*) librī dēlētī sunt? Sex ē librīs dēlētī sunt. **3.** Quot librī in templō servātī sunt? Trēs librī ā Rōmānīs in templō servātī sunt. **4.** Ā quibus librī Sibyllīnī cūrābantur? Ā duōbus virīs librī Sibyllīnī cūrābantur. **5.** Quī hōs librōs cōnsuluērunt? Cōnsulēs Rōmānī hōs librōs saepe cōnsuluērunt.

349. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **mōns altus** in the plural; **ūnum tempus** in the singular.

Complete: **1.** Thēseus fīliam rēgis (*did not marry*). **2.** Sine cōnsiliō ōrāculī (*they decided nothing*). **3.** (*The Sibyl, having-been-taught by the god*) hominibus verba nārrāvit.

Translate: **1.** On the high mountain was the temple of the Sibyl. **2.** She left three of the books. **3.** Apollo and Minerva taught men the arts of peace. **4.** Tarquinius decided to give her the money.

350. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *Gentile* and *library* derived?

Derivatives of **mōns**, *mountain*. Many place names ending in -mont are derived from this Latin word. Examples: Belmont, a beautiful mountain; Beaumont (same); Claremont, a bright (or famous) mountain; Monticello, a little mountain. Montreal is a French name derived from Latin **mōns** and **rēgālis**, royal. As you know, Canada belonged at one time to France. Montreal is only one of many French place names in Canada. In Montreal there is a park called Mount Royal. Do you know any names of other places or of persons ending in -mont?

LI

OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

AB ŌVŌ USQUE AD MĀLA   AD ASTRA PER ASPERA

From the egg through to the apples, means from first to last, because an egg was the first course and fruit the last at a Roman dinner. If **māla** had been pronounced **mala**, the sentence would have a very different meaning.

To the stars through difficulties is the motto of the state of Kansas.

351.   CAMILLUS ET VIR PERFIDUS

Rōmānī ōlim cum Faliscīs bellum gerēbant. Camillus, imperātor [1] Rōmānus, cōpiās in fīnēs Faliscōrum dūxit et castra prope urbem Faleriōs [2] posuit. Urbem occupāre in animō habuit. Diū et frūstrā urbem oppūgnāvit [3] sed expūgnāre [3] nōn potuit. Deinde quīdam eius oppidī fīliōs prīncipum ad castra Rōmāna addūxit. In media castra ad imperātōrem ductī sunt.

<div align="right">a certain man</div>

" Quī," rogāvit Camillus, " sunt hī puerī? "

" Hī," respondit vir, " sunt līberī prīncipum Faliscōrum. Tibi [4] hōs trādō. Patrēs, līberōrum [5] dēsīderiō adductī, tibi urbem mox libenter trādent. Sīc urbem occupāre poteris."

<div align="center">by desire</div>

Camillus, īrā commōtus, virum perfidum spectāvit; tum magnā voce clāmāvit: " Nōs, perfide,[6] bellum cum virīs, nōn cum puerīs gerimus. Virtūte, nōn perfidiā, hostēs vincimus."

<div align="center">treacherous</div>

<div align="center">222</div>

Deinde mīlitēs iussit eum vīnctum [7] ē castrīs ēicere. Puerīs

<div align="center">bound   to drive out</div>

quoque Faliscīs virgās dedit; illum verberibus rūrsus in urbem

<div align="center">rods   with blows</div>

eōs agere iussit. Puerī hoc negōtium magnō cum gaudiō suscē-

<div align="right">undertook</div>

pērunt.

Cīvēs Faliscī, ubi virtūtem Camillī intellexērunt, cum virō tam bonō nōn iam pūgnāre cōnstituērunt. Itaque lēgātōs ad eum ipsum dē pāce mīsērunt. Pāx amīcitiaque igitur inter duās gentēs cōnfīrmātae sunt.

352.   VOCABULARY

fīnis, fīnis, *m.* end, territories (fīni-)   *(in pl.)*

imperātor, imperātōris, *m.* general

prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.* chief man

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive, do

clāmō, clāmāre shout

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus manage; **bellum gerere** wage war

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus place; **castra pōnere** pitch camp

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender

tam, so *(adv.,* used only with adjectives and adverbs)

353.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **imperātor,** when Rome became an empire, came to mean *emperor.*

2. **Faleriōs:** the name of a city. Often the name of a city is used in the plural with a singular meaning. *Cf.* **Athēnae, Syracūsae.**

3. **oppūgnāvit** and **expūgnāre:** what is the difference in meaning?

4. **tibi:** why is this word in the dative case?

5. **līberōrum:** depends on **dēsīderiō.** Translate *for,* not *of.*

6. **perfide:** vocative case of **perfidus.** Translate *treacherous man!*

7. **vīnctum:** with what does this participle agree? It is not the participle of **vincō,** but of **vinciō,** a verb you have not had.

354.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

To and *Into.* It is necessary to pay special attention to the translation into Latin of the prepositional phrase *to* with a *noun* or *pronoun.* You know that in English such verbs as *give, tell, show,* and others are followed by *to* and a noun or pronoun. Sometimes *to* is omitted, and then the noun or pronoun used without the preposition is called an indirect object. In Latin, verbs of such meanings, *e.g.,* **dō, mōnstrō, nārrō, trādō,** take an object in the dative case, called the *indirect object.* The dative of the indirect object usually precedes the accusative of the direct object. Compare the following:

The Sibyl gave the books *to the king.* } Sibylla **rēgī** librōs dedit.
The Sibyl gave *the king* the books.   }

If, on the other hand, *to* follows a verb of motion, such as **mittere, dūcere, portāre, properāre,** it must be expressed in Latin by **ad** used with the accusative case, *e.g.*:

He led the boys *to the camp,* puerōs **ad castra** dūxit.

Into always follows a verb of motion and is always expressed by **in** with the accusative case. (What is the meaning of **in** with the ablative case?)

355.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis cōpiās Rōmānōrum in eōs fīnēs dūcit? Camillus, imperātor clārus, cōpiās in eōs fīnēs dūcit. **2.** Quī perfidum in urbem ēgērunt? Puerī ipsī māgnō cum gaudiō eum in urbem ēgērunt. **3.** Vīcit-ne Camillus cīvēs eius urbis? Camillus cīvēs eius urbis nōn armīs sed virtūte vīcit. **4.** Quibus vir perfidus trāditus est? Suīs cīvibus vir perfidus trāditus est.
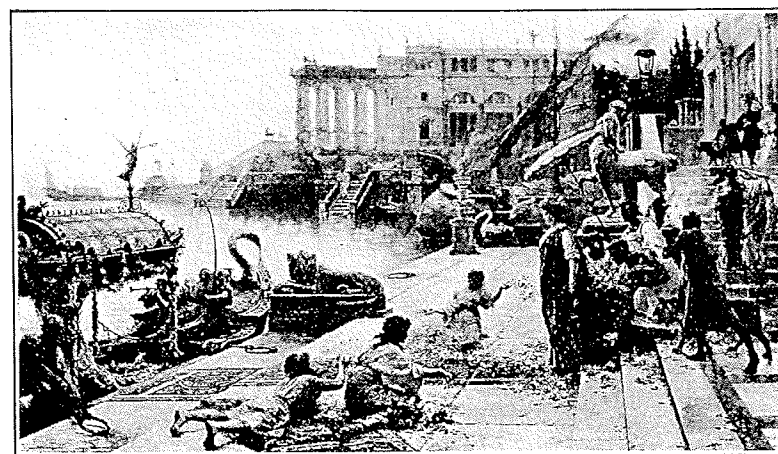
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*
IDLE HOURS OF AN EMPRESS
Poppaea, the beautiful wife of the emperor Nero, comes down from her seaside residence to her state barge or gondola. She will soon be gliding over the sapphire sea past gleaming villas with their overhanging gardens.

356.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate the following: (Watch for examples of the indirect object and of the accusative with **ad** or **in**) **1.** The chief-men of the town sent ambassadors to the Roman general. **2.** The boys, having-been-sent from camp, told (to) their fathers the words of the general. **3.** The enemy (*pl.*) have pitched camp in our territories and are-carrying grain into the camp.

357.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *action, exclaim, final, imperial, position, prince,* and *trade* derived?

Define the following English words derived from **agō**: *agile, actor, agent, transact, react, actual.*

The Latin verb **nāvigāre** is derived from **nāvis,** *a ship,* and **agere.** Does **agere** in this compound word mean *drive* or *do*?
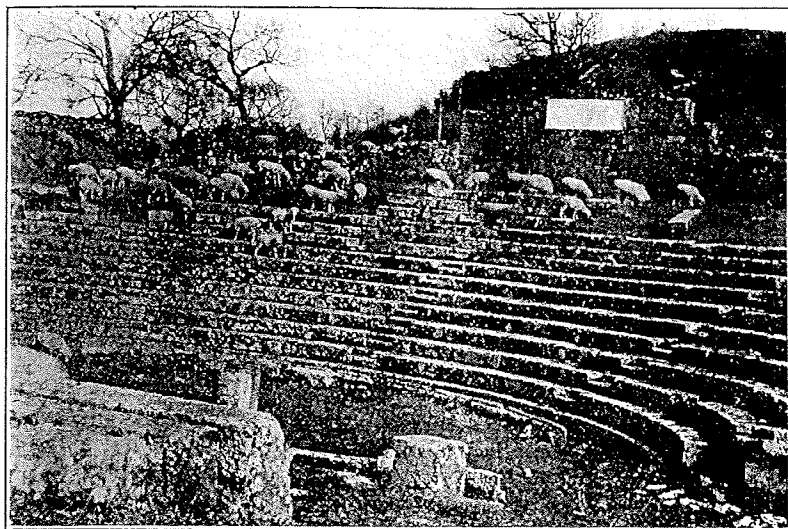
Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin

MODERN VISITORS IN AN ANCIENT THEATER

The ancient Italic town of Tusculum was a place of importance before Rome was founded. Tusculum was on a high ridge in the Alban Hills, and about fifteen miles south of Rome. The Roman orator Cicero had a villa at Tusculum. The seats of the out-door theater and part of its stage are the most interesting of the few remains of the ancient town.

LII

OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

358. DĒ ANIMĀLIBUS

Multa sunt genera animālium; ea, quae in marī habitant sunt piscēs; ea, quae in silvīs et in montibus habitant, sunt bēstiae; alia[1] quae ālīs ōrnāta[2] in āere volant, avēs appellantur.
_{fish}
_{with wings} _{fly} _{birds}

Summum genus animālium est homō.[3] Is nōn sōlum animal, _{only} sed fīlius est Deī, nam in Librīs Sānctīs scrīptum est: " Creāvit _{Holy}

226

Deus hominem ad imāginem suam." Itaque homō putāre _{likeness} potest atque artem ōrātiōnis [4] habet. Animālia cētera et mare et terrās rēgit homō. Hoc docet Aesōpus in fābulā

DĒ EQUŌ ET CERVŌ

Equus, sīc nārrātur, quī ōlim cum cervō contendēbat, auxilium _{stag} ab homine petīvit. " Libenter," inquit homō, " tē iuvābō, sed prīmum in tuum tergum ascendere [5] atque frēnum in ōre tuō _{back} _{bit} _{mouth} pōnere cupiō." Equus hoc [6] libenter passus est. Hic auxiliō _{I wish} _{allowed} socī novī cervum facile vīcit; nōn iam, tamen, erat ipse līber.

Homō etiam nunc dominus est equī.

359. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, *n.* animal (animāli-)	putō, putāre think
mare, maris, *n.* sea (mari-)	rēgō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule
cēterus, -a, -um all other	scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write
summus, -a, -um highest	atque and also
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus fight, hasten	etiam even (*adv.*)
	prīmum first (*adv.*)

360. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **alia:** neuter plural and refers to **animālium.**

2. **ōrnāta:** translate *equipped;* it agrees with **alia.**

3. **homō,** not **vir,** must be used when by *man* is meant *mankind* or *human beings.*

4. **ōrātiōnis:** translate *of speech.*

5. **in . . . ascendere:** *to mount.*

6. **hoc:** object of **passus est.** Translate *this.*

361. Third Declension of Neuter Nouns, I-Stem

animal, animal
stem, animāli-

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	animal	animālia
Gen.	animālis	animālium
Dat.	animālī	animālibus
Acc.	animal	animālia
Abl.	animālī	animālibus

mare, sea
stem, mari-

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mare	maria
Gen.	maris	——
Dat.	marī	maribus
Acc.	mare	maria
Abl.	marī	maribus

362.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

A few much used nouns of the third declension are neuter, with i-stems. Two of these have just been declined. If you compare the case endings of these nouns with those of **flūmen** and **corpus** (286), you will see that **i**-stem neuter nouns differ from consonant-stem neuter nouns in the ablative singular and also in the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural. If there was a genitive plural **marium,** it is not found in Latin writings that are left to us.

How is one to know whether a noun of the third declension has an **i**-stem or not? The following answers that question:

I-Stem nouns are:

(*a*) nouns in **-is** or **-ēs** with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, *e.g.,* **cīvis, cīvis,** *citizen;* **caedēs, caedis,** *slaughter;*

(*b*) nouns in **-ns** or **-rs,** *e.g.,* **adulēscēns,** *young man;* **ars,** *art;*

(*c*) nouns of one syllable ending in **s** or **x,** preceded by a consonant, *e.g.,* **urbs,** *city;* **arx,** *citadel;*

(*d*) neuter nouns in **-e, -al,** or **-ar,** *e.g.,* **mare,** *sea;* **animal,** *animal;* **exemplar,** *pattern.*

363. Case Endings of Third Declension Nouns. We have now studied all four classes of third declension nouns, although we shall continue to learn other nouns of this declension. The case endings of all third declension nouns are given here. It is very important that you learn them thoroughly, as you will need to use them often.

CASE ENDINGS

	CONSONANT-STEMS		I-STEMS	
	Masculine or Feminine	*Neuter*	*Masculine or Feminine*	*Neuter*
	Singular		*Singular*	
Nom.	— or -s	—	-s	—
Gen.	-is	-is	-is	-is
Dat.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	-em	—	-em	—
Abl.	-e	-e	-e	-ī
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	-um	-um	-ium	-ium
Dat.	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-ēs	-a	-ēs, (-īs)	-ia
Abl.	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

364.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis hanc fābulam tam grātam nārrat? Aesōpus hanc fābulam tam grātam scrīpsit. **2.** Quis cum equō contendit? Cervus cum equō contendit. **3.** Quem ad modum equus victōriam reportāvit? Auxiliō hominis equus victōriam reportāvit. **4.** Quis cētera animālia regit? Homō, quod eius genus est summum, cētera animālia regit. **5.** Cūr est genus hominis summum? Genus hominis est summum quod homō sōlus putāre potest.

THE TOMB OF A BAKER

The inscription on this tomb says, in part, that Publius Nonius Zethus made the sarcophagus for himself, for a fellow freed-woman, and for his wife. They were cremated and their ashes were put in the tomb.

P. Nonius Zethus was a baker. To the left of the inscription is cut in relief a Roman flour mill, *mola*. A little donkey, as you can see, is turning the upper grindstone around on the lower one. At the right are sifters used in sifting the ground grain, and molds for loaves of bread.

365.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the genitive and the accusative plural of **negōtium, iter, tempus, vulnus.**

Translate: **1.** Names were given to the animals by man. **2.** Man is the lord of all-other animals. **3.** The horse is a beautiful animal. **4.** Aesop (**Aesōpus**) wrote many pleasing fables about animals.

366.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *direct, dispute, marine, Scriptures,* and *summit* derived?

LIII
OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM TERTIUM

367.   PHĪDIPPIDĒS VICTŌRIAM NŪNTIAT

Antīquīs temporibus, Graecī cum Persīs multīs proeliīs prō lībertāte contendērunt. Dārīus, rēx Persārum, māgnās cōpiās et multās nāvēs comparāvit. Trāns mare nāvigāvit, et in plānitiē Marathōniā, quae vīgintī sex mīlia passuum [1] Athēnīs [2] aberat, castra posuit. Athēniēnsēs quoque bellum parāvērunt; decem mīlia mīlitum [3] coēgērunt. In plānitiē proelium commissum est; Athēniēnsēs māgnā caede hostēs vīcērunt, et eōs ad nāvēs in fugam dedērunt.

Inter mīlitēs Athēniēnsēs erat Phīdippidēs, cursor clārus. Hīc adulēscēns, sīc nārrātur, ante proelium in montibus deum Pāna vīdit. Deus adulēscentem verbīs bonīs appellāvit et Graecīs victōriam pollicitus est.[4] Post proelium Phīdippidēs iter longum inter Marathōna et Athēnās māgnā cum celeritāte confēcit; vīginti sex mīlia passuum paucīs hōrīs cucurrit. Per portam urbis, per viās in medium Forum currit nūntius victōriae.

Hīc expectābant cīvēs.

" Gaudēte ! " clāmat, " nostra est victōria ! " Tum exani-mātus, cadit mortuus.

231

368.   VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*
  young man (adulēscenti-)

caedēs, caedis, *f.* slaughter
  (caedi-)

celeritās, celeritātis, *f.* speed

lībertās, lībertātis, *f.* freedom

nāvis, nāvis, *f.* ship (navi-)

mīlle one thousand (mīlia, *pl.*);
  mīlle passūs a mile

cōgō, cōgere, co ē'gī, coāctus,
  (coāgō) collect, compel

committō, committere, commīsī,
  commissus commit; proelium
  committere begin battle

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus
                  run

ante before (*prep. with acc.*)

369.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. mīlia passuum: *miles.* A thousand paces (mīlle passūs) equals one mile; two thousand paces (duo mīlia passuum) equals two miles, etc. A Roman pace (passus) was two steps.

2. Athēnīs: *from Athens.* With names of cities, the preposition ā is omitted; but *from the city* is ab urbe.

3. mīlitum: genitive depending on mīlia.

4. pollicitus est: *promised.* This verb is conjugated in the passive, but as it has an active meaning, it is translated *promised.* Other verbs such as this will be noted as they occur.

370. *Mīlle and Mīlia.* Mīlle, *one thousand,* like quattuor, quīnque, etc., is an indeclinable adjective, *e.g.,* mīlle mīlitēs erant in castrīs, *one thousand soldiers were in camp.* But to express *two thousand, three thousand,* etc., mīlia must be used. Mīlia is a noun declined like the plural of animal, *i.e.,* mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus. M lia is *always* followed by the genitive, for example, duo mīlia mīlitum, *two thousands of soldiers.*

371.   RULES FOR GENDER

General Rules. These rules for gender apply to nouns of all declensions.

Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

Examples: leō, a lion (male); Tiberis, Tiber; Aquilō, the north wind; Aprīlis, April.

Names of females, countries, towns, islands, trees, and qualities are feminine.

Examples: soror, sister; leaena, lioness; Ītalia, Italy; Corinthus, Corinth; Crēta, Crete; pirus, pear tree; dīgnitās, dignity.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter.

Example: nihil, nothing.

Special Rules.

Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

Examples: casa, house (*fem.*); agricola, farmer (*masc.*).

Nouns of the second declension ending in -um are neuter; almost all others are masculine.

Examples: proelium (*neuter*), numerus, puer, vir, all masculine.

There are many irregularities of gender in the *third declension,* but the following rules, with rare exceptions, are true.

Nouns ending in -er or -or are masculine.

Examples: pater, timor.

Nouns ending in -ūs, -tūdō, -tās, or -ēs are feminine.

Examples: virtūs, māgnitūdō, lībertās, caedēs.

Nouns ending in -al, -e, -men, or -us are neuter.

Examples: animal, mare, nōmen, corpus.

372.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis in Forum currit? Nūntius ā proeliō in Forum currit. **2.** Quibuscum nostrae cōpiae contendērunt? Cum māgnīs cōpiīs hostium nostrae cōpiae contendērunt. **3.** Vident-ne cīvēs hunc nūntium cum

gaudiō? Cīvēs hunc nūntium summō cum gaudiō vident.
4. Est-ne ille nūntius cārus deīs? Cārus est deīs; in montibus
deum ōlim vīdit. 5. Ubi nunc sunt cōpiae Persārum? Ad
nāvēs ā Graecīs cōpiae Persārum fugātae sunt.

373. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write the declension of: **caedēs māgna, duo prīncipēs** and
lībertās cāra in the plural; **nāvis longa** and **hic fīnis** in the
singular.

Translate: **1.** They collected ten thousand (of) men. **2.** The
ships of the enemy were often seen on the sea. **3.** The journey
from the sea to the city is not long. **4.** Phidippides surpassed
all others in swiftness.

374. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *course* and *naval* derived?

Define each of these words and tell to what Latin word it is related:
computation, inscribe, submarine, millennium, cogent.

Currency is derived from **currere**, *to run*, and means *money that is
in circulation*, passing from hand to hand. Thus it is closely related
to *current*, the flow of a stream. What is meant by a *current* report?

Curriculum, which in Latin means a *race course*, has acquired a new
meaning in English. To us it is a course of study, as, the *curriculum*
of a school. Do you see the connection? In a race, one does not run
wherever one pleases. One starts and finishes as the rules prescribe.
So to win the diploma of a school or college one must meet prescribed
conditions.
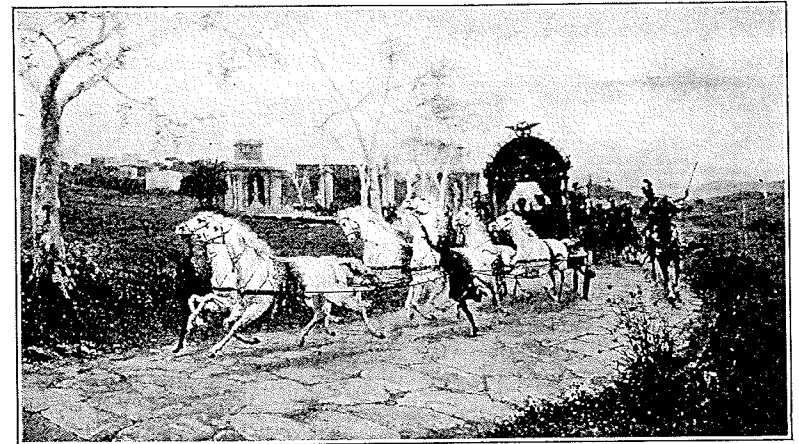
From a painting by E. Forti AN EMPEROR PASSES BY *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

In a beautiful chariot, surmounted by the eagle and wreath of Rome and drawn
by six white Arab steeds, the emperor Hadrian leaves his villa near Tibur, modern
Tivoli, and dashes for his capital along the lava-paved Via Tiburtina.

LIV

OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

WORD STUDY

375. Find ten English words derived from **regō, regere, rēxī,
rēctus**, *rule, guide*. Write these words, with their definitions, in your
notebook. Look for derivatives containing: the present stem **reg-**
(**rig-**); the participial stem **rect-.**

376. Assimilation. In the formation of compound words, two
consonants frequently come together. When this happens, they
tend to become alike, *i.e.*, to assimilate (**ad,** *to* and **similis,** *like*).
This assimilation appears most often in the last consonant of prepo-
sitions, when used as prefixes to make compound words, as shown in
these two examples:

con-mittō	Latin, **committō**	English, *commit*
con-labōrāre	Latin, **collabōrāre**	English, *collaborate*

The following table shows the forms in which prefixes you have studied occur. Only those are listed in which changes occur.

a-, ab-, abs-	ob- (-oc, of-, op-)
ad- (ac-, af-, ag-, al-,	prae-, pre-
ap-, ar-, as-, at-)	pro-, prod-
con- (co-, col-, com-,	re-, red-
cum-, cor-)	sub- (suc-, suf-, sug-, sum-,
e-, ex- (ef-)	sup-, sur-, sus-)
in- (il-, im-, ir-)	trans-, tra-

377. What prefix is found in each of the following words?

illegal	attend	aggrandize	important	effect
succeed	suppose	traduce	compare	collaborate

378. To what Latin words are the following related?

celerity	capital	jovial	peninsula
adduce	relic	nihilist	artisan
intellectual	Montreal	prohibition	gesture

379. OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Define the following words derived from **regō**, and show by your definition how the idea of ruling or guiding appears in each one : region, dirigible, incorrigible, regiment.

Hostis — inimīcus — adversārius. The Gaul was an *enemy*, hostis, to the Roman; Caesar and Pompey came to be *personal enemies*, inimīci; Cicero was a political enemy, adversārius, of Antony. See if you can find out why Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony) was to Octavian, later the emperor Augustus, an amīcus, an adversārius, an inimīcus, and a hostis. He was each of these, one after another.

LV
OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

ADVĒNIMUS REITERANDUM EST PRŌCĒDĀMUS

380. ORAL EXERCISE

1. Tell how the perfect tense passive is formed. 2. Conjugate **augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus** in the perfect tense passive. 3. Like what other part of speech is the perfect passive participle used? 4. Give at least three translations of the following sentence, showing the different ideas that may be expressed by the Latin perfect passive participle : **populus, perīculō līberātus, Thēseum semper amābit.** 5. Give the present active infinitive of **dūcō, putō, moveō.** 6. To what conjugation does **dūcō** belong?

1. How can you distinguish the present infinitive of a third conjugation verb from that of a second? 2. How can you distinguish the future tense of a third conjugation verb from the future of the first and second conjugation verbs? 3. Conjugate **relinquō** in the future tense active. 4. What is the genitive plural ending for i-stem nouns? 5. What is the ending of the nominative plural of i-stem neuter nouns? 6. How many i-stem neuter nouns do you know? 7. Select from the following list the i-stem nouns. Tell why you think each is an i-stem noun : **fīnis, tempus, gēns, dux, ars, caput, magister, īgnis.**

1. How do you say in Latin *of the general himself, to the girl herself?* 2. Count in Latin from 1 to 10. 3. How does it come that September, our ninth month, gets its name from the Latin word for *seven?* 4. How do you say in Latin, *five thousand men?* 5. Mention two ways of expressing *to* in Latin. Illustrate by short English sentences.

6. What is the gender of third declension nouns in **-ūs**, in **-us**? Give an example of each.

381.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **adulēscēns ipse** in the plural; **duae gentēs** in the plural; **haec mors** in the singular; **vulnus miserum** in the singular.

Write: the third plural active of five tenses of **cōgō** and **līberō**; the first plural active of five tenses of **clāmō, gerō, adsum**; the perfect passive participle in the nominative plural, all genders, of **cōnstituō, trādō, putō, dēfendō, perterreō**.

Translate into Latin the italicized words:

1. The gods gave *the frightened soldiers* aid. **2.** The heroes *were aided* by the gods. **3.** The forces, *having-been-collected in camp,* will be prepared for battle. **4.** The daughter of the king *will be left* on the island. **5.** *One of the citizens* has hastened *of his own accord* into the enemy's camp. **6.** Three of the books were kept *by the Romans with great care.* **7.** *In the temple of Jupiter* they remained *many years.* **8.** Phidippides *ran to the city* with great speed.

382.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. adulēscēns	11. fuga	21. māgnitūdō	30. numerus
2. animal	12. gēns	22. mare	31. pater
3. ars	13. genus	23. māter	32. prīnceps
4. caedēs	14. hostis	24. mīles	33. tempus
5. calamitās	15. imperātor	25. mōns	34. timor
6. caput	16. īnsula	26. mors	35. urbs
7. celeritās	17. iter	27. multitūdō	36. victor
8. cīvis	18. Iuppiter	28. nāvis	37. vox
9. dolor	19. liber	29. nihil	38. vulnus
10. fīnis	20. lībertās		

Adjectives

39. cēterus	40. invītus	41. summus

Numerals

42. ūnus	45. quattuor	48. septem	51. decem
43. duo	46. quīnque	49. octō	52. mīlle
44. trēs	47. sex	50. novem	(*pl.* mīlia)

Pronouns

53. quī   54. ipse

Verbs

55. adsum	64. dēfendō	72. inquit	79. pōnō
56. agō	65. discēdō	(inquiunt)	80. prohibeō
57. clāmō	66. dūcō	73. intellegō	81. putō
58. cōgō	67. addūcō	74. līberō	82. regō
59. committō	68. condūcō	75. mittō	83. relinquō
60. cōnsulō	69. ēdūcō	76. moveō	84. scrībō
61. cōnstituō	70. errō	77. perterreō	85. trādō
62. contendō	71. gerō	78. petō	86. vincō
63. currō			

Adverbs

87. clam	89. hūc	91. prīmum	93. undique
88. etiam	90. paene	92. tam	

Preposition   Conjunctions

94. ante	95. atque	96. nam

Idioms

97. castra pōnere	101. in fugam dare	105. bellum gerere
98. castra movēre	102. sē in fugam dare	106. suā sponte
99. proelium committere	103. mīlle passūs	107. victōriam reportāre
100. in mātrimōnium dūcere	104. in animō habēre	

383.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words?   Learn any
you do not know.

Nouns

1. young man	14. enemy (in war)	27. multitude
2. animal	15. general	28. ship
3. art	16. island	29. nothing
4. slaughter	17. journey	30. number
5. disaster	18. Jupiter	31. father
6. head	19. book	32. chief man
7. speed	20. freedom	33. time
8. citizen	21. greatness	34. fear
9. grief	22. sea	35. city
10. end (*pl.* territory)	23. mother	36. conqueror
11. flight	24. soldier	37. voice
12. nation	25. mountain	38. wound
13. kind	26. death	

Adjectives

39. all other   40. unwilling   41. highest

Numerals

42. one	45. four	48. seven	51. ten
43. two	46. five	49. eight	52. thousand
44. three	47. six	50. nine	

Pronouns

53. who   54. self

Verbs

55. be present	67. lead to	78. ask, seek
56. drive, do	68. gather, lead together	79. place
57. shout		80. keep from, prevent
58. collect, compel	69. lead out	81. think
59. commit	70. wander	82. rule
60. consult	71. manage	83. leave
61. decide, place	72. says, (say)	84. write
62. fight, hasten	73. understand	85. hand over, surrender
63. run	74. free, set free	
64. defend	75. send	86. conquer
65. depart	76. move	
66. lead	77. terrify	

Adverbs

87. secretly	91. first
88. even	92. so
89. hither, to this place	93. from all sides
90. almost	

Preposition

94. before

Conjunctions

95. and also   96. for

Idioms

97. pitch	102. flee	105. wage war
98. break camp	103. a mile	106. of his (their) own accord
99. begin battle	104. have in mind, intend	
100. marry		107. win a victory
101. put to flight		

384.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are derivatives from words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* XLV–LIV. Give or write the Latin words from which they are derived. Can you use each of these correctly in an English sentence?

1. action	18. defense	35. marine	51. repetition
2. agent	19. direct	36. maternal	52. Scriptures
3. agile	20. dispute	37. militia	53. September
4. annihilate	21. doleful	38. millennium	54. sextet
5. aqueduct	22. err	39. mission	55. spontaneous
6. captain	23. exclaim	40. mortal	56. submarine
7. chaperone	24. final	41. naval	57. suburb
8. civil	25. gender	42. numerous	58. summit
9. cogent	26. gentile	43. paternal	59. temporary
10. competitor	27. hostile	44. petition	60. timorous
11. computation	28. immortality	45. position	61. trade
12. conductor	29. imperial	46. prince	62. transact
13. constitution	30. inscribe	47. prohibit	63. urbane
14. convince	31. insulate	48. react	64. viaduct
15. course	32. intelligent	49. relinquish	65. vocal
16. currency	33. itinerary	50. remittance	66. vulnerable
17. curriculum	34. library		

THE TEMPLE OF THE CASTORS

The temple of Castor, or of the Castors, was begun in Rome after the successful battle at Lake Regillus in 496 B.C. against an allied army of Latins and Etruscans. It was rebuilt and enlarged many times until it was an architectural masterpiece in marble. During the centuries it has felt the ruthless hand of man and of earthquake. Of its thirty-eight columns only three remain, but in their lofty isolation they are a most majestic reminder of past glory.
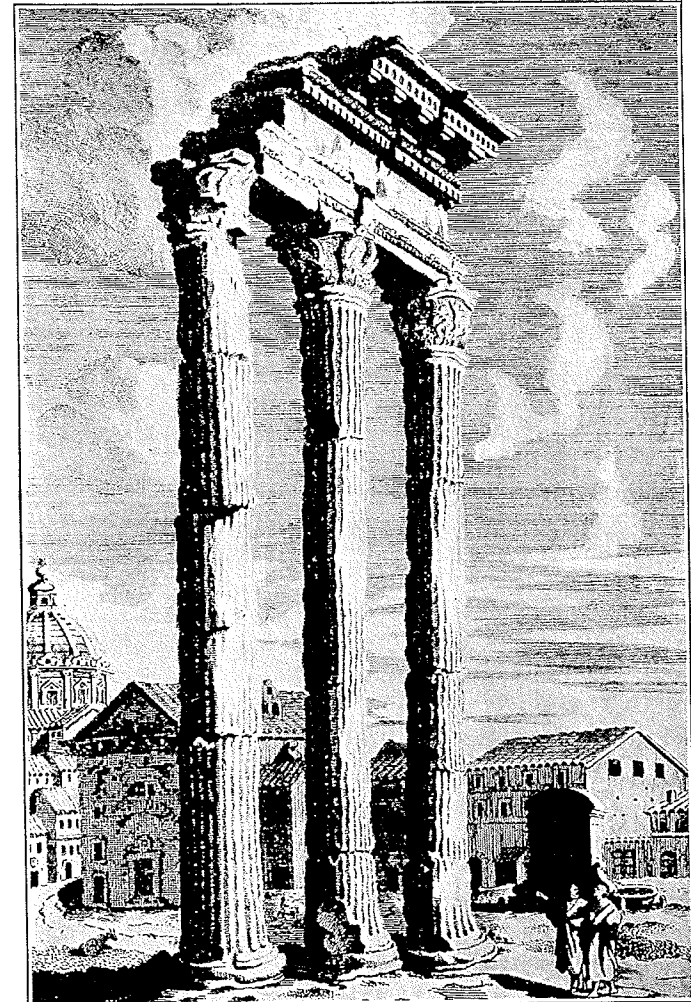
From an old engraving
THREE OF THE THIRTY-EIGHT

243
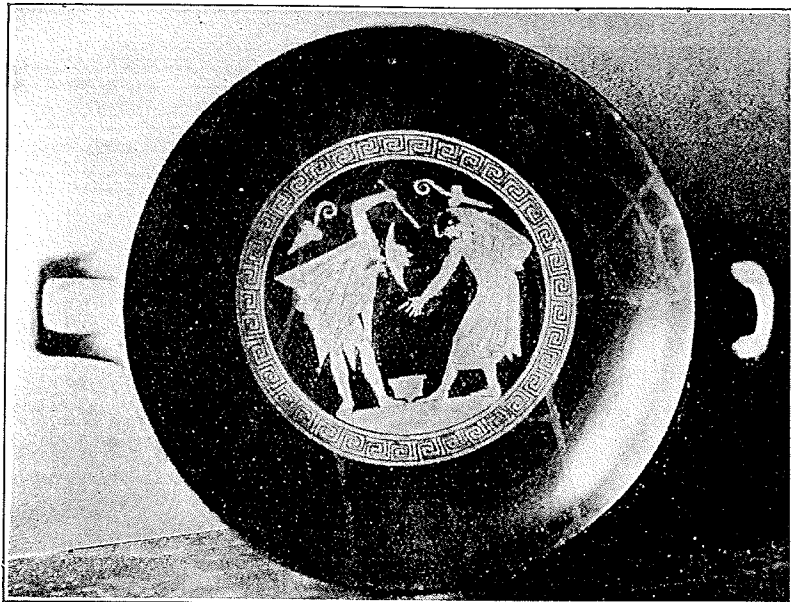
A SPINNING TOP

385. **A GREEK OUTDOOR SPORT**

The Greeks and the Romans are of the greatest interest to us because so much of our civilization is due to them. Through their literature we have learned a great deal about what they thought and did. Through archaeology, we have found out how they lived and died, how they ate and drank, how they worked and played.

We know about the Romans from paintings which have come to light when their houses have been dug out, or (as the Latin derivative would say) excavated, and also from stories that have been carved on stone altars, tombs, columns, and arches.

Most of our knowledge of the Greeks is derived from vase
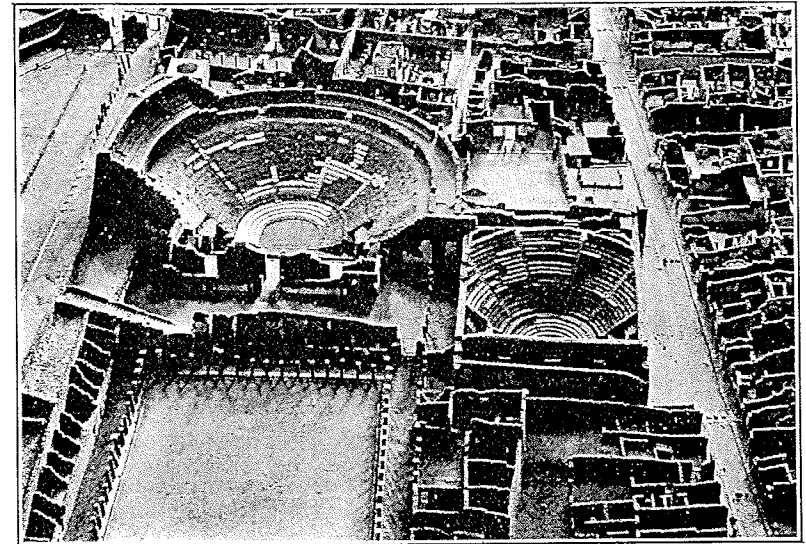
POMPEII FROM THE AIR

paintings. The Greeks supplied the ancient world for centuries with hand-painted chinaware. At first Greek artists painted stories from mythology, but soon they began to paint the everyday life of Greek men, women, and children. In fact, there is hardly a thing the Greeks ever did that is not painted on some vase, or cup, or bowl.

The illustration shown is of a two-handled shallow bowl with a painting in the center of the bottom. What are the two men doing? One holds a stick and seems about to strike something on the ground at his feet. If you could look at the bowl itself in Baltimore, you would see what the illustration does not show, namely, five black stripes hanging from the end of the stick. These stripes represent strips of leather. Now can you see what the man is doing?

He is whipping a big wooden top, which is spinning away as merrily as any top any one of us ever whipped.

LVI
OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM SEXTUM

FRĀTRĒS GEMINĪ

The twin brethren were Castor and Pollux (in Greek, Poly-deucēs). Castor was a champion rider; Pollux a champion boxer. The constellation " Gem′i ni " was named after them by the Greeks. If you ever said " By Jiminy," or heard it said, did you know that it came from Latin?

386. CASTOR ET POLLŪX

In Forō Rōmānō vidētur fōns, quī Iūturnae [1] appellātus est. Hūc, ita nārrātur, ōlim sub noctem duo equitēs īgnōtī appropin-
_{at night-fall}
quāvērunt et suīs equīs aquam dedērunt.

Rōmānī eō tempore proelium cum hostibus ad lacum Regillum commīserant.[2] Longa fuerat [3] pūgna neque Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dare potuerant.[3] Multī et [4] Rōmānōrum et [4] hostium occīsī erant.[5] Subitō inter ōrdinēs vīsī erant duo equitēs īgnōtī, armīs albīs indūtī. Hī prō Rōmānīs pūgnāvērunt; Rōmānī, imprōvīsō auxiliō incitātī, māgnō cum studiō proelium redinte-grāvērunt. Mox hostēs in fugam datī sunt.

Tum equitēs īgnōtī ad urbem contendērunt. In Forō cīvibus victōriam Rōmānōrum nūntiāvērunt; aquam fontis bibērunt
_{drank}
et equīs dedērunt. Tum discessērunt et posteā nōn vīsī sunt. Sed cīvēs cōgnōvērunt hōs esse deōs,[6] frātrēs [7] geminōs, Castōrem [8]
_{twin}

et Pollūcem. Templum igitur in eō locō illīs aedificāvērunt, quod auxiliō dīvīnō Rōmam dēfenderant. Id templum appellātur Templum Castōrum.[9]

387. VOCABULARY

eques, equitis, *m.* horseman
fōns, fontis, *m.* spring, fountain (fonti-)
frāter, frātris, *m.* brother
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.* rank

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus learn, know
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus cut down, kill
ita thus, so (*adv.*)
subitō suddenly (*adv.*)

388. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Iūturnae:** genitive modifying **fōns** understood. Translate *that of Juturna.*
2. **commīserant:** pluperfect tense active. Translate *had begun.*
3. **fuerat . . . potuerant:** these verbs are in the pluperfect tense.
4. **et . . . et:** what do these words mean when used as a pair?
5. **occīsī erant:** pluperfect tense passive. Find another verb in the same voice, tense, person, and number.
6. **cōgnōvērunt hōs esse deōs:** literally, *knew these to be gods.* Translate *knew that these were gods.*
7. **frātrēs:** accusative in apposition with **deōs.**
8. **Castōrem:** why is this word in the accusative?
9. **Castōrum:** *of the Castors.* **Aedēs Castōrum** was the official name of the temple.

389. Pluperfect Tense of *mittō*, *portō*, and *videō*.

Active		Passive	
I had sent, etc.		*I had been sent*, etc.	
mīseram	mīserāmus	missus, -a, -um eram	missī, -ae, -a erāmus
mīserās	mīserātis	missus, -a, -um erās	missī, -ae, -a erātis
mīserat	mīserant	missus, -a, -um erat	missī, -ae, -a erant

Active	*Passive*
I had carried, etc.	*I had been carried*, etc.
portāveram	portātus, -a, -um eram
I had seen, etc.	*I had been seen*, etc.
vīderam	vīsus, -a, -um eram

Complete the conjugation of **portō** and **video** in this tense.

390.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The pluperfect, in English the past perfect, in the active voice, is formed by using the perfect stem with the tense sign and the personal ending:

Perfect Stem	*Tense Sign*	*Personal Ending*
portāv–	-era-	-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt
vīd–	-era-	-m, s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt
mīs–	-era-	-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt

You can see from this that the pluperfect active is formed by combining the perfect stem with the imperfect tense of **sum**.

The pluperfect passive is formed by using the perfect passive participle with the imperfect tense of **sum**.

What difference do you see between the forms of the pluperfect tense passive and those of the perfect tense passive?

Perfect Tense Passive	*Pluperfect Tense Passive*
I have been sent, I was sent, etc.	*I had been sent*, etc.
missus, -a, -um sum, etc.	missus, -a, -um eram, etc.

391. How to Translate *With*. The idea denoted in English by a prepositional phrase, such as *with swords*, or *with him*, is expressed in Latin by the ablative case. Sometimes the preposition **cum** is used, and sometimes no preposition is used. The uses of the ablative *with* **cum** or *without* **cum** are shown as follows:

(a) *With* (*by-means-of*). Ablative without **cum**. **Mīlitēs gladiīs pūgnant**, *the soldiers fight with* (*by means of*) *swords*.

(b) *With* (*in company with*). Ablative with **cum**. **Cum hostibus contendunt**, *they contend with their enemies*. **Ad Graeciam cum patre nāvigāvit**, *he sailed to Greece with his father*.

(c) *With* (*in what manner*). Ablative with **cum**, but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. **Cum studiō labōrant**, *they work with enthusiasm*. **Māgnō cum studiō labōrant**, or **māgnō studiō labōrant**, *they work with great enthusiasm*.

392.   ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Ubi est ille fōns? In Forō Rōmānō est ille fōns.   **2.** Nōnne cum virtūte pūgnāverant Rōmānī? Summā virtūte pūgnāverant Rōmānī.   **3.** Quō post proelium illī equitēs contenderant? Ad urbem et ad fontem post proelium illī equitēs contenderant.   **4.** Quibus tēlīs mīlitēs contendērunt? Gladiīs mīlitēs contendērunt.   **5.** Fuērunt-ne cārī Rōmānīs illī frātrēs? Cārī Rōmānīs illī frātrēs fuērunt.

393.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the pluperfect indicative active, third person singular of **administrō, discēdō, trādō**; the second person plural for all five tenses of **cōgnōscō**.

Conjugate: **dēfendō** in the pluperfect tense active and passive,

Translate: **1.** We had seen that horseman with his brother in the Forum.   **2.** They had fought with the enemy (*pl.*) and had conquered them with divine weapons.   **3.** The arms of those horsemen were white.   **4.** The water of the spring was pleasant to the tired horses and to the riders (horsemen).

394.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *fraternal, order,* and *recognition* derived?

A lesson in philology. *Philology* comes from two Greek words and means *love of words.* It is the name given to that part of the science of language which treats of the relation of one language to another. **Cōgnōscō** is a very interesting word about which philology tells us. First, it has descendants in four modern languages:

French	Italian	Spanish	English
connaître	*conoscere*	*conocer*	*cognition*

But **cōgnōscō** has relatives also in Greek, German, and English that are not derived from it. Such words have convinced scholars that long before the time of the Romans there was a language older than Latin, from which Greek and German are also descended. Look at these words meaning *to know* or *to learn* and observe that **gn-** or **kn-** appears in all of them:

Latin	Greek	German	English
cōgnōscō	*gignosko*	*kennen*	*know*

Such words are called COGNATES, *born together, i.e., born of the same family.*
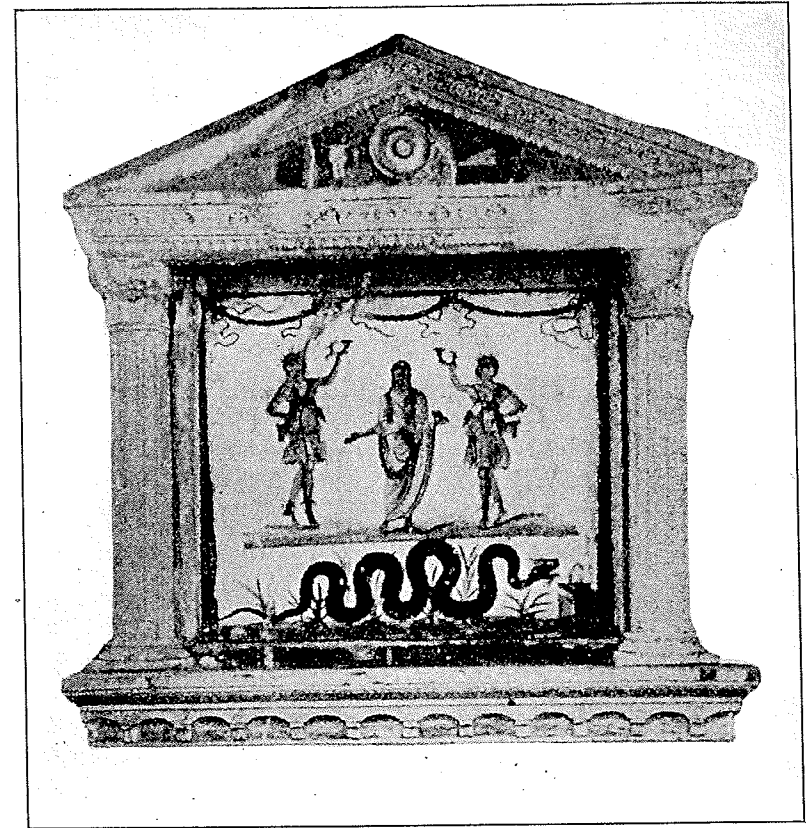
A ROMAN SHRINE

In Pompeii, the ancient Roman town still being dug out of ashes that fell on it in 79 A.D. from Mt. Vesuvius, nearly every house had a shrine on which was a religious painting.

The painting shown in the picture above is on one of those many shrines which have been found as the ancient city has been excavated. The two dancing figures above the snake are *Larēs* (one is called a *Lār*). They were household gods that helped look out for the family property. People often speak nowadays of their homes as their "Lares and Penates."

In those days snakes were often seen in cemeteries. The Romans supposed that they were spirits of the dead, and for that reason food was set out for them. Before we laugh at such a superstition, for that is what it was, we ought to remember that many people in the world today hold equally absurd beliefs.

bantur et Atalantam victrīcem [3] spectāvit. Puellam statim amāvit Hippomenēs. Eam cursū superāre cōnstituit.

Rēx et Atalanta ipsa propter misericordiam eum discēdere iussērunt; is autem, ācrī studiō victōriae incitātus, sē [4] ad certāmen parāvit.

396.   **VOCABULARY**

amor, amōris, *m.* love

nēmō *m. and f.* no one (nē-homō)
   (see declension in 399.)

pēs, pedis, *m.* foot.

ācer, ācris, ācre keen, sharp

quamquam although

celer, celeris, celere swift

fortis, forte brave

omnis, omne all, every

autem but, however (*usually second word in sentence*)

397.   **NOTES ON THE STORY**

1. omnibus: dative case used with inquit. Notice that this adjective is used in this sentence without a noun. What noun may be understood?

2. victī: with what does this perfect passive participle agree?

3. victrīcem: victrīx is feminine, victor masculine.

4. sē: *himself*, object of parāvit.

398. Declension of *ācer,* **sharp, and** *omnis,* **all.**

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs,-īs	ācrēs,-īs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

OPUSCULUM QUĪNQUĀGĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

AMOR VINCIT OMNIA

The condiciō sine quā nōn, or indispensable condition, under which the race with Atalanta had to be run, called for facta nōn verba, *deeds not words.* The end of the story below bears out the world-wide prōverbium given above, that *love conquers all things.*

395.   ATALANTA ET HIPPOMENĒS, I

Atalanta, fīlia rēgis Boeōtiae, quamquam puella, omnēs adulēscentēs cursū superāre poterat. Per omnēs terrās māgna erat fāma eius celeritātis. Multī adulēscentēs eam in mātrimōnium dūcere cupiēbant. Sed omnibus [1] " Nēmō," inquit, " mē in mātrimōnium dūcet nisi is quī mē cursū superāre poterit." Hanc lēgem quoque pater puellae nūntiāverat:

" Omnēs quī cum Atalantā contendent, victī,[2] occīdentur." Multī adulēscentēs tamen amōre puellae et studiō glōriae adductī, hūc in Boeōtiam properāvērunt. Hōs Atalanta cursū facile superāvit. Ita multī bonī fortēsque lēge dūrā ad Īnferōs missī sunt.

Sed ōlim Hippomenēs, adulēscēns celer in urbe adfuit. Certāmen spectāvit; multitūdinem cīvium, adulēscentēs ad certāmen parātōs, postrēmō Atalantam, illam puellam pulchram et celerem, vīdit. Post certāmen quoque virōs victōs quī ad mortem dūcē-

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs,-īs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

399. Declension of *trēs*, three, and *nēmō*, no one.

	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*
Nom.	trēs	tria	nēmō
Gen.	trium	trium	nūl lī′us
Dat.	tribus	tribus	nēminī
Acc.	trēs,-īs	tria	nēminem
Abl.	tribus	tribus	nūllō

400.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

Ācer is called an adjective of three endings, because in the nominative singular it has a different ending for each gender. Notice that ācer, like almost all other adjectives of the third declension, has an i-stem, and ends in -ī in the ablative singular of all genders.

Celer is declined like ācer, but keeps the -e- of the nominative masculine throughout its declension.

Omnis is called an adjective of two endings. Can you tell why? All adjectives ending in -is are declined like omnis.

Nēmō is declined irregularly; in the genitive and ablative it has the masculine forms of the adjective nūllus.

401.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the dative singular and the accusative plural of equus ācer, fōns nōtus, poena ācris.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis omnēs adulēscentēs celeritāte superāverat? Atalanta omnēs adulēscentēs celeritāte superāverat. **2.** Nōnne Hippomenēs hanc puellam vīcit? Hippomenēs hanc puellam vīcit. **3.** Quis ācrī studiō glōriae commōtus est? Multī virī ācrī studiō glōriae commōtī sunt. **4.** Cūr mānsit in urbe Hippomenēs? In urbe mānsit quod puellam superāre cōnstituerat.

402.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: in the plural, trēs frātrēs, fortis vir; in the singular, equus celer, animal celere.

Translate: **1.** The youths, having-been-conquered, were led to death one by one. **2.** Atalanta before that time had always run with great swiftness. **3.** No one could (was able to) surpass her in-swiftness of foot. **4.** All the citizens were watching the maiden and the young man.

403.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *acrid, accelerate, fortitude, omnipotent,* and *pedal* derived?

LVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒSEXĀGĒSIMUM

AUDĀCĒS FORTŪNA IUVAT

Fortune aids the bold is a literal translation of our Latin motto; one hears also *fortune favors the brave*, **fortēs fortūna adiuvat.**

404.   ATALANTA ET HIPPOMENĒS, II

Hippomenēs autem Venerem, deam amōris, māgnopere colēbat
                Venus
atque illī deae potentī semper erat cārus. Nunc igitur Venus
ad adulēscentem appropinquāvit et eī tria pōma aurea dedit.
                                            apples golden
"Hīs pōmīs," inquit, "vincere poteris." Hippomenēs haec
pōma in Stadium posterō diē tulit.
                       carried
Hīc adfuit māxima multitūdō cīvium, nam cīvibus cāra erat
Atalanta et eius fāma. Apud omnēs cīvēs rēx, "Tū," inquit,
"Hippomenēs, sī vincēs, meam fīliam cāram atque māgnum
numerum equōrum celerium et pulchrōrum habēbis; sīn vin-
                                           but if
cēris, ad mortem addūcēris." Haec verba rēgis multitūdō
māgnō clāmōre probāvit
               approved
Bene cucurrērunt et Hippomenēs et puella; mox tamen puella
antecurrēbat. Tum, adulēscēns prūdēns, quī verba deae memoriā
tenuit, pōmum ante pedēs celerēs puellae subitō iēcit; haec,
                                        threw
amōre illīus pōmī pulchrī adducta,[1] cursum paulum tardāvit,
                                    slowed down
pōmum carpsit. Tum iterum māximā celeritāte[2] cucurrit. Ter
  picked up   three times

pōmum iēcit adulēscēns; ter puella cursum tardāvit, pōmum
carpsit.

Prīmus Hippomenēs, dēfessus, et paene exanimātus, mētās
                                                goal
attigit; māximō clāmōre multitūdō eum victōrem salūtāvit.
 reached
Atalanta, nōn invīta, adulēscentem ad rēgem dūxit, quī illī
victōrī audācī et prūdentī fīliam pulchram in mātrimōnium
dedit. Atalanta, quae ā nūllō[3] celeritāte superāta erat, nunc
amōre pōmōrum aureōrum et cōnsiliō deae potentis victa est.

405.   VOCABULARY

clāmor, clāmōris, *m.* shout   **prūdēns, prūdentis** wise
audāx, audācis bold   **colō, colere, coluī, cultus**
māximus, -a, -um greatest,   worship, cultivate
      very great   **bene** well (*adv.*)
potēns, potentis powerful   **paulum** a little (*adv.*)
                sī, if

406.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **adducta:** with what word does this participle agree?
2. **māximā celeritāte:** why is it possible to omit **cum** here?
3. **nūllō:** How can you be sure that **nūllō** does not modify **celeritāte**?

407. Declension of *audāx*, **bold, and** *potēns*, **powerful.**

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	Neuter	Masc. or Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs, -īs	audācia
Abl.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

| | Singular | | Plural | |
	Masc. or Fem.	Neuter	Masc. or Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -īs	potentia
Abl.	potentī, -e	potentī, -e	potentibus	potentibus

408.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Audāx and potēns are called adjectives of one ending because the same form is used in the nominative singular for all genders. But it should be noticed that each of these adjectives, unlike ācer and omnis, has two forms in the ablative singular. Adjectives in -x and -ns are declined like audāx and potēns.

409.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: inimīcus ācer in the plural, caedēs māgna in the singular, fuga audāx in the singular.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quī certāmen spectāvērunt? Multitūdō cīvium māximō studiō certāmen spectāvit. **2.** Quī ā rēge dūrō occīsī erant? Multī et ācrēs adulēscentēs ā rēge dūrō occīsī erant **3.** Quid in Stadium Hippomenēs clam tulit? Tria pōma aurea in Stadium Hippomenēs clam tulit. **4.** Currunt-ne bene adulēscēns audāx et puella celeris? Māximā celeritāte adulēscēns et puella currunt. **5.** Cūr adulēscēns puellam celerem vīcit? Propter auxilium deae potentis adulēscēns puellam vīcit. **6.** Quis Atalantam in mātrimōnium dūxit? Hippomenēs Atalantam in mātrimōnium dūxit.

410.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: **1.** He had worshiped; we had learned; we were waging war; you (*pl.*) will begin battle. **2.** Atalanta was

conquered by that powerful goddess.* **3.** The Romans used-to-worship many (and) powerful gods. **4.** The wise Hippomenes conquered Atalanta by a bold plan.* **5.** To the citizens that victory was unexpected.

411.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *audacious*, *potent*, and *prudent* derived?

Colō: what is meant by the *cult* of a strange god? What is meant by the *culture* of the mind? What did the first *colonists* do to the land on which they settled? The city of *Cologne* in Germany was founded by settlers sent out from Rome, as its name shows. Can you guess why perfume is sometimes called *cologne?*

Give five English words beginning with *bene-*, and the meaning of each.
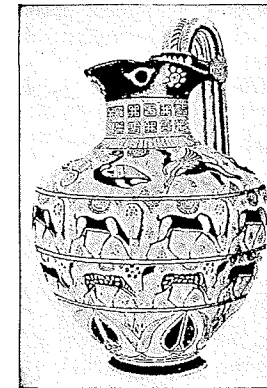
An Ancient Water Pitcher

One of the loveliest painted terra cotta pitchers that has come down to us from ancient times is this graceful one from Etruria. It was made, fired, painted, then fired again, more than 2600 years ago.

* Should *ā* be used in these sentences?

LIX

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒSEXĀGĒSIMUM

412.   TRECENTĪ IMMORTĀLĒS

Xerxēs, fīlius Dārī, post mortem patris, rēgnum Persārum obtinuit. Is rēx, proelium ad Marathōna [1] memoriā tenēns,[2]

<small>holding</small>

Graecōs vincere cōnstituit. Quattuor annōs,[3] igitur, cōpiās magnās hominum, equōrum, nāvium comparāvit. Tum duōbus pontibus cōpiās ex Asiā in Eurōpam trādūxit.

Graecī intereā fīnēs suōs dēfendere parāverant. In angustiīs inter montēs altōs et mare, Leōnidās, dux Lacedaemōnius, cum trecentīs ex suīs cīvibus et cum sociīs, hostēs itinere prohibēbat. Hae angustiae [4] Thermopylae appellābantur. Duōs diēs [5] Leōnidās cum virtūte pūgnāns [6] hostēs magnā cum caede repellēbat.

<small>fighting</small>

Tum dēmum Graecus perfidus, Ephialtēs nōmine, hostibus viam per montēs post [7] Graecōs mōnstrāvit.

Leōnidās, perīculum cōgnōscēns, sociōs discēdere iussit; ipse

<small>recognizing</small>

autem cum trecentīs mānsit. Hī cum hostibus ex utrāque parte

<small>from both directions</small>

prōcēdentibus [8] summā virtūte pūgnāvērunt, sed frūstrā. For-

<small>bravely</small>

titer pūgnantēs,[9] omnēs praeter ūnum occīsī sunt. Persae victōrēs in fīnēs Graecōrum prōcessērunt. Apud omnēs gentēs fāma illōrum trecentōrum erit semper clāra. Praemium virtūtis in memoriā hominum est.

260

413.   VOCABULARY

angustiae, angustiārum, f., (pl.)   prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī,
    narrow pass   prōcessūrus advance
pars, partis, f. part, direction   repellō, repellere, reppulī,
    (parti-)   repulsus, drive back
pōns, pontis, m. bridge   trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī,
    (ponti-)   trāductus lead across
praemium, praemī, n. reward   dēmum at last (adv.)
trecentī, -ae, -a three hundred   intereā meanwhile (adv.)
    praeter except (prep. with acc.)

414.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ad Marathōna: *near Marathon.*

2. tenēns: the present active participle of teneō; it is in the nominative singular, masculine, and agrees with is. Translate *remembering,* or *because he remembered.*

3. quattuor annōs: *during four years,* or *for four years;* accusative showing duration of time.

4. angustiae: as this word is plural, its modifier, hae, is plural, and its verb, appellātae sunt, is plural. Translate the whole sentence in the singular. What other Latin words do you know that are plural in form but singular in meaning?

5. duōs diēs: like quattuor annōs, expresses duration of time.

6. pūgnāns: with what noun does this participle agree?

7. post: means either *after* or *behind.* Which meaning has it here?

8. prōcēdentibus: this participle is either dative or ablative in form. It must agree with a noun, expressed or understood. Hostibus is the only noun with which it can agree, and as hostibus is ablative, we see that the participle must agree with it. Translate *with the enemy who were advancing.*

9. pūgnantēs: ask yourself the case of this participle and then decide with what it must agree.

415. Declension of Present Active Participles.

portāns, *carrying*		vidēns, *seeing*	
Singular		*Singular*	
Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom. portāns	portāns	vidēns	vidēns
Gen. portantis	portantis	videntis	videntis
Dat. portantī	portantī	videntī	videntī
Acc. portantem	portāns	videntem	vidēns
Abl. portante, -ī	portante, -ī	vidente, -ī	vidente, -ī
Plural		*Plural*	
Nom. portantēs	portantia	videntēs	videntia
Gen. portantium	portantium	videntium	videntium
Dat. portantibus	portantibus	videntibus	videntibus
Acc. portantēs, -īs	portantia	videntēs, -īs	videntia
Abl. portantibus	portantibus	videntibus	videntibus

Write the declension of **mittēns** (gen. **mittentis**), *sending*.

416.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The present participle of a verb is formed by adding **-ns** to its present stem, thus:

portā-ns	vidē-ns	mittē-ns *
carrying	seeing	sending

In Latin the *present* participle is always in the active voice; one can express *carrying* by **portāns,** but there is no Latin word for *being carried.*

We have now learned two participles, the perfect passive and the present active. Notice that the present active participle is declined like **potēns (407).** What is the perfect passive participle of **portō?** Like what adjective is it declined? The form

* The -e in the stem of third conjugation verbs becomes -ē before **-ns.**

of the ablative singular ending in **-e** is used more than the form in **-ī.**

417.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **lībertās vēra** in the singular; **clāmor māximus** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Vīdit-ne rēx mīlitēs pūgnantēs? Rēx mīlitēs pūgnantēs vīdit. **2.** Intellēxērunt-ne mīlitēs suum perīculum? Mīlitēs suum perīculum intellēxērunt. **3.** Sunt-ne occīsī omnēs in angustiīs pūgnantēs? Omnēs praeter ūnum in angustiīs bene et fortiter pūgnantēs occīsī sunt. **4.** Erat-ne clāra mors illōrum trecentōrum? Clāra et pulchra erat mors illōrum trecentōrum.

418.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the present participle, nominative singular masculine, of **repellō, colō, properō, pertineō, augeō;** the present participle, nominative plural, masculine and neuter, of **occīdō, occupō, dō;** the present participle, genitive plural, feminine, of **dēfendō, timeō, moveō, condūcō.**

Translate: **1.** Around the narrow pass were high mountains. **2.** The bold soldiers will drive back all the enemy. **3.** The brave leader, suddenly seeing the forces of the enemy (*pl.*), orders the allies to depart. **4.** He does not fear the advancing troops, although they are many. **5.** The king, sitting on a high mountain, was-able to see the battle.

419.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *part, pontoon, premium, proceed,* and *repel* derived?

A HANDSOME ROMAN

LX
OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM

CĒNSEŌ CARTHĀGINEM ESSE DĒLENDAM

Cato, the Roman patriot, while he was on an embassy at Carthage, the ancient enemy of Rome, was so impressed by the rapid recovery of that city after the Second Punic War, that after his return home he ended every one of his speeches: *it is my opinion that Carthage must be destroyed.* (Cēnseō is also the word a Roman senator used when he said *I vote* or *I move.*)

420.   DOMĪ ET NŌN DOMĪ

Nasīca ad poētam Ennium vēnit; eī [1] ad [2] portam quaerentī [3]
came
serva respondit dominum nōn esse [4] domī. Nasīca autem sēnsit
felt
puellam falsō dīcere,[5] et Ennium vērō esse [5] intus. Paucīs
inside
diēbus posteā Ennius ad Nasīcam vēnit. Eī ad portam quaerentī
clāmāvit Nasīca ipse sē nōn esse [6] domī. Tum Ennius " Quid? "
inquit, " nōnne tuam vōcem cōgnōscō? " Sed Nasīca, " Tua
serva mihi dīxit tē nōn esse domī. Ego tuae servae [7] tum crēdidī;
nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis? "

421.   VOCABULARY

domī at home

suī of himself, herself, itself, of themselves

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus believe

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus ask

vērō truly, really, but (*adv.*)

422.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. eī: dative singular depending on respondit.
2. ad: translate *at.*
3. quaerentī: with what does this present participle agree?
4. dominum esse: this is an indirect statement, an infinitive with its subject in the accusative. Translate *that the master was,* etc. Although esse is a present infinitive, we say *was* because it depends on respondit, a verb in a past tense, as the following sentences show:

Direct Statement	*Indirect Statement*
He says, " I *am* not at home."	He says that he *is* not at home.
He said, " I *am* not at home."	He said that he *was* not at home.

5. puellam dīcere; Ennium esse: these phrases are both indirect statements depending on sēnsit, a verb of thinking. Translate *that the girl spoke; that Ennius was.* Find one other indirect statement.
6. sē . . . esse: since Nasīca is the subject of the verb clāmāvit, sē must refer to Nasīca. What did Nasica exclaim?
7. tuae servae: dative case with crēdidī. This verb is followed by the dative, not the accusative.

423. Declension of the Reflexive Pronoun *suī*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	— —	—
Gen.	suī, of himself, herself, itself	suī, of themselves
Dat.	sibi, to, for himself, etc.	sibi, to, for themselves
Acc.	sē, sēsē, himself, etc.	sē, sēsē, themselves
Abl.	sē, sēsē, by, from, with himself, etc.	sē, sēsē, by, from, with themselves

424. TOPICA GRAMMATICA

Suī, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, always refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it occurs. Can you tell why it has no nominative case? Its forms must be carefully distinguished from that of **is, ea, id,** and **ipse.** Note the following:

Mīles eum nōn servāvit, *the soldier did not save him* (some other man).
Mīles sē nōn servāvit, *the soldier did not save himself.*
Is ipse eum servāvit, *he himself saved him.*

425. Indirect Statements with Infinitive and Subject Accusative.

(*a*) The men are brave. **Virī sunt fortēs.**
(*b*) He says, " The men are brave." **Dīcit, " Virī sunt fortēs."**
(*c*) He says (that) the men are brave. **Dīcit virōs esse fortēs.**

In the sentences given here, (*a*) illustrates a direct statement, (*b*) a direct quotation, (*c*) an indirect statement. In sentences like (*c*) the clause that depends on a verb of saying (or of mental process) has a verb in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative case. One might translate (*c*) *He says the men to be brave.* In English this would be an awkward expression, but its meaning would be clear.

Every such sentence as *the messenger says that the Greeks conquer* must be thought of as *the messenger says the Greeks to conquer,* before it can be written in correct Latin.

Remember that the English conjunction *that* in such sentences is never translated into Latin.

426. ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **fōns pulcher** in the plural; **praemium māgnum** in the singular.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis dīcit poētam nōn esse domī? Serva dīcit poētam nōn esse domī. **2.** Quis dīcit sē nōn esse domī? Nasīca dīcit sē nōn esse domī. **3.** Sēnsit-ne Nasīca servam falsō dīcere? Nasīca servam falsō dīcere sēnsit. **4.** Num crēdis tuum amīcum abesse? Meum amīcum abesse nōn crēdō. **5.** Dīxit-ne serva suum dominum scrībere? Serva suum dominum scrībere nōn dīxit.

427. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the present participle, nominative and ablative plural neuter, of **crēdō, dīcō, quaerō, repellō.**

Translate: **1.** He said he saw the three hundred men in the pass (he said himself to see the three hundred men, etc.). **2.** We believe the allies are-departing. **3.** She says her master is-writing. **4.** They say they do not fear those soldiers.

Change the following direct statements into indirect: **1.** Dominus nōn est domī: (*a*) serva dīcit domin– nōn — domī; (*b*) serva dīxit domin– nōn — domī. **2.** Puella falsō dīcit: vir sēnsit puell– falsō dīc–. **3.** Ego nōn sum domī: (*a*) frāter meus dīcit — nōn — domī; (*b*) frāter meus dīxit — nōn — domī.

428. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *creed, dictionary, domestic,* and *question* derived?

What is an *incredible* story? What is a *creditor?* Was Nasica *incredulous* about the maid's answer? What is meant by a *quest* for hidden treasure? From what word in this vocabulary are *inquire* and *require* derived? What vowel change has that Latin word undergone in the formation of the English derivatives *inquire* and *require?*

LXI
OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

PYLADĒS SĒ ORESTEM ESSE DĪXIT, UT PRŌ ILLŌ NECĀRĒTUR

Pylades and Orestes were two Greek friends, comparable to the Jewish friends David and Jonathan and to the Greek Damon and Pythias. In the story about them, from which the sentence above is taken, *Pylades said he was Orestes, in order that he might be slain in his* (Orestes') *stead.*

429.   DEĪ IN TERRĪS[1]

Antīquīs temporibus crēdēbātur deōs[2] saepe in terrīs breve spatium temporis manēre[2] atque ab hominibus vidērī.[2] Haec fābula dē Iove et Mercuriō nārrātur. Iuppiter et Mercurius ōlim errantēs multā nocte in vīcum pervēnerant et ad multās
                                had arrived   at
portās hospitium rogāverant. Omnēs incolae[3] deōs reppulērunt.
      hospitality
Deinde ad casam parvam appropinquantēs, ā sene Philēmōne et ab uxōre cum hospitiō receptī sunt. Baucis māgnō cum
                            were received
studiō vīnum et cibum, pānem, cāseum, pōma comparāvit.
                        bread   cheese
Inter cēnam[4] Baucis et Philēmon cōpiam vīnī et cibī nōn minuī[5]
                                                to be diminished
sed augērī[5] cōgnōvērunt. Tum dēmum perterritī, advenās
                                                        strangers
esse deōs intellēxērunt. Illī autem advenae caelestēs verbīs
                                                heavenly
benīgnīs animōs senum[6] cōnfīrmāvērunt.

" Hic vīcus," inquiunt, " quod advenās hospitiō nōn recipit,
                                                    receives
dēlēbitur. Vestra casa, tamen, templum fīet; vōs prō[7] vestrō
                                    will be made
beneficiō et pietāte nōbīs estis cārī; sacerdōtēs igitur eritis in
      goodness
                            268

hōc templō." Multōs annōs in templō Baucis et Philēmon manēbant.

Ōlim prō[7] templō stābant; subitō nōn iam vidērī potuērunt. Mox duae arborēs[8] prope templum vīsae sunt. Hae arborēs antīquīs temporibus Baucis et Philēmon appellātae sunt.

430.   VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, *f.* tree
nox, noctis, *f.* night (nocti-)
multā nocte late at night
spatium, spatī, *n.* space
vīcus, -ī, *m.* village
vīnum, -ī, *n.* wine

benīgnus, -a, -um kind
brevis, breve short
prō in-return-for, for, before
        (*prep. with abl.*)
num (*interrogative word, anticipating the answer " No "*)

431.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. in terrīs: *on earth.*

2. deōs . . . manēre . . . vidērī: these words form an indirect statement with crēdēbātur. Verbs of *thinking* and *believing*, like verbs of *saying*, are used with an infinitive and subject accusative. Vidērī is a passive infinitive; translate *were seen.*

3. incolae: this noun is masculine though of the first declension.

4. inter cēnam: *during the supper.*

5. minuī and augērī: present passive infinitives in indirect statements. What verb introduces them? What is the subject of the infinitives?

6. senum: translate *of the old people.*

7. prō: which of the meanings given in the vocabulary is the best to use?

8. arborēs: feminine; but most nouns ending in -or are masculine.

432. Present Infinitives, Active and Passive.

Active	*Passive*
portāre, to carry	portārī, to be carried
vidēre, to see	vidērī, to be seen
mittere, to send	mittī, to be sent

433. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

In the first and second conjugations the present passive infinitive is formed by *adding* -rī to the present stem, *e.g.*, portā-rī. It is easy to remember that the present active infinitive ends in -re, and the present passive infinitive in -rī. But in the third conjugation an important difference appears. Here the -e of the present stem is *changed* to -ī to form the present passive infinitive, *e.g.*, present stem, mitte-, present passive infinitive, mittī. The result is that in the third conjugation the present passive infinitive is always one syllable shorter than the present active infinitive.

434. ORAL EXERCISE

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Quōs in casam Baucis et Philēmon recēpērunt? Iovem et Mercurium in casam Baucis et Philēmon recēpērunt. 2. Ubi errābant illī deī? In terrīs illī deī errābant. 3. Intellēxērunt-ne incolae vīcī advenās esse deōs? Incolae vīcī advenās esse deōs nōn intellēxērunt. 4. Num advenae dīxērunt dominae casae sē esse deōs? Advenae nōn dīxērunt dominae casae sē esse deōs. 5. Quid subitō senēs vīdērunt? Cōpiam cibī vīnīque augērī senēs subitō vīdērunt. 6. Putās-ne facta bona ā deīs vidērī? Omnia facta bona ā Deō vidērī et amārī putō. 7. Quī in hōc vīcō dēlētī sunt? Omnēs praeter hōs duōs dēlētī sunt.

435. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: in the plural, **arbor pulchra, breve spatium**; in the singular, **illa māgnitūdō**.

Write: the present passive infinitive of **vincō, iuvō, trādūcō, pōnō, relinquō**; present active participle of **gerō, moneō, agō, aedificō, condūcō**.

Translate: 1. They saw that food and wine were-being-prepared (to-be-prepared) by the mistress of the house. 2. The gods learned that they were frightened (them to-be-frightened). 3. We believe that the gods see the deeds of men. 4. They learned that the number of the enemy was very great.

436. WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *brevity* and *nocturnal* derived?

A POMPEIAN "STAFF OF LIFE" SHOP

These round loaves of bread have just come hot and fresh from the oven. The original of this illustration is a bit of fresco painting from the wall of a house at Pompeii. We are doubly certain that the bread at Pompeii 1800 years ago looked like this, because a loaf was found during recent excavations. It had become petrified of course. That stone loaf of bread can be seen today in the museum at Pompeii.

LXII
OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

437. MŪRĪ LIGNEĪ ATHĒNĀRUM

Graecī illō tempore ā Persīs superātī, ōrāculum Delphicum dē
<small>oracle   Delphic</small>
salūte commūnī cōnsuluērunt. Deus sīc respondit: "Vōs līberī-
que vestrī mūrīs ligneīs defendēminī. Salamis fīliōs fēminārum
<small>wooden</small>
delēbit." Themistoclēs, cīvis clārus Athēniēnsis,[1] hīs verbīs
nāvēs longās[2] ē lignō aedificātās[3] significārī[4] intellēxit. Cōn-
<small>wood   to be meant</small>
siliō eius igitur multae nāvēs longae ā cīvibus aedificātae
sunt.

Proelium cum classe Persicā in fretō angustō prope īnsulam
<small>strait</small>
Salamīna commissum est. Rēx Xerxēs in locō altō super ōram
sedēns, maritimum proelium spectāvit. Prīmā lūce mare nāvibus
suīs complētum vīdit; sē iam victōrem esse[5] iūdicāvit. Multās
<small>already</small>
hōrās māgnō studiō pūgnābātur.[6] Nocte rēx omnēs suās nāvēs[7]
aut delētās aut captās aut in fugam versās esse[8] cōgnōvit.
<small>captured   turned</small>

Clāra fuit victōria Graecōrum; Persae domum properāvērunt.
Numquam posteā cōpiās contrā Graecōs fortēs dūxērunt. Mūrī
ligneī Graeciam vērō servāverant; Salamis fīliōs fēminārum
Persārum nōn Graecārum delēverat.

438. VOCABULARY

classis, classis, *f.* fleet (classi-)   nāvis longa warship
mūrus, -ī, *m.* wall   angustus, -a, -um narrow
lūx, lūcis, *f.* light   commūnis, commūne common
  prīmā lūce at daybreak

439. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Athēniēnsis:** *of Athens;* literally *Athenian.* An adjective.
2. **nāvēs longās:** accusative, subject of the infinitive **significārī.**
3. **aedificātās:** with what does this participle agree?
4. **significārī:** infinitive in an indirect statement; literally, *to be meant;* translate *were meant.*
5. **sē . . . esse:** translate *that he was, etc.*
6. **pūgnābātur:** literally, *it was fought;* translate *they fought.* This use of the verb in Latin is common; it is called the impersonal use, because no particular person is the subject of such a verb.
7. **omnēs nāvēs:** why are these words in the accusative case?
8. **esse:** why is the infinitive used?

440. SPOT LIGHTS

In the story **illō tempore,** *at that time,* **prīmā lūce,** *at the first light,* or *at daybreak,* and **nocte,** *at night,* show the *time when* or *time at which* something happened. This idea of time is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition.

Multās hōrās, however, shows not the *time when,* but the *time during which* something happened, or the *length of time* an action lasted. In English, we may say *for many hours,* or *many hours.* In Latin, this accusative is used without a preposition.

441. ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **vīnum bonum** in the singular; **ille vīcus** and **spatium angustum** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quī nāvēs longās sibi clam coēgērunt? Graecī nāvēs longās sibi clam coēgērunt. **2.** Quī māgnās cōpiās condūxērunt? Persae māgnās cōpiās condūxērunt. **3.** Dē quō Graecī ōrāculum cōnsuluērunt? Dē salūte commūnī Graecī ōrāculum cōnsuluērunt. **4.** Quam diū Graecī illōs Persās timuerant? Multōs annōs Graecī Persās timuerant. **5.** Quis prīmā lūce sē esse victōrem putāvit? Rēx Persārum prīmā lūce sē esse victōrem putāvit. **6.** Ubi sedēbat rēx Persārum? In colle super ōram maritimam sedēbat rēx Persārum.

442.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: **1.** For a few years they collected warships for themselves secretly. **2.** The words of the oracle were true. **3.** At daybreak they said that the fleets were (said the fleets to be) near the island. **4.** Within ten years * they will have many ships.

443.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *anguish, community,* and *lucid* derived?

Classis. this word in Latin means (1) a collection of people, (2) a collection of ships, a fleet. From **classis** in the first sense comes the English word *class.* The Latin adjective **classicus** denoted the *first* or *best class,* and thus gave us the English word *classics,* the best writings. We may speak of English classics and of French classics, meaning the greatest books in those languages. The words *Classics* and *Classical* are used to mean the best writings in Latin and in Greek. When people say that a man has a *classical* education, they mean that he has studied Latin and Greek.

What is a *translucent* substance? What girl's name might be defined as *maiden of light?* What do *communists* believe about property? What is a *mural* painting?

* Ablative without a preposition. *Time when* and *time within which* are treated alike.
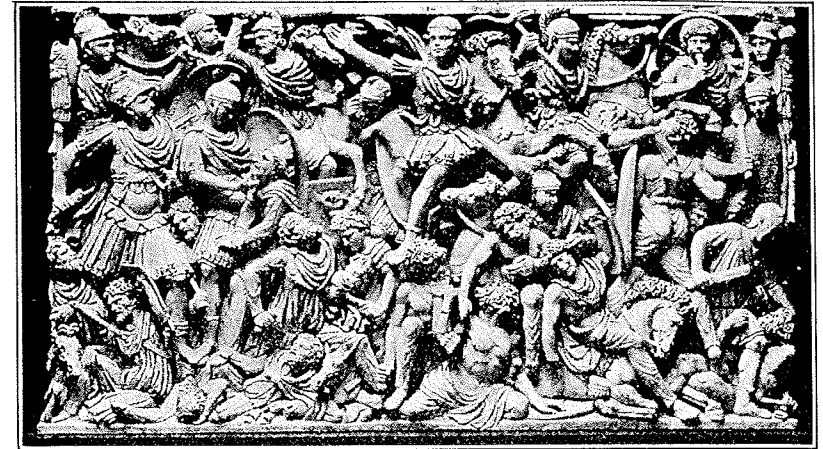
ROMANS AND GAULS

The victorious Roman *imperātor* and some of his soldiers are at the top of the relief; the conquered Gauls are shown below.

Courtesy of Esther B. Van Deman

THE CAPITOL AT TIMGAD

A lovely sentinel in Africa at Timgad on the edge of the desert.

LXIII

OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM TERTIUM

WORD STUDY

444. Find ten English words derived from scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*. Write them, with their meanings, in your notebook. To what Latin word is each of the following related? Learn the meanings of any of these English words that you do not already know.

arboreal   brevity   cultivate   inquire   partition
benediction communism   incredible   subordinate repulsive

445. The Noun Suffixes -or, -tor (-sor), -tās, -tūdō.

Some Latin nouns in the vocabularies are themselves formed from verbs and adjectives, by the addition of suffixes.

Nouns formed from verbs. Nouns may be formed from verbs by adding the suffix -or, *the act of;* -tor (-sor), *the person who,* to the verb base.

Verb base	Suffix	Noun	English Translation
am–	or	amor	love
tim–	or	timor	fear
imperā–	tor	imperātor	commander
vic–	tor	victor	conqueror

Nouns derived from adjectives. Nouns may be formed from adjectives by adding the suffixes -tās, -tūdō, both meaning *the quality of.*

Adjective stem	Suffix	Noun	English Translation
celeri–	tās	celeritās	celerity
līber–	tās	lībertās	liberty
multi	tūdō	multitūdō	multitude
māgni–	tūdō	māgnitūdō	magnitude

276

446.   OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Write what you think is the English meaning of these Latin words, applying what you have learned about Latin suffixes. Let your teacher decide whether or not you are right.

pulchritūdō   terror   cursor   altitūdō
scrīptor   bonitās   cīvitās   lātitūdō

LXIV

OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

447.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. Tell how the pluperfect tense active of any verb is formed. 2. How is the pluperfect tense passive formed? 3. Conjugate quaerō in the pluperfect tense active and passive. 4. With which stem of the verb is the present active participle formed? 5. How can the italicized part of the following sentence be expressed without the use of a dependent clause? The girl, *who was running toward the goal*, suddenly stopped. 6. Give an example in English of an indirect statement. 7. What is the method of expressing an indirect statement in Latin?

1. In which of the following sentences would it be necessary to use the preposition cum? (*a*) She runs with speed. (*b*) She runs with great speed. (*c*) He contends with a bold rival. (*d*) He fights with a long sword. 2. In which of the following sentences should the ablative be used, and in which the accusative? (*a*) For ten years he lived there. (*b*) At the first hour they broke camp. (*c*) They stayed here a few days. (*d*) Within two years they collected a large fleet. 3. Do the adjectives of the third declension that you have studied have consonant-stems or i-stems? 4. Give the ablative singular masculine of each model adjective that you have studied.

1. How can one tell that līber, *free*, is not declined like ācer, *sharp?*

2. What two words in Latin mean *himself?*   **3.** Give the Latin word for *himself* in each of the following: (*a*) I saw the king himself. (*b*) He considers himself the swiftest runner in Greece.   (*c*) He himself will admit the strangers.   **4.** What Latin word should be used for *he* and for *they* in the following sentences? (*a*) The citizens say they will build ships. (*b*) The young man thinks he will win the race. (*c*) We all think he will win the race. (*d*) Themistocles says they will build ships.   **5.** Decline nēmō.

448.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. *Write:* the present active participle of cōgnōscō in the nominative plural, all genders; the perfect passive participle of cōgnōscō in the nominative plural, all genders.   Write the same forms of crēdō, prohibeō, dīcō.   **2.** Write the present active participle of occīdō in the accusative singular, all genders.   Write corresponding forms of repellō, trādūcō, līberō, errō.   **3.** Write the present infinitive active and passive of gerō, perterreō, errō, quaerō.   **4.** Give the forms for the third person plural active in each of five tenses of colō and translate each.   **5.** Give the form for the third person plural passive of each of five tenses of repellō and translate each.

1. Give the ablative singular and genitive plural of fōns antīquus, māxima pars, ille ōrdō, praemium commūne, tempus breve, equus celer, hic ōrātor, and dux prūdēns.   **2.** Give the accusative singular and nominative plural of gēns barbara, iter angustum, calamitās imprōvīsa, puella celeris, iūdicium ācre, ea caedēs, clāmor māgnus.

Write in Latin the italicized words:

1. He says that *no one is able* to conquer him.   **2.** They build these ships *for themselves*.   **3.** We shall defend Greece *by-means-of walls*. **4.** I see a man *running to the city*.   **5.** The gods gave help *to the citizens who-were-defending* their native land.   **6.** Atalanta *had* never *been surpassed* on the race-course.   **7.** They say that *the wounds* of the soldiers *are many*.   **8.** The Persians, *although their forces were large*, could not conquer.   **9.** They say *that their territories are narrow*.

449.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. amor	7. eques	12. nēmō	17. pōns
2. angustiae	8. fōns	13. nox	18. praemium
3. arbor	9. frāter	14. ōrdō	19. spatium
4. clāmor	10. lūx	15. pars	20. vīcus
5. classis	11. mūrus	16. pēs	21. vīnum
6. domī			

Adjectives

22. ācer	26. brevis	29. fortis	32. potēns
23. angustus	27. celer	30. māximus	33. prūdēns
24. audāx	28. commūnis	31. omnis	34. trecentī
25. benīgnus			

Pronoun

35. suī

Verbs

36. cōgnōscō	39. dīcō	41. prōcēdō	43. repellō
37. colō	40. occīdō	42. quaerō	44. trādūcō
38. crēdō			

Adverbs

45. autem	48. intereā	50. num	52. subitō
46. bene	49. ita	51. paulum	53. vērō
47. dēmum			

Prepositions   ### Conjunctions

54. praeter	55. prō	56. quamquam	57. sī

Idioms

58. multā nocte	59. nāvis longa	60. prīmā lūce

450.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words?   Learn any
you do not know.

Nouns

1. love
2. narrow pass
3. tree
4. shout
5. fleet
6. at home
7. horseman
8. spring, fountain
9. brother
10. light
11. wall
12. no one
13. night
14. rank
15. part, direction
16. foot
17. bridge
18. reward
19. space
20. village
21. wine

Adjectives

22. keen, sharp
23. narrow
24. bold
25. kind
26. short
27. swift .
28. common
29. brave
30. very great, greatest
31. all
32. powerful
33. wise
34. three hundred

Pronouns   35. of himself, of herself, etc.

Verbs

36. learn, know
37. worship, cultivate
38. believe
39. say
40. cut down, kill
41. advance
42. ask
43. drive back
44. lead across

Adverbs

45. but, however
46. well
47. at last
48. meanwhile
49. thus, so
50. question-word, used when answer "No" is expected
51. a little
52. suddenly
53. truly, really, but

Prepositions   *Conjunctions*

54. except   55. in-return-for, for, before   56. although   57. if

Idioms   58. late at night   59. warship   60. at daybreak
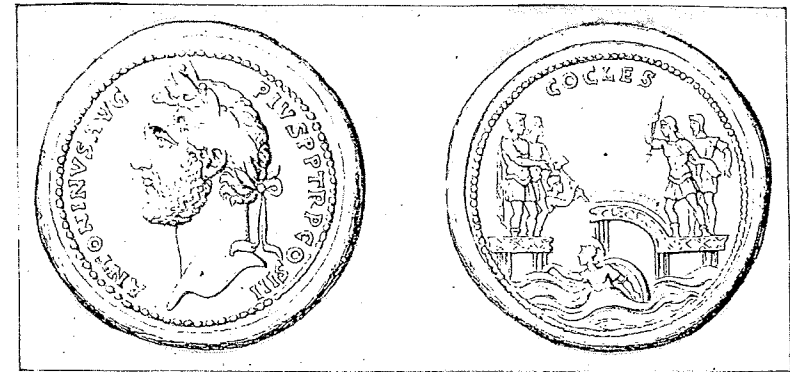
THREE AGAINST MANY

This is a coin issued by the Roman emperor Antoninus Pius, whose portrait
appears on the obverse, or "heads." On the reverse, or "tail" a Roman soldier
is seen chopping at the bridge. An Etruscan is about to throw his spear at
Horatius Cocles, who has leaped into the Tiber and is swimming to shore.

451.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are Latin derivatives from words in the vocabularies
of *opuscula* LVI–LXIII. Give or write the Latin words from which
they are derived. See if you can use each of these derivatives in a
correct English sentence.

1. accelerate
2. acrid
3. anguish
4. audacious
5. brevity
6. classics
7. colonist
8. community
9. creditor
10. creed
11. culture
12. dictionary
13. domestic
14. fortitude
15. fraternal
16. incredible
17. inquire
18. lucid
19. mural
20. nocturnal
21. omnipotent
22. order
23. part
24. pedal
25. pontoon
26. potent
27. premium
28. proceed
29. prudent
30. question
31. recognition
32. repel
33. require
34. translucent

LXV

OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

452. TRĒS CONTRĀ MULTŌS

Ōlim hostēs, Etruscī et rēx Porsena, ad urbem Rōmam appro-

pinquantēs iam prope montem Iāniculum fuērunt. Inter hostēs

et urbem intererat pōns et flūmen.[1] Hostēs pontem occupāre
was between

et urbem capere māgnopere cupiēbant. Rōmānī ob perīculum

grave pontem interscindere cōnstituērunt.
to cut down

" Quis," inquit cōnsul, " pontem dēfendet? Hostēs, sī

pontem capient, oppidum mox habēbunt." (Quod pōns angustus

erat, māgnum numerum[2] hostium breve spatium[3] prohibērī[4]

posse intellēxit.) Tum Horātius Cocles, cīvis fortis et audāx,

cum duōbus sociīs sē obtulit. Horātius cum Herminiō et Lartiō
presented

ad extrēmum pontem prōcessit; ibi stantēs Rōmānī hostēs
the end of the bridge

prohibuērunt. Trēs ex ōrdinibus hostium in pontem angustum

prōcurrunt, sed statim ā Rōmānīs occīduntur; deinde trēs aliī
run forward

eōdem modō necantur.
in the same way

Diū illī trēs Rōmānī pontem contrā multa mīlia hostium

dēfendunt. Multa tēla in eōs iaciuntur; multa vulnera et dantur

et accipiuntur; multī ex hostibus cadunt. Intereā cīvēs in

alterā rīpā pontem māgnō studiō interscindunt. Postrēmō

282

cīvēs conclāmant, " Retrō, Horātī! retrō, Herminī! retrō,
Back!

Lartī! pōns mox cadet!" Tum Herminius et Lartius sē

recēpērunt.

453. HORĀTIUS SŌLUS

Horātius sōlus in extrēmō ponte stetit. Nunc tamen pōns,

māgnō fragōre in flūmen cadit. Tum dēmum ille Horātius fortis,
crash

Tiberim, deum flūminis ōrāns,[5] sē in flūmen iacit. Armātus

ad rīpam tūtus[6] natat. Cīvēs eum cum gaudiō accipiunt; et

quod eius virtūte urbs ē perīculō tam gravī ērepta est, eī prae-

mium idōneum, agrōs lātōs atque statuam dant.

454. VOCABULARY

alter, altera, alterum the other (of two)	cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus desire
gravis, grave serious	ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus
tūtus, -a, -um safe	rescue
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive	iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw
	recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
cadō, cadere, cecidī, casūrus fall	take back
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take	sē recipere withdraw, retreat

455. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **pōns et flūmen:** these two nouns, because, when taken together,
they mean one thing, have a singular verb, **intererat.**

2. **numerum:** accusative case, subject of the infinitive **posse.**

3. **spatium:** accusative case expressing duration of time. Translate
a short time.

4. **prohibērī:** complementary infinitive with **posse.** Translate
could be kept off.

5. **ōrāns:** with what does this participle agree?

6. **tūtus:** an adjective agreeing with the subject of **natat.** Translate *swims safe,* or *swims safely.*

456. Verbs of the Third Conjugation in -iō. Learn this conjugation thoroughly.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Part.*
capiō,	capere,	cēpī,	captus, take

Pres. Stem	*Pres. Part.*	*Pres. Pass. Inf.*
cape-	capiēns, capientis	capī

PRESENT TENSE

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiō (cf. mittō)	capimus	capior (mittor)	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
	(mittunt)		(mittuntur)

IMPERFECT TENSE

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiēbam (mittēbam)	capiēbāmus	capiēbar (mittēbar)	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE TENSE

capiam (mittam)	capiēmus	capiar (mittar)	capiēmur
capiēs (mittēs)	capiētis	capiēris (mittēris)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

457.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Capiō is an example of a class of verbs of the third conjugation which differ from **mittō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Otherwise these verbs are conjugated regularly. In **456,** forms of **mittō** are given in parentheses to show the differences between these two kinds of third conjugation verbs. **Accipiō** and **recipiō**

are compounds of **capiō.** Notice that the verb base **cap-** becomes **-cip-** in compounds.

458.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the tense, voice, person, and number of **ēripiēris, accipis, capiēbāmus, iaciēminī, ēriperis, condūcēris.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis in ponte stat? Horātius in ponte stat. **2.** Quō (*to what place*) illī Rōmānī sē recipiunt? In urbem illī Rōmānī sē recipiunt. **3.** Quī praeter Horātium pontem dēfendunt? Lartius et Herminius cum Horātiō pontem dēfendunt. **4.** Cūr pōns in flūmen cecidit? Pōns in flūmen cecidit quod ā cīvibus dēlētus est. **5.** Hostēs-ne sē recipient? Hostēs sē nunc domum recipient. **6.** Quid cupiēbat ille dux ācer? Pontem et urbem capere ille dux ācer cupiēbat. **7.** Natāvit-ne Horātius tūtus ad alteram rīpam? Tūtus ad alteram rīpam Horātius natāvit. **8.** Quid accipiet ille Rōmānus audāx? Praemium idōneum ille Rōmānus audāx accipiet.

459.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the dative singular and plural of **lūx clāra, ea classis.**

Translate: **1.** They saw the Roman, (although) armed, throwing himself into the river. **2.** They think the city can be (is-able to be) taken. **3.** They are-being-rescued from serious danger. **4.** Horatius conquered his enemies one at a time. **5.** The citizens, because they have been rescued (having-been-rescued), give that brave Horatius a splendid (**clārus**) reward.

460.   WORD STUDY

To what word in the vocabulary is each of the following related: *accept, aggravate, alternative, captivity, ejaculate, eject, gravity, interjection, occasion, reject, tutor.* Use each of these English words in a sentence.

OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM SEXTUM

CAESARE INTERFECTŌ, BRŪTUS ET CASSIUS PATRIAE LĪBER-
TĀTEM NŌN RESTITUĒRUNT

Julius Caesar was murdered by a group of young patriots who
believed he intended to turn his dictatorship into a tyranny.
According to the Roman historian Suetonius, the emperor
Tiberius, who was considered tyrannical, said, **in cīvitāte līberā
linguam mentemque līberās esse dēbēre,** *that in a free country
there should be free speech and free thought.*

461. HERCULĒS ET RĒX AEGYPTĪ

In librīs scrīptōrum veterum facta multa Herculis scrīpta sunt.
of writers
Is hērōs, sīcut Samsōn apud Iūdaeōs veterēs, hominēs omnēs
Jews
vīribus¹ corporis superāvit. Puer,² corpus summā dīligentiā

exercēbat et vīrēs ita cōnfīrmāvit. Itinere³ ōlim in Aegyptum
trained
factō,³ captus est ā rēge quī illō tempore ibi regēbat. Mōs erat

huius rēgis crūdēlis hominēs immolāre. Hercule⁴ igitur in
to sacrifice
vincula iactō,⁴ rēx nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et incolās ad
chains
sacrificium invītāvit.

Māgna multitūdō hominum ad locum cōnstitūtum⁵ convēnit.
assembled
Herculēs vīnctus ad āram stābat. Subitō tamen summīs vīribus⁶
bound   altar
sē ā vinculīs līberāvit. Sacerdōte⁷ ūnō ictū interfectō,⁷ Herculēs
priest   blow
alterō⁸ rēgem ipsum occīdit. Tum, omnī multitūdine spectante,⁹

ab eō locō līber discessit.

462. VOCABULARY

mōs, mōris, *m.* custom

vīs, vīs, *f.* force; (*pl.*) strength

crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel

vetus, veteris old, ancient

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī,
  dīmissus send out

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus make,
        do

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī,
  interfectus kill

ibi there (*adv.*)

in omnēs partēs in all directions

463. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. vīribus: *in strength.*

2. puer: in apposition with the subject of **exercēbat.** Translate
as a boy.

3. itinere . . . factō: an ablative absolute. Translate *having
made a journey,* or *when he had made a journey.*

4. Hercule . . . iactō: *after he threw Hercules,* etc. Can you
think of another way to translate it?

5. cōnstitūtum: this participle modifies **locum.**

6. vīribus: translate as if singular.

7. sacerdōte . . . interfectō: *having killed the priest.*

8. alterō: supply ictū. Translate *with a second blow.*

9. multitūdine . . . spectante: *while the multitude looked on.*

464. Declension of the Adjective *vetus,* old, and of the Noun,
vīs, force.

The Consonant-Stem Adjective *vetus* (stem *veter-*)

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

The Irregular Noun *vīs*.

Singular		*Plural*
Nom.	vīs	vīrēs
Gen.	vīs	vīrium
Dat.	vī	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs, -īs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

465.   SPOT LIGHTS

Vetus is one of the few adjectives of the third declension with a consonant-stem. Notice the ablative singular in -e, the nominative and accusative neuter plural in -a, the genitive plural in -um.

Vīs is an irregular noun, with two stems, vī- in the singular and vīri- in the plural. Be careful to distinguish the forms of vīs, *force* from those of vir, *man*.

466. The Ablative Absolute. We have seen many examples in preceding lessons of a participle in agreement with a noun. But now we are going to study a use of the participle in which it agrees with a noun which is itself grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

Example : **Rēge interfectō, Herculēs discessit.**
Translations : (*a*) The king having-been-killed, Hercules departed (literal, but bad English).
(*b*) Having killed the king, Hercules departed.
(*c*) After he had killed the king, Hercules departed.
(*d*) Because he had killed the king, Hercules departed.

In many instances *although* is the word to be used in introducing the subordinate clause, but not here.

A noun, when used in this way, is in the ablative case, and the participle agrees with it in case, gender, and number. This kind of construction is called the *ablative absolute*. It

always expresses an idea which in English is usually expressed by a subordinate clause. Be careful not to translate the noun of an ablative absolute by *with, by, from,* or *in.* It is best, first, to translate such expressions literally, and then decide what subordinate clause best expresses the meaning.

467.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **vīnum vetus** in the singular ; **is vīcus miser** in the plural.

Give: mood, tense, voice (and person and number when possible) of **faciēs, ēripitis, interficiēris, iacī, dīmissī sunt, interficeris, condūcī.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quō iter fēcit Herculēs? In Aegyptum iter Herculēs fēcit. **2.** Quid, multitūdine spectante, fēcit ille vir? Sē ā vinculīs, multitūdine spectante, ille vir līberāvit. **3.** Timuit-ne Herculēs mōrem crūdēlem illīus rēgis barbarī? Herculēs mōrem crūdēlem illīus rēgis barbarī nōn timuit. **4.** Quī undique ad locum cōnstitūtum contendunt? Māgna multitūdō hominum fēminārumque ad locum cōnstitūtum undique contendit. **5.** Quī nōbīs hās fābulās veterēs nārrant? Scrīptōrēs Rōmānī et Graecī nōbīs hās fābulās veterēs nārrant.

468.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

The three following sentences are : (*a*) an English sentence with a subordinate clause ; (*b*) the same sentence with the subordinate clause turned into a *having-been* form, which is not the best English usage, but which, when translated literally, will be correct Latin ; and (*c*) the correct Latin form, with the English subordinate clause expressed as an ablative absolute.

(*a*) When he had sent out messengers, he led Hercules to the temple.

(b) Messengers having-been-sent-out, he led Hercules to the temple.

(c) **Nūntiīs dīmissīs, Herculem ad templum dūxit.**

Translate the words in parentheses by an ablative absolute:

1. After the man had been captured (the man having-been-captured), the king prepared a sacrifice.   2. (When he learned the old custom of the place), he determined to free himself. 3. (When he had freed the inhabitants from this fear), he departed safe from these territories.   4. (Since he had defended the bridge for a long time), Horatius received a reward from the citizens.

469.   **WORD STUDY**

From what words in the vocabulary are *dismiss, fact, moral, veteran,* and *win* derived?

Can you guess what the Latin noun **crūdēlitās** means?

What is an *inveterate* habit?   What is a *veteran?*

A FISH OUT OF WATER

This round object is a bronze discus with a Mediterranean dolphin stamped on it in relief. This very disc was used in discus-throwing events more than 2500 years ago. Dolphins like this fly up out of the water around Mediterranean liners today. Perhaps this bronze dolphin when he went hurtling through the air in the farthest discus throw at the athletic games thought he was a flying fish.

A TROPHY OF VICTORY

LXVII
OPUSCULUM SEXĀGĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

470.   HERCULĒS ET MINYAE

Herculēs adulēscēns in urbe Thēbīs [1] habitābat. Ā cīvibus
<p style="text-align:center">Thebes</p>
māgnopere amābātur atque fīliam rēgis ipsīus in mātrimōnium dūxit. Causa fuit haec: Thēbānī ōlim bellō ā fīnitimīs Minyīs [2] superātī,[3] sē numquam līberāre potuerant. Quotannīs centum
<p style="text-align:center">every year</p>
bovēs prō stīpendiō dare coāctī erant. Herculēs igitur cīvēs
<p>oxen   tribute</p>
suōs hōc stīpendiō [4] līberāre cōnstituit.

Minyīs iniūriam gravem fēcit, nam aurēs lēgātōrum, quī in
<p style="text-align:center">ears</p>
urbem missī [5] stīpendium postulāvērunt, abscidit; eōs ita vul-
<p>demanded   cut off</p>
nerātōs ad rēgem remīsit. Rēx igitur Minyārum, ob hanc iniūriam īrā vehementer commōtus, māgnīs cōpiīs [6] coāctīs, in fīnēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Sē Thēbānōs facile vincere posse [7] spērāvit.

Sed Thēbānī Herculem imperātōrem dēlēgerant. Is, nūn-

tiīs dīmissīs, māgnās cōpiās intereā comparāverat. Tum hīs cōpiīs ē castrīs ēductīs, locum idōneum dēlēgerat et proelium ibi commīserat.

Facilis fuit victōria Thēbānōrum; hostēs impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. Thēbānī, multā praedā captā, in urbem sē recēpērunt. Cīvēs victōrēs cum gaudiō accēpērunt et mīlitibus ampla praemia dedērunt. Rēx ipse, memor tantī beneficī,[8] Herculem summīs honōribus ōrnāvit et eī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dedit.

> attack (above *impetum sustinēre*)
> mindful of (above *memor tantī*)

471.   VOCABULARY

honor, honōris, *m.* honor
praeda, -ae, *f.* booty
amplus, -a, -um generous, large
centum a hundred (*indeclinable*)
facilis, -e easy
tantus, -a, -um so great

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus · elect
remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus send back
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus withstand
facile easily (*adv.*)

472.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Thēbīs**: ablative plural in apposition with **urbe**.
2. **Minyīs**: ablative in apposition with **fīnitimīs**.
3. **superātī**: with what noun does this participle agree?
4. **hōc stīpendiō**: ablative, depending on **līberāre**. What preposition should be used in translating it?
5. **missī**: is this participle part of an ablative absolute?
6. **cōpiīs**: why is this word in the ablative?
7. **posse**: infinitive in an indirect statement with **spērāvit**.
8. **beneficī**: why does this word end in **-cī** instead of **-ciī**?

473. Pluperfect Tense of *sum* and *possum*.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
I had been, etc.		I had been able, etc.	
fueram	fuerāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis	potuerās	potuerātis
fuerat	fuerant	potuerat	potuerant

474.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The pluperfect tense of **sum** and **possum** is formed just like that of other verbs:

Perfect Stem	Tense Sign	Personal Ending
potu-	-era-	-m, etc.
fu-	-era-	-m, etc.

Show how **portāveram, vīderam, mīseram, cēperam** are formed.

475. Latin Expressions for *from*. Distinguish the following uses of *from:*

Place from which. He led the troops *from the town* (ab oppidō). He led the troops *out of camp* (ē castrīs). He led the troops *down from the mountain* (dē monte).

Exception: With names of towns omit the preposition. He led the troops *from Rome* (Rōmā).

Separation. After verbs of depriving and freeing, the ablative is used either *with* or *without* a preposition. He freed the citizens *from danger*, cīvēs perīculō līberāvit. He rescued himself *from danger*, sē ē perīculō ēripuit.

Cause. When *from* means *on-account-of*, it is expressed either by the ablative with no preposition or by the accusative with **ob** or **propter**. He had not been able to lead the troops *on account of fear*, cōpiās dūcere timōre nōn potuerat. *On account of the unexpected danger* he sent back the troops, **ob perīculum imprōvīsum, cōpiās remīsit.**

476.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: mōs crūdēlis in the plural; tantus honor in the singular.

Give: the tense, mood, voice, (person and number when possible) of sustinentibus, dēlēgistis, remissīs, fuerās, dēligī, sustinērī.

Translate: faciētis, postulārī, dēligiminī, remitteris, sustinu-erās, fēcistī, interfectus est.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Quī in urbem quotannīs missī sunt? Lēgātī hostium in urbem quotannīs missī sunt. 2. Quis lēgātōs ita vulnerātōs ex urbe mīsit? Herculēs lēgātōs ita vulnerātōs ad dominum eōrum remīsit. 3. Cūr imperātor nūntiōs dīmittit? Imperātor nūntiōs dīmittit quod cōpiās comparāre cupit. 4. Quis sē vincere posse spērāvit? Rēx hostium sē vincere facile posse spērāvit. 5. Quī summīs vīribus contendērunt? Thēbānī summīs vīribus contendērunt. 6. Cūr īrā rēx commōtus est? Ob iniūriam gravem rēx īrā vehementer commōtus est.

477.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate: 1. Horatius, now safe, will be held in honor by the citizens. 2. He says that the neighbors are-demanding help from (ā) us. 3. We had not been able to rescue our city from danger. 4. The ambassadors had been sent to this place by the enemy (*pl.*). 5. The general, after collecting much booty (much booty having-been-collected), sent the messengers out-of camp.

478.   WORD STUDY

With what words in the vocabulary are *ample, century, remittance,* and *sustain* connected?

LXVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒSEPTUĀGĒSIMUM

DUŌS QUĪ SEQUITUR LEPŌRĒS NEUTRUM CAPIT

It is often said of a busy person who has made a failure of his work, that he had "too many irons in the fire." A Latin saying equivalent to that is translated: *he who chases two rabbits, catches neither one.*

479.   PUELLA SAPIĒNS

Aristagorās Milēsius, Cleomenem[1] rēgem potentem Spartae

Milesian
bellum cum Persīs gerere vehementer cupīvit. Cleomenēs

Persians
vērō,[2] quī[3] cīvitātem suam cum studiō cūrābat, diū recūsāvit,

refused
quod[4] iter in fīnēs Persicōs longum et difficile esse[5] bene intel-
lēxit. Aristagorās autem rēgem in rēgiā iterum petīvit.

palace

Apud rēgem forte adfuit fīlia parva quam[6] māximē amābat.

very greatly
Haec fīlia, Gorgō nōmine, puella octō aut novem annōrum erat.
Cleomenēs hospitem līberē dīcere, neque verba puellae causā

guest   freely
retinēre iussit. Gorgō igitur, quae[7] hospitēs patris saepe vīderat,
nunc mānsit. Tum Milēsius dē bellō Persicō iterum dīxit,
atque rēgī prō eius auxiliō decem talenta aurī pollicitus est.

$12,000   promised
Rēge[8] iterum recūsante,[8] hospes plūs pecūniae pollicitus est.

more
Postrēmō quīnquāgintā talenta pollicitus est.

fifty
Tum dēmum puella sapiēns "Hic hospes" clāmāvit, "pater,
tuam virtūtem dēlēbit nisi statim hinc discēdēs." Pater, hīs

from here

verbīs sapientibus monitus,[9] statim discessit. Numquam posteā Milēsium vīdit. Sīc cōnsilium malum, quod [10] Aristagorās cēperat, verbīs vērīs et bonīs illīus puellae dēlētum est.

480.   VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, *n.* gold

bonum, -ī, *n.* good

causā for the sake of (*always pre-ceded by accompanying genitive*)

cīvitās, cīvitātis, *f.* state, citizen-ship

cōnsilium capere form a plan

difficilis, difficile difficult

sapiēns, sapientis wise

quī, quae, quod who, which, that

forte by chance (*adv.*)

nisi unless, if not

retineō, retinēre, retinuī, reten-tus hold back

481.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Cleomenem:** accusative case, subject of the infinitive **gerere.** What is the object of **gerere**?

2. **vērō:** translate *but.*

3. **quī:** *who,* relative pronoun, subject of **cūrābat.**

4. **quod:** the two meanings of this word must be carefully distin-guished; it may mean *because,* or it may mean *which.* In this story it is used once with each meaning.

5. **esse:** explain the use of this infinitive.

6. **quam:** a relative pronoun, accusative case, the object of **amābat.**

7. **quae:** why is this relative pronoun feminine?

8. **rēge . . . recūsante:** why are this noun and this participle both in the ablative case?

9. **monitus:** with what does this participle agree?

10. **quod:** *because* or *which?*

482. Declension of the Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod,* who, which (that).

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

483. Meanings of *quī, quae, quod.*

Nom.   who, which (that); who, *for a person;* which, *for a thing*

Gen.   whose, of whom, of which

Dat.   to *or* for whom, to *or* for which

Acc.   whom, which (that)

Abl.   by, from *or* with whom; by, from *or* with which

484.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The English relative pronouns, *who, which (that),* are so called because they relate to a noun or pronoun used in the sentence. This noun is called the *antecedent* of the relative pronoun.

> This is the book *that* (or *which*) I promised to give you.
> The girl *who* promised to give me the book is not here.

The antecedents in these sentences are *book* and *girl;* the relative pronouns are *that (which)* and *who.*

The Latin relative pronoun resembles the interrogative pro-noun in its forms. Compare the declension of the relative pronoun with that of the interrogative given in **213.** How many genders has the interrogative pronoun? What is its nominative singular? In what other one form does it differ from the relative pronoun?

Notice that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but *not* in case. Note the following sentence:

This is the book *which* you saw in the palace, hic est liber *quem* in rēgiā vīdistī.

With what does **quem** agree? The English relative pronoun *which* has *book* for its antecedent; the Latin relative pronoun **quem** has **liber** for its antecedent. **Liber,** *book,* is masculine and singular; therefore the relative pronoun, **quem,** must be masculine and singular. **Liber** is nominative in this sentence because it is a predicate noun used with **est;** but the relative pronoun **quem** is the object of the verb **vīdistī,** and therefore accusative. Therefore we need in this sentence the masculine singular accusative of **quī,** *i.e.,* **quem.**

In every English sentence the use of the relative pronoun and of its antecedent must be known so that one can determine the number, gender, and case before trying to translate them into Latin.

485.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **iter facile** in the singular; **via difficilis** in the plural; **praeda omnis** in the singular.

Conjugate: **dēligō** in the future tense active; **postulō** in the future tense passive.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis auxilium ā rēge clam petit? Lēgātus quī ā cīvitāte Graecā missus est auxilium ā rēge clam petit. **2.** Quis erat hic rēx? Cleomenēs erat hic rēx, quī cīvitātem suam māgnō cum studiō cūrābat. **3.** Quis cum rēge et lēgātō mānsit? Fīlia parva rēgis, quam pater māgnopere amābat, cum eīs mānsit. **4.** Quis bellum hōc tempore prohibuit? Gorgō, quamquam puella parva erat, verbīs sapientibus bellum hōc tempore prohibuit.

486.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate *only* the relative pronouns which are italicized. Refer to the example given in **484.**

From a painting by E. Forti   A FLORAL OFFERING   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

Matrons and maidens of ancient Rome issue from the temple where they had met to begin the anniversary celebration in honor of the goddess Flora. The offering of meal, wine, oil, and perfume is already burning on the beautiful altar which on its marble base stands centered on the mosaic pavement.

1. These are the plans *which* he had formed. **2.** The ambassador saw the girl *who* warned her father. **3.** The man *whom* the king admitted was a foreigner. **4.** The war *which* was afterwards waged with Persia brought glory to Athens. **5.** The citizens *whom* Cleomenes saved from war were grateful. **6.** The king refused the money *that* the stranger offered. **7.** Men *who* offer bribes ought to be repulsed. **8.** There are many girls *whom* the gold would have tempted. **9.** The virtue *which* Gorgo prized is better than riches. **10.** Two virtues *that* men prize are honesty and bravery.

487.   WORD STUDY

Facilis, *easy,* and **difficilis,** *hard,* are Latin adjectives derived from **faciō.** The suffix **-ilis** means *-able.* **Facilis** therefore means *do-able,* or *easy;* **difficilis,** *not do-able,* or *difficult.*

LXIX
OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒSEPTUĀGĒSIMUM

QUID DĒ QUŌQUE VIRŌ ET CUI DĪCĀS SAEPE CAVĒTŌ

This is a quotation from the Roman poet Horace. It was cleverly translated many years ago in this way: " Have a care of whom you talk, to whom, and what, and where! "

488.   REX GRĀTIĀS REDDIT

Ōlim rēx Persārum bellum cum Aegyptiīs gerēbat. Cōpiae Persicae, quārum[1] dux erat Dārīus, in urbe quādam forte manēbant.

certain
Graecus quīdam, ē patriā suā ēiectus, ibi habitābat. Dārīus hunc Graecum palliō pulchrō indūtum in huius urbis forō[2]

cloak
vīdit. Ille, cupīdine huius pallī captus,[3] emere cupīvit. Sed

with desire
Graecus " Hoc pallium," inquit, " emere nōn potes; tibi autem libenter dabō." Dārīus igitur, cui[4] dōnum fuit grātissimum,[5] pallium laetus accēpit; paulum posteā, ex urbe cum omnibus cōpiīs discessit.

Paucōs post annōs rēx Persārum mortuus est et Dārīus rēgnum

died
obtinuit. Ante portās rēgiae vīsus est advena, quī clāmābat:

stranger
" Ego dē[6] Dārīō bene meruī! Ego dē Dārīō bene meruī! " Quae verba[7] cūstōs rēgī statim nūntiāvit. Rēx advenam ad sē addūcī iūssit. Ab homine ad sē adductō[8] rēx quaesīvit: " Quis es? quō factō[9] dē rēge bene meruistī? " Tum ille

300

" Ego," respondit, " sum ille cuius[10] pallium in Aegyptō accēpistī." Omnia ad pallium pertinentia[11] nārrāvit.

Rēx tantī beneficī memor, " Tibi," inquit, " idōneum praemium dabō; tantum aurī[12] quantum cupis habēbis." Sed Graecus: " Neque aurum neque aliud praemium, rēx māgne, rogō. Patriam[13] meam, īnsulam Samon, quae sub imperiō

Samos
servī nunc est, līberātam mihi redde! "[14]

Rēx Dārīus, igitur, cōpiīs in īnsulam Samon missīs servum, quī rēgnum occupāverat, ēiēcit et populum bellō līberāvit. Ita rēx, cui Graecus dōnum parvum dederat, grātiās amplissimās[15] reddidit.

489.   VOCABULARY

cūstōs, cūstōdis, *m.* guard
grātia, -ae, *f.* favor, charm; *in the plural,* thanks
memor, memoris mindful
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus buy
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus drive out (ē + iaciō)

mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus deserve
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus return, give back
grātiās reddere return thanks, make a return
tantus . . . quantus so great . . . as, so much . . . as

490.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. quārum: how is the genitive of a relative pronoun translated? Look in the table of meanings in **483.**

2. forō: used with in; why cannot huius urbis be used with in?

3. captus: *smitten,* or *overcome.* With what does it agree?

4. cui: how is the dative of a relative pronoun translated? What is the antecedent of cui?

5. **grātissimum**: superlative of **grātus**.   Translate *very pleasing*.

6. **dē**: *from*.

7. _**quae verba**: literally, *which words;* translate *these words*.   In Latin a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence with its antecedent in the preceding one; but this is not good English usage, and the relative should be translated like a demonstrative.

8. **adductō**: with what does it agree?

9. **quō factō**: translate *by what act*.

10. **cuius**: *whose*.

11. **pertinentia**: translate *pertaining* or *that pertained*.

12. **tantum aurī**: literally *so much of gold;* translate *as much gold*.

13. **patriam**: object of **redde**.

14. **redde**: imperative second singular of **reddō**; translate *return!*

15. **amplissimās**: superlative of **amplus**; translate *very generous* or *most generous*.

491.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the accusative singular and plural of **honor amplus, ea cīvitās vetus, hic cūstōs sapiēns;** the dative and ablative singular of **hoc aurum, praeda vetus.**

Give: the tense, mood, voice, number, and person of **reddēmus, ēiectī erāmus, ēicis, ēiciēris, pertinēbit, reddidistī, creātus est, addūcēris, sustinuistī.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Erat-ne lēgātō dōnum grātum?   Dāriō dōnum quod accēperat grātum erat.   **2.** Quis est hic quī ante portam clāmat?   Hic, rēx māgne, est Graecus cuius pallium tū ōlim accēpistī.   **3.** Quod praemium, Graece, cupis?   Nūllum praemium, rēx māgne, sed patriam līberārī māgnopere cupiō.   **4.** Nōnne cupis patriam tuam esse tūtam?   Patriam meam esse tūtam vehementer cupiō.   **5.** Poteris-ne patriam meam līberāre?   Patriam tuam cōpiīs, quās mox mittam, līberāre facile poterō.

492.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Translate only the italicized words: **1.** *Men from whom* gifts are received are not always rewarded.   **2.** This is the *lieutenant to whom* I gave the cloak.   **3.** *The lieutenant whom* I aided has become king.   **4.** *The wound from which* he suffers is serious.   **5.** These are the *troops to whom* the reward was given.

Translate: **1.** Thanks are rendered to the man whose gift was accepted.   **2.** The troops by-means-of which the island was freed have been led home (**domum**).

493.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *custodian, eject, memory, merit,* and *redemption* derived?

Grātia: from this word meaning *favor* or *charm* come the English words *grace* and *gracious*.   Our word *gratis* comes from **grātiīs** (*abl. pl.*).   That is, when you get something *gratis*, you get it *for thanks*, not for money.   In Italian, " thank you " is *grazie* (pronounced grat′see ay).

A SHOEMAKER'S IMMORTALITY

This Roman maker of shoes had his tombstone made before he died.   He lives for us forever in realistic marble portraiture, a likeness that has outlasted any last he ever made.   Above his head are carved two wooden foot forms, on one of which is shown a sandal of his best make.   His name and trade are carved in an inscription below his marble likeness.
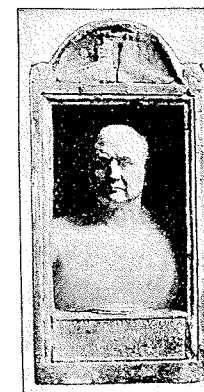
LXX
OPUSCULUM SEPTUAGESIMUM

494. PUELLA SUPERBA

Puella Graeca, Arachnē nōmine, quae erat artium [1] omnium

perīta, sē perītiōrem [2] esse quam cēterās fēminās atque deās
_{skillful}

ipsās exīstimāvit. Minervam etiam, deam quae hās artēs [3]

hominēs docuerat, superāre posse spērāvit. Dea, propter tālem

audāciam īrāta, puellam dē tālis certāminis perīculō [4] monuit.
_{boldness}

Arachnē autem, audācior [5] quam omnēs hominēs,[6] suam artem

dēmōnstrāre semper cupiēbat.

Itaque illae duae, dea et puella, tēlās texuērunt. Cum dīli-
_{webs} _{wove}

gentiā et celeritāte labōrāvit Arachnē; cum arte dīvīnā texuit

Minerva. Pulchra fuit tēla cōnfecta puellae; etiam pulchrius [7]

fuit opus deae. Tum Minerva īrā graviōre commōta, tēlam

puellae in terram iēcit et dēlēvit.

Arachnē, scelere nunc cōgnitō [8] sē [9] interficere cupīvit. Mi-

nerva tamen cuius animus nōn fuit tam crūdēlis, puellam arāneā
_{spider}

mūtāvit.[10] Arānea igitur, etiam nunc semper texit. Sīc omnēs [11]

deōs immortālēs esse quam hominēs potentiōrēs cōgnōvērunt.

304

495. VOCABULARY

opus, operis, *n.* work

scelus, sceleris, *n.* crime,
      wickedness

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōn-
fectus finish, accomplish

dēmōnstrāre prove

exīstimāre think

immortālis, -e immortal

tālis, tāle such

quam than (*adv.*)

496. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **artium:** *in all arts.* Perītus is always used with the genitive.

2. **perītiōrem:** comparative of perīta, *more skillful.* It is in the accusative singular agreeing with the subject of **esse.** Why is the infinitive used?

3. **artēs:** this is one of the accusatives used with **doceō.** What is the other object?

4. **perīculō:** used with **dē;** translate **dē,** *concerning* or *about.*

5. **audācior:** comparative of audāx. It agrees with **Arachnē.**

6. **hominēs:** quam, *than,* is always followed by a noun or pronoun in the same case as the noun or pronoun with which the comparison is made, *i.e.,* Arachnē (*nom.*) precedes quam, therefore hominēs, which follows it, is in the nominative.

7. **pulchrius:** comparative neuter singular, agreeing with **opus.**

8. **cōgnitō:** why is this participle in the ablative case?

9. **sē:** subject or object of **interficere ?**

10. **arānea mūtāvit:** translate *changed into a spider.*

11. **omnēs:** nominative, subject of **cōgnōvērunt.**

497. Comparative of Adjectives; Formation and Declension.

Positive	Base	Comparative M. or F.	Ending N.	Comparative M. or F.	N.
lātus, -a, -um	lāt-	-ior,	-ius	lātior,	lātius
līber, -era, -erum	līber-	-ior,	-ius	līberior,	līberius
pulcher, -ra, -rum	pulchr-	-ior,	-ius	pulchrior,	pulchrius
ācer, -ris, -re	ācr-	-ior,	-ius	ācrior,	ācrius
fortis, -e	fort-	-ior,	-ius	fortior,	fortius
audāx	audāc-	-ior,	-ius	audācior,	audācius
potēns	potent-	-ior,	-ius	potentior,	potentius

Declension of *audācior,* bolder, too bold.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	audācior	audācius	audāciōrēs	audāciōra
Gen.	audāciōris	audāciōris	audāciōrum	audāciōrum
Dat.	audāciōrī	audāciōrī	audāciōribus	audāciōribus
Acc.	audāciōrem	audācius	audāciōrēs	audāciōra
Abl.	audāciōre	audāciōre	audāciōribus	audāciōribus

498.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The degrees of comparison are positive, comparative, and superlative. The comparative of most adjectives is formed by adding the endings **-ior** and **-ius** to the base of the positive. You will see from the examples given in **497** that all adjectives, regardless of the declension to which they belong, form the comparative in the same way. All comparatives, with one exception, are declined like **audācior.**

499.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **nox longior** in the singular; **frāter clārior** in the plural; **praeda pulchrior** in the singular.

Give: the tense, mood, voice, number, and case or person of **cōnfēcerātis, exīstimāverās, cōnficitis, exīstimātum est, retinēbitis, emit, ēmit, emet, ementibus, merēbō, cōnficientēs, reddentia.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quantum (*how much*) aurī dedit rēx? Tantum aurī dedit quantum Graecus portāre potuit. **2.** Quis cōnsilium audācius quam Arachnē cēpit? Nēmō cōnsilium audācius quam Arachnē cēpit. **3.** Quis erat potentior quam illa puella perīta? Minerva, dea artium omnium, potentior quam illa puella erat. **4.** Num opus puellae cōnfectum pulchrius fuit? Opus nōn puellae, sed deae, cōnfectum pulchrius fuit. **5.** Habuit-ne puella poenam gravem? Puella poenam scelerī idōneam habuit.

500.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Give: the genitive plural of **via angustior, iter facilius, flūmen lātius, ea grātia.**

Translate: **1.** If that girl is too-bold, Minerva will destroy her. **2.** The girl, for-the-sake-of fame, formed too-bold a plan. **3.** Good men are more-pleasing to the immortal gods than bold men. **4.** Minerva, more-powerful than the maiden, won (**reportāre**) an easy victory. **5.** To that Greek his country was dearer than gold.

501.   WORD STUDY

To what words in the vocabulary are *demonstration, estimate,* and *operation* related?

MINERVA

Not only was Minerva the goddess of the womanly arts of the house, but she was also a stern goddess of war. Both of her characteristics are to be recognized in the story. This representation is cut on an ancient gem. The head of the gorgon on her aegis, or breastplate, can be clearly seen.

LXXI

OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

502. MEGACLĒS ET HIPPOCLĪDĒS, I

Clīsthenēs, rēx quīdam fīliam Agaristēn [1] nōmine habuit,
a certain

quam adulēscentī fortissimō [2] et prūdentissimō omnium Grae-

cōrum in mātrimōnium dare cupīvit. Nūntiīs igitur in omnēs

partēs missīs, sē virum dīgnissimum fīliā [3] suā Clīsthenēs

cupere nūntiāvit. Omnēs, quī sē esse dīgnōs iūdicāvērunt, in

urbe suā adesse ante sexāgintā diēs invītāvit.
sixty days

Māximum numerum procōrum hōc modō coāctum,[4] Clīsthenēs,
of suitors

quī curriculum palaestramque iam parāverat, temptāre coepit.
race course   gymnasium

Per annī spatium et mōrēs et ingenium hōrum adulēscentium
intellect

temptābat. In lūdīs paene cotīdiānīs vīrēs [5] et animum pro-

bāvit, in colloquiīs mōrēs et ingenium et sententiās cōgnōvit.
opinions

Inter procōs fuērunt duo Athēniēnsēs, Megaclēs, cuius gēns

erat nōbilissima et Hippoclīdēs, clārissimus dīvitiīs [6] et pulchri-
riches   good

tūdine. Hī duo, iūdiciō [7] rēgis, multō erant dīgniōrēs honōre [8]
looks

quam cēterī, nam animum eōrum esse fortiōrem, ingenium

ācrius,[9] vīrēs fīrmiōrēs cōgnōverat. Postrēmō, Hippoclīdēs

rēgī grātior quam Megaclēs vīsus est.[10]

308

503. VOCABULARY

colloquium, -ī, *n.* conversation
mōrēs (*pl.* of mōs) character, morals
sententia, -ae, *f.* opinion
alter . . . alter the one, the other (of two)

dīgnus, -a, -um worthy
fīrmus, -a, -um vigorous, strong
nōbilis, -e noble
coepī I began (*no present, imperfect, or future*)
temptāre test, try
multō much (*adv.*)

504. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Agaristēn:** accusative, a Greek form; in apposition with **fīliam.**

2. **fortissimō:** dative; superlative of **fortis.** All the adjectives in this lesson containing the syllables -issim- are superlatives.

3. **fīliā:** ablative with **dīgnissimum.** Translate *of his daughter.*

4. Could you use an ablative absolute, **māximō numerō coāctō** ?

5. **vīrēs:** does this word come from **vir** or **vīs** ?

6. **dīvitiīs:** ablative depending on **clārissimus.** Translate *on account of his riches.*

7. **iūdiciō:** *in the judgment.*

8. **honōre:** *of honor;* **dīgnus** is always used with the ablative.

9. **ācrius:** what form is this?

10. **vīsus est:** *seemed,* a common meaning of **videō** in the passive.

505. Superlative of Adjectives.

Positive	*Base*	*Ending*	*Superlative*
lātus, -a, -um	lāt-	-issimus, -a, -um	lātissimus, -a, -um, widest, very wide
audāx, -a, -um	audāc-	-issimus, -a, -um	audācissimus, -a, -um, boldest, very bold
potēns, -a, -um	potent-	-issimus, -a, -um	potentissimus, -a, -um, most powerful, very powerful

506. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The superlative of most adjectives is formed by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive. All superlatives are declined like **lātus, -a, -um.**

When you are to compare *fortis*, for example, you should do so according to the following form: *positive*, **fortis, forte,** *comparative*, **fortior, fortius,** *superlative*, **fortissimus, fortissima, fortissimum.**

507.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the ablative singular and accusative plural of **cūra gravior, cūstōs fortissimus, iūdicium audācissimum.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quī in urbe rēgis adfuērunt? Māximus adulēscentium numerus in urbe rēgis adfuit.   **2.** Quō modō pater mōrēs et vīrēs illōrum saepe temptābat? Lūdīs et colloquiīs cotīdiānīs, mōrēs et vīrēs illōrum temptābat.   **3.** Quem esse dīgnissimum iūdicāvit rēx? Hippoclīdēn esse vērō dīgnissimum rēx postrēmō iūdicāvit.   **4.** Cuius gēns erat nōbilissima? Huius adulēscentis gēns erat nōbilissima. **5.** Quis omnium adulēscentium rēgī grātissimus fuit? Hippoclīdēs rēgī grātissimus vīsus est.

508.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: in the accusative singular and genitive plural **con- iūrātiō potentior, vir clārissimus, tāle scelus.**

Translate: **1.** Clisthenes, a very-wise father, gathered all the young-men together.   **2.** Their strength (*pl.*) having been tested, he next tested their character and opinions.   **3.** I think that his strength is much more-vigorous than yours (your strength).   **4.** Hippoclides easily surpassed all the others in wisdom.   **5.** He thought that men ought to-be-judged by character and opinions.

509.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *dignity, morals, eloquent,* and *temptation* derived?
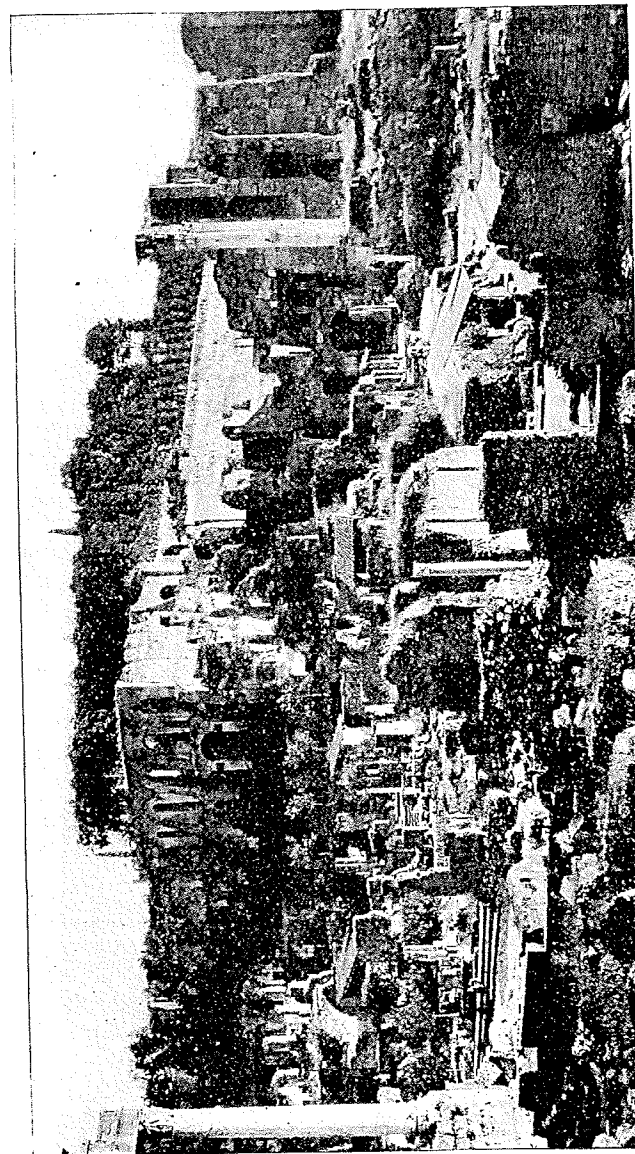
ACROSS THE FORUM TO THE PALATINE

Standing in the Basilica Aemilia, we are looking over the spot where Julius Caesar's body was burned, across the precinct of the Vestal Virgins to the foundations of the imperial palace on the Palatine.

LXXII
OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

510.   MEGACLĒS ET HIPPOCLĪDĒS, II

Puella Agaristē intereā ē rēgiā dīmissa erat et per annī spatium apud pāstōrem quendam et uxōrem eius manēbat. Ōlim forte
<small>at the house of a certain shepherd</small>
Hippoclīdēs et Megaclēs, quī māgnā amīcitiā inter sē [1] coniūnctī sunt, in silvā prope urbem errantēs, puellam pulcherrimam [2] vīdērunt. "Haec puella," inquit Hippoclīdēs, "simillima [3] est deābus [4] immortālibus."

Hanc rēgis esse fīliam posteā cōgnōvērunt. Agaristēn posteā saepe vīdērunt. Mox ambō adulēscentēs, crēbrīs colloquiīs [5]
<small>both   frequent</small>
cum eā habitīs,[5] eam amāvērunt. Itaque studiō multō ācriōre ā rēge dēligī cupīvērunt. Puellae [6] autem ambō erant grātī, sed Megaclēs multō grātior. Hōc cōgnitō, Hippoclīdēs, cuius ingenium erat ācerrimum, amōre māgnō Megaclis adductus, cōnsilium callidum cēpit.
<small>clever</small>

Annō nunc cōnfectō, rēx omnēs procōs diē cōnstitūtō [7] in rēgiā collocāvit. Hī iūdicium rēgis ācerrimō cum studiō exspectāvērunt. Paene omnibus nunc duōs Athēniēnsēs rēgī grātiōrēs esse [8] quam reliquōs cōgnitum est. Rēx post cēnam, ut mōs fuit apud antīquōs, vīnum apportārī et tībīcinēs intrōdūcī
<small>flute-players</small>

iussit. Subitō Hippoclīdēs, cui rēx fīliam in mātrimōnium dare iam cōnstituerat, saltāre coepit, id quod,[9] apud antīquōs tur-
<small>to dance</small>
pissimum esse putābātur. Rēx spectāns māximē perturbātus
<small>most disgraceful</small>
est. Hippoclīdēs deinde mēnsā imperātā, in mēnsā saltāre
<small>table</small>
coepit. Rēx nunc īrā commōtus est. Postrēmō Hippoclīdēs in capite stāns, pedēs in āere agitābat.

Tum vērō Clīsthenēs sē nōn iam continēre potuit, sed " O fīlī Tīsandrī," [10] clāmāvit, " uxōrem hōc factō [11] āmīsistī ! " Hippoclīdēs autem, " Nihil id cūrat [12] Hippoclīdēs ! " respondit. Rēx igitur, silentiō imperātō, sīc nūntiāvit : " Iūdicium tam difficile Hippoclīdēs facillimum [13] reddidit.[14] Agaristēn, meam fīliam cāram, Megaclī dō. Eam in mātrimōnium ex Athēniēnsium lēgibus [15] dūcet. Omnibus procīs reliquīs talentum argentī
<small>of silver</small>
dabō."· Megaclēs igitur iūdicium rēgis māgnō gaudiō accēpit et paulum posteā illam pulcherrimam uxōrem in suam cīvitātem, Athēnās, dūxit.

511.   VOCABULARY

similis, simile like
reliquus, -a, -um the-rest-of
ut as (*conj.*)
āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus lose

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus join
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus restrain
imperāre command, order

512.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. inter sē: *between themselves, together.*
2. pulcherrimam: superlative of **pulcher.**

3. **simillima:** superlative of **similis**; translate *very much like.*
4. **deābus:** dative plural of **dea.**
5. **colloquiīs . . . habitīs:** why are these words in the ablative?
6. **puellae:** dative singular depending on **grātī.**
7. **diē cōnstitūtō:** *on the appointed day.*
8. **esse:** indirect statement after **cōgnitum est**; translate *it was known that the two Athenians were,* etc.
9. **id quod:** *something which;* i.e., for a gentleman to dance.
10. **fīlī Tisandrī:** vocative of **fīlius.** Translate *O son of Tisander!*
11. **hōc factō:** *by this act.*
12. **nihil id cūrat:** *doesn't care at all.* **Nihil** is sometimes used instead of **nōn** for greater emphasis.
13. **facillimum:** see **514.**
14. **reddidit:** in a previous lesson, we had **reddō** meaning *return;* it often means, as here, *render.*
15. **ex lēgibus:** *according to the laws.*

513. The Comparison of Adjectives in *-er* and *-lis*. Not all adjectives are compared like **lātus.** There are two classes of adjectives that have a very different form of superlative, namely, all adjectives in **-er** and a few in **-lis.** Their comparisons are given here.

Adjectives in *-er*.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
pulcher, -ra, -rum	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
celer, celeris, celere	celerior, celerius	celerrimus, -a, -um

Adjectives in *-lis*.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis, facile	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, difficile	difficilior, difficilius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, simile	similior, similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilior, dissimilius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

514.　　SPOT LIGHTS

As you have just seen, adjectives ending in **-er** form their superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the positive masculine nominative singular. Observe also that all adjectives in **-er**, whether of the first and second, or of the third declension, form the superlative in exactly the same way.

The four adjectives **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis** (together with two others, **gracilis,** *slender,* and **humilis,** *low,* not so frequently used), form the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive, instead of **-issimus, -a, -um.** This is not true of all adjectives in **-lis**; **nōbilis** forms the superlative according to the rule, *e.g.,* **nōbil-issimus, -a, -um.**

515.　　ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the tense, mood, voice, number, and person or case of **āmittentēs, continuistī, coniungēbātis, imperābimus, coniūnctōs, āmittis, continuerāmus.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis rēgī grātus erat? Nēmō praeter duōs Athēniēnsēs rēgī grātus erat. **2.** Quis illī puellae pulcherrimae fuit grātissimus? Megaclēs illī puellae pulcherrimae fuit grātissimus. **3.** Erat-ne hic adulēscēns dīgnus fīliā rēgis? Hic adulēscēns dīgnus illā puellā erat. **4.** Quī in silvīs forte errābant? Duo Athēniēnsēs in silvīs forte errābant. **5.** Cūr Hippoclīdēs saltāvit? Amōre suī amīcī Hippoclīdēs saltāvit, quod eum iuvāre cupīvit. **6.** Quō discessērunt reliquī adulēscentēs? Domum reliquī adulēscentēs discessērunt. **7.** Quantum pecūniae rēx dedit? Tantum pecūniae quantum fuit idōneum rēx dedit.

516.　　WRITTEN EXERCISE

Compare: **līber, celer, miser, clārus, fīrmus, brevis.**

Decline: in the singular, **opus facillimum**; in the plural, **sententia commūnis, pūgna ācrior, arbor pulcherrima.**

THE VICTORIOUS CHARIOTEER

The palm of victory given a winning charioteer made him a proper target for volleys of flowers. The painter represents the scene as an exit, through the arch, from the Circus of Maxentius, three miles south of Rome. Notice the draping of the toga of the senator, who stands at the right on the sidewalk.

Translate: **1.** He says that the king's daughter is very-beautiful. **2.** This young man is very-much like his brother (*dative*). **3.** Mindful of his ancient friendship, he wished to help his friend. **4.** The anger (**īra**) of the king, who-was-watching, was increased. **5.** Agariste was much wiser than the young men.

517.   **WORD STUDY**

From what words in the vocabulary are *conjunction*, *imperative*, *relic*, and *similar* derived?

Give an example of a *simile* in English. To what Latin verb is **reliquus** related? What prefixes are used in these verbs: **āmittere, continēre, reddere, coniungere**? What is the meaning of each prefix? Give a translation for **āmittere** and for **reddere** which will show the meaning of the prefixes.

LXXIII:
OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM TERTIUM

WORD STUDY

518. *Cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus,** go, yield.

Find ten English words derived from **cēdō**, and write these words, with their meanings, in your notebook. These derivatives will contain either the stem **-cēd-**, or **-cess-**. **Cēd-** often changes in English into *-ceed*. Remember that the derivative must mean either *go* or *yield*. The following Latin derivatives of **cēdō** will help you to find its English derivatives:

accēdō, go toward	**dēcēdō**, go away, die	**prōcēdō**, go forward
antecēdō, go before	**discēdō**, go away	**recēdō**, go back
concēdō, yield (entirely)	**excēdō**, go out	**sēcēdō**, go apart
	praecēdō, go ahead of	**succēdō**, go close up to

519. To what Latin word is each of the following words related? If you know the Latin word you will not be likely to misspell the English derivative.

amplifier	conjugation	gratis	predatory	recipient
centennial	facility	interjection	quantity	sentence

520. The Noun Suffixes *-ia, -tia, -ium.*

Nouns formed from adjectives. Nouns may be formed from adjectives by adding the suffix **-ia** or **-tia** to the base of the adjective. A noun with this suffix usually denotes a *quality* or a *condition.* Examples: amīci-tia (amīcus), angus-tiae (angustus), audāc-ia (audāx), dīligent-ia (dīligēns), grāt-ia (grātus), iniūr-ia (in, *not*, iūs, iūris, *right*), memor-ia (memor), potent-ia (potēns), sentent-ia (sentiēns).

* If a verb lacks the perfect passive participle ending in **-us**, the future active participle ending in **-ūrus** is used instead.

Nouns formed from verbs. Nouns may be formed from verbs by adding to the base of the verb the ending **-ium**, which denotes *the act of, the result of*. Examples: aedific-ium (aedificō), auxil-ium (auxilior), benefic-ium (bene, faciō), colloqu-ium (colloquor, *talk together*), cōnsilium (cōnsulō), gaud-ium (gaudeō), imper-ium (imperō), iūdic-ium (iūdicō), stud-ium (studeō).

Review the Latin noun suffixes given in **445.**

521.   OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Define the following words derived from **cēdō**, and show that each contains the idea of *going* or of *yielding:* secession, success, incessant, excess, cession.

What does *session* mean? Is it derived from a Latin word?

Write what you think is the meaning of the following Latin words. Let your teacher decide whether or not the meanings are correct.

coniugium	ēmptor	maleficium	sapientia
dīgnitās	fortitūdō	nōbilitās	similitūdō

ROMAN TOYS

Roman children had toys of metal, wood, and terra cotta, thousands of which have been found in excavations and graves. 1 is a dwarf; 2 a cupid riding a rooster; 3 and 9 are a duck and a pig, with holes in bill and snout, used as oil or vinegar cruets; 4 is a rooster; 5 a monkey playing a flute; 6 is Europa riding on a bull; 7 a horseman; 8 is Mercury, a money bag in his hand, sitting on a money chest; and 10 is a curly-tailed dog.
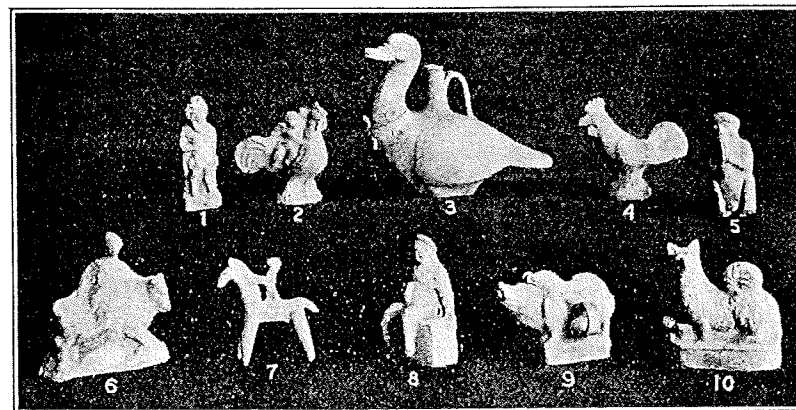
The Johns Hopkins Museum   TERRA COTTA TOYS   *Courtesy of D. M. Robinson*

LXXIV

OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

522.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. Name five **-iō** verbs.   **2.** Conjugate **capiō** in the present tense active and passive.   **3.** Conjugate **dūcō** in the present tense active and passive.   **4.** In what tenses of the indicative does the conjugation of verbs in **-iō** of the third conjugation differ from that of regular verbs of the same conjugation?   **5.** Give, with a translation of each form, the present infinitive active and passive of **mereō, cōnficiō, emō, postulō, sustineō.**   **6.** How do you express in Latin: (*a*) he had been able to conquer; (*b*) he had been there ten days?

1. What is meant by the ablative absolute?   **2.** In which of these two sentences could an ablative absolute be used? (*a*) Hercules, having been led to the altar, broke his chains and escaped.   (*b*) When the sacrifice had been prepared, the king invited the people to be present.   **3.** Express 2 (*a*) in better English.   **4.** How does **vetus** differ from the other adjectives of the third declension that you have studied?   **5.** Give the nominative and genitive plural of **vetus** in

all genders. 6. In expressing the *place from which*, what case is used and what prepositions are commonly used? 7. Is there any important exception to this rule? 8. In what two ways may the phrase *on-account-of* be expressed in Latin? 9. What two prepositions mean *on-account-of?*

1. Decline the Latin relative pronoun in all genders, singular and plural. 2. Give two English sentences, one containing *who* as a relative pronoun, and the other containing *who* as an interrogative pronoun. 3. Give two English sentences, one containing *that* as a relative pronoun, and the other containing *that* as a conjunction. 4. How do you decide the case of a relative pronoun? 5. How do you decide upon its gender and number? 6. What is the regular way of forming the comparative and superlative of an adjective? 7. What is the rule for forming the superlative of adjectives in -er? 8. Compare the adjectives **dīgnus, miser, facilis.** What other adjectives have a superlative like that of **facilis?** 9. Decline **pulchrior** in all genders, singular and plural. 10. What case follows **quam,** *than?*

523. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the third person plural of **recipiō** in five tenses, with a translation of each form.

Write: the nominative plural of **honor amplior** and **mōs crūdēlis;** the ablative singular of **colloquium brevius, māter pulchrior, vīs firmior, iter difficilius.**

Compare: **antīquus, miser, similis, laetus.**

Translate into Latin the italicized words:

1. *When the young-men had been tested* (do not use a clause), the king announced his decision. 2. They say that *this custom is much too-cruel.* 3. Megacles, *having-been-chosen,* departed *from those territories.* 4. The Greek carried off *as much (of) gold as he could.* 5. We reward the men *by whose courage* we are rescued from danger. 6. The suitors *to whom* the king gave money immediately departed. 7. *If the story is true,* Gorgo was a *very-wise* girl. 8. The king *yielded to the words* of his daughter.

524. VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. aurum	5. cūstōs	8. mōs	11. scelus
2. bonum	6. grātia	(*pl.*) mōrēs	12. sententia
3. cīvitās	(*pl.*) grātiae	9. opus	13. vīs
4. colloquium	7. honor	10. praeda	

Adjectives

14. alter	18. difficilis	23. immortālis	28. similis
(alter . . .	19. dīgnus	24. memor	29. tālis
alter)	20. facilis	25. nōbilis	30. tantus
15. amplus	21. fīrmus	26. reliquus	31. tūtus
16. centum	22. gravis	27. sapiēns	32. vetus
17. crūdēlis			

Pronoun 33. quī

Verbs

34. accipiō	41. coniungō	48. emō	55. mereō
35. āmittō	42. contineō	49. ēripiō	56. reddō
36. cadō	43. cupiō	50. exīstimō	57. recipiō
37. capiō	44. dēligō	51. faciō	58. remittō
38. cēdō	45. dēmōnstrō	52. iaciō	59. retineō
39. coepī	46. dīmittō	53. imperō	60. sustineō
40. cōnficiō	47. ēiciō	54. interficiō	61. temptō

Adverbs

62. facile   63. forte   64. ibi   65. multō   66. quam

Conjunctions   67. nisi   68. ut

Idioms

69. causā	71. grātiās reddere	73. sē recipere
70. cōnsilium capere	72. in omnēs partēs	74. tantus . . . quantus

525.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. gold	6. favor, charm	9. work
2. good	(*pl.*) thanks	10. booty
3. state, citizenship	7. honor	11. crime, wickedness
4. conversation	8. custom, (*pl.*) morals	12. opinion
5. guard	character	13. force, strength

Adjectives

14. the other	16. a hundred	22. serious	28. like
(of two)	17. cruel	23. immortal	29. such
(the one	18. difficult	24. mindful	30. so great
. . . the	19. worthy	25. noble	31. safe
other)	20. easy	26. the-rest-of	32. old, ancient
15. generous,	21. vigorous,	27. wise	
large	strong		

Pronouns   33. who, which (that)

Verbs

34. receive	41. join	49. rescue,	55. deserve
35. lose	42. restrain	snatch	56. give back,
36. fall	43. desire	50. think	return
37. take	44. elect	51. make, do	57. take back
38. yield, go	45. prove	52. throw	58. send back
39. began	46. send out	53. command,	59. hold back
40. finish,	47. drive out	order	60. withstand
accomplish	48. buy	54. kill	61. test, try

Adverbs

62. easily   63. by chance   64. there   65. much   66. than

Conjunctions

67. unless, if . . . not   68. as

Idioms

69. for-the-sake-of	73. withdraw, retreat
70. form a plan	74. so great . . . as
71. return thanks, make a return	so much . . . as
72. in all directions	

526.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are derivatives from Latin words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* LXV–LXXIII. Give or write the Latin words from which they are derived. Did you ever misspell any of the words in the list below? Look at the Latin word from which any such is derived to see if you would not have spelled the English word correctly had you known the Latin.

1. accept	10. dignity	19. imperative	28. reject
2. aggravate	11. dismiss	20. interjection	29. relic
3. alternative	12. ejaculate	21. inveterate	30. remittance
4. ample	13. eject	22. memory	31. similar
5. captivity	14. eloquent	23. merit	32. sustain
6. century	15. estimate	24. moral	33. temptation
7. conjunction	16. fact	25. occasion	34. tutor
8. custodian	17. grace	26. operation	35. veteran
9. demonstration	18. gravity	27. redemption	36. vim
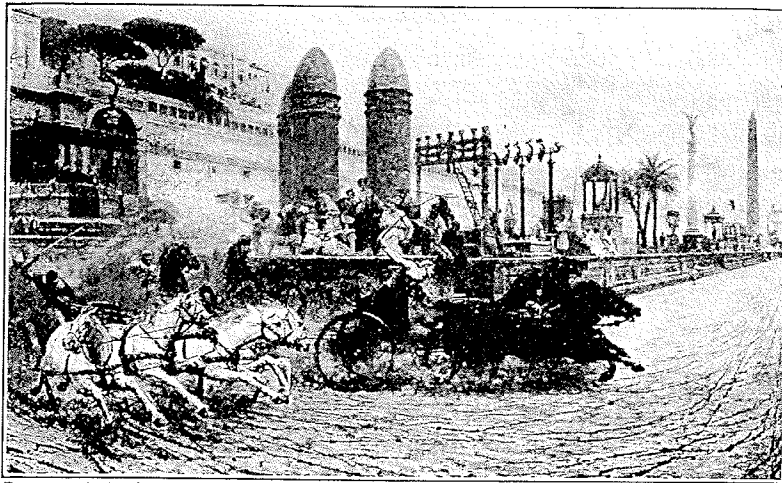
From a painting by E. Forti

FOUR LAPS TO GO

Courtesy of Signora Forti

527.   **THE SPORT OF EMPERORS**

Chariot racing at Rome was a rich man's sport. There were a number of places where a man could race his horses, either in a hippodrome (from a Greek word meaning "horse-racing place") or in one of the many circuses. The Circus Maximus was what its Latin name implies, "the largest circus." It seated more than three hundred thousand persons.

Lengthwise in the center of the arena was a long low platform, beautifully decorated. It was called the *spīna*. It ought not to be hard to see why we call our backbone a spine. There were judges on the *spīna*, especially at the ends where sharp turns were made, to watch for fouls. Find the *spīna* in the picture.

The usual length of a race was seven times around the course. There were two frames erected on one end of the *spīna*. When the race began, on one frame there were seven white balls in as many cups, and on the other seven, bright bronze dolphins with
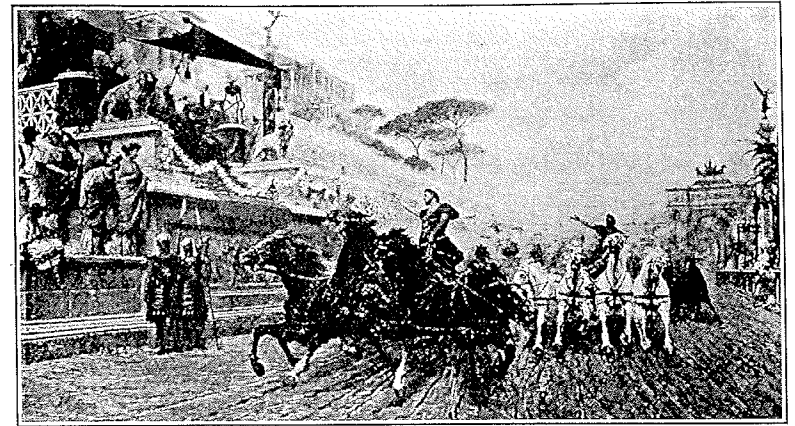
From a painting by E. Forti   "HAIL, EMPEROR!"   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

Before the four-horse chariot races, the main events of the day, the charioteers, *aurīgae*, drove their teams around the course, partly to arouse the enthusiasm of their supporters, but mainly to pay respect to the emperor in the imperial box, to whom they shouted as they whirled by, *Āve imperātor!* Hail, Emperor!

their tails in the air. After each lap one ball was taken from its cup, and one dolphin was flipped over. The chariot drivers by this could tell how many more laps they had to go by glancing up at the moment they swung around the end of the *spīna*. Can you not see in the picture the tails of the four dolphins still up in the air?

The spectators all belonged to one or another of four racing factions. Each faction had a different color. They could tell their favorite entries by the colored tunics of the charioteers. The drivers wrapped the ends of the long reins around their bodies, and each one carried a sharp dagger so he could cut the reins and thus free himself from the horses in case of a runaway caused by a spill or a collision.

LXXV

OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

528. MŌNS SACER

Patriciī et plēbs erant duo genera Rōmānōrum antīquōrum.
patricians
Illī[1] iniūriās multās hīs faciēbant. Postrēmō plēbs, multīs
iniūriīs acceptīs, ex urbe discēdere cōnstituērunt.[2] Urbem
Rōmam igitur relīquērunt; ad montem, posteā Sacrum appel-
sacred
lātum,[3] sē recēpērunt. Urbem novam ibi condere in animō
to found
habuērunt.

Patriciī intereā inōpiā cibī māgnopere labōrāvērunt[4] quod
nōn iam agricolae agrōs colēbant, nōn iam cibum frūmentum
vīnumque in urbem portābant. Plēbs hoc laetissima[5] audī-
vērunt; mox autem ipsī cibī et pecūniae inōpiā māgnopere
labōrāre coepērunt. Sē[6] esse miserrimōs scīvērunt et[7] patriciī
et[7] plēbs.

Tum patriciī lēgātum ad plēbem mīsērunt. Ille, Menēnius
nōmine, ubi vēnit, ōrātiōnem callidam habuit: " Cīvitās," inquit,
clever
" est simillima corporī.[8] Corpus sine officiō omnium membrōrum
parts
valēre nōn potest; opus est[9] manibus, pedibus, dentibus,
teeth
ventre. Sīc cīvitās nōn sine officiō omnium cīvium stāre potest.
stomach
In nostram urbem commūnem, ōrō, revenīte![10] " Plēbs haec

326

verba sapientia audiunt; verba lēgātī vēra esse sentiunt; pos-
trēmō cessērunt.

" Reveniēmus," post breve tempus respondent, " sed nōn iam
lēgēs crūdēlēs, nōn iam vincula neque iniūriās aliās patriciōrum
tolerābimus." Patriciī plēbem revenientem[11] māgnō cum gaudiō
endure
vīdērunt. Tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt, quōrum officium erat iūra
plēbis dēfendere. Tribūnī summō in honōre apud Rōmānōs
habēbantur; tantum paene poterant[12] quantum cōnsulēs ipsī.
Ūnō verbō " Vetō! " dictō,[13] plēbī lēgēs inīquōs prohibēre
I forbid   unjust
poterant. Unde verbum Anglicum *Veto* quoque hodiē habēmus.
whence   English

529. VOCABULARY

inōpia, -ae, *f.* lack
iūs, iūris, *n.* right
officium, -ī, *n.* duty
plēbs, plēbis, *f.* common people
tribūnus, -ī, *m.* tribune, a Roman
political official
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus
hear

labōrāre suffer, toil
re-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
tūrus come back
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus know
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus
come

530. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **illī . . . hīs:** *the former . . . to the latter.*
2. **cōnstituērunt:** plural because of the plural idea in **plēbs.**
3. **appellātum:** what noun does this participle modify?
4. **labōrāvērunt:** see meaning of **labōrāre** in the vocabulary.
5. **laetissima:** translate this adjective as if it were an adverb.
6. **sē:** why is this in the accusative case?
7. **et . . . et:** what do these mean when used as a pair?
8. **corporī:** translate *the body*, not *to the body*.

9. **opus est:** *there is need of.* This phrase is always used with the ablative.

10. **revenīte:** imperative second person plural of **re-veniō.**

11. **revenientem:** with what does it agree?

12. **tantum . . . poterant:** literally, *they were able as much;* translate *they were as powerful.*

13. **verbō . . . dictō:** an ablative absolute.

531. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. Learn this conjugation thoroughly. This is the last of the four conjugations.

<div align="center">

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear

</div>

Present Stem **audī-**   *Perfect Stem* **audīv-**   *Participial Stem* **audīt-**

<div align="center">

PRESENT

</div>

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
I hear, etc.		I am heard, etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior,	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

<div align="center">

IMPERFECT

</div>

I was hearing, etc.		I was heard, etc.	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

<div align="center">

FUTURE

</div>

I shall hear, etc.		I shall be heard, etc.	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

<div align="center">

PERFECT

</div>

I have heard, etc.		I have been heard, etc.	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus, -a, -um sum, etc.	
	etc.	audītī, -ae, -a sumus, etc.	

<div align="center">

PLUPERFECT

</div>

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
I had heard, etc.		I had been heard, etc.	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus, -a, -um eram, etc.	
	etc.	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus, etc.	

<div align="center">

FUTURE PERFECT

</div>

I shall have heard, etc.		I shall have been heard, etc.	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus, -a, -um erō	
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus, -a, -um eris	
audīverit	audīverint	audītus, -a, -um erit	
		audītī, -ae, -a erimus, etc.	

<div align="center">

PRESENT INFINITIVE

</div>

Active	*Passive*
audīre, to hear	audīrī, to be heard

<div align="center">

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

audiēns, *gen.* audientis, hearing

</div>

532.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

Verbs of the fourth conjugation. The present stem of all verbs of this conjugation ends in -ī.

1. In the present tense, verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from verbs of the **capiō** type in these forms :

Active		*Passive*	
audīs	*cf.* capis	audīris	*cf.* caperis
audīmus	" capimus	audītur	" capitur
audītis	" capitis	audīmur	" capimur
		au dī'mi nī	" ca pi'mi nī

2. The imperfect and future tenses are inflected like **capiō.**
3. The present participle ends in -iēns, as in **capiō.**

4. The present infinitive passive ends in **-īrī**, and has the same number of syllables as the active infinitive.

5. The perfect and pluperfect tenses, active and passive, are formed and inflected like those of all other verbs.

The future perfect tense is given here for the first time. It is formed in the same way in all conjugations. This tense is rarely used before the second year of Latin study, but it is included here in order that you may know that there are six tenses in the indicative.

533. Present Infinitives and Present Participles. Write these forms in your notebook. If you will form a mind picture of them in the order given, and hold that picture in your mind, you will find it very useful.

INFINITIVES

Conjugation	First	Second	Third		Fourth
Active	portāre	vidēre	mittere	capere	audīre
Passive	portārī	vidērī	mittī	capī	audīrī

PARTICIPLES

		First	Second	Third		Fourth
Active	*Nom.*	portāns	vidēns	mittēns	capiēns	audiēns
	Gen.	portantis	videntis	mittentis	capientis	audientis

534.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the tense, mood, voice, number, person or case, and gender of **sentientem, labōrārī, sciēbātur, sēnserāmus, venit, vēnit, sciēmus, docēris, vincēris.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Quae urbs immortālis appellāta est? Rōma urbs immortālis appellāta est.   2. Cūr plēbs urbem relīquērunt? Multīs iniūriīs acceptīs plēbs urbem relīquērunt.   3. Num iūra sua in urbe servārī sēnsērunt? Iūra sua in urbe dēlērī sēnsērunt.   4. Nōnne plēbs in Monte

Sacrō labōrāvērunt? Plēbs ibi cibī inōpiā labōrāvērunt.   5. Cui (*to what*) cīvitātem esse simillimam lēgātus putāvit? Corporī hominis cīvitātem esse simillimam lēgātus putāvit.   6. Potest-ne alterum genus cīvium valēre sine alterō? Alterum genus cīvium sine alterō valēre nōn potest.   7. Quid erat officium tribūnōrum plēbis? Iūra plēbis dēfendere officium tribūnōrum plēbīs erat.

535.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: in the plural **iūs antīquum, tribūnus fortior, reliquae cīvitātēs**; in the singular **officium commūne.**

Write: the present participle genitive singular masculine of **vāstō, petō, ēripiō**; the accusative plural neuter of **augeō, veniō, oppūgnō, remittō**; the present infinitive passive of **sentiō, postulō, relinquō, moneō, ēiciō, regō, compleō**; the third singular passive of six tenses of **sentiō.**

Translate: 1. He felt that the rights of the common-people were-being-destroyed.   2. Mindful of the words of the messenger, they came back to the city.   3. When they heard these words (these words being heard), the common-people thought they could safely (**tūtō**) come-back.   4. Many and fierce were the fights between these two classes.   5. The plebeians will soon realize (**sentiō**) that the state is indeed very-dear to them.

536.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *auditorium, event, jury, office, science,* and *sentiment* derived?

What is the meaning of the English word *plebeian?* From what two words in the vocabulary is *plebiscite* derived? Find out from your teacher of history what this word means. What sensation is carried to the brain by the *auditory* nerve?

Who wrote "*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*"? What did he mean?

Painting by C. Le Brun

ROMAN FORTITUDE

LXXVI

OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM SEXTUM

DUAE NEGĀTIŌNĒS FORTIUS AFFĪRMANT

The literal translation of the motto is: *two negatives affirm more strongly.* We say " two negatives make an affirmative."

537.   MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA[1]

Horātius, ut super dēmōnstrāvimus, Porsenam et Etruscōs pontem et urbem occupāre prohibuerat.[2] Porsena tamen cum cōpiīs trāns flūmen manēbat. Castrīs positīs, fīnēs lātē vāstābat; sē enim vincere posse [3] Rōmānōs cibō prohibitōs putābat.

Adulēscēns Rōmānus autem Mūcius nōmine, patriae amantissimus, Rōmānōs, rēge Etruscōrum interfectō, hostēs expellere

332

posse exīstimāvit. Itaque hoc cōnsilium cēpit. Gladiō in tunicā cēlātō,[4] celeriter [5] in hostium castra properāvit; ad locum, ubi
concealed
rēx Porsena in mediīs castrīs sedēbat, fortiter appropinquāvit.

Scrībam forte prope rēgem stantem [6] Mūcius prō rēge [7] gladiō
secretary
necāvit. Mīlitēs māgnā vōce scrībam [8] rēgis mortuum esse conclāmāvērunt; cūstōdēs Rōmānum audācem comprehendērunt.
arrested

Rēx, scrībā mortuō vīsō, īrā ācriter commōtus est. Ā Mūciō quaesīvit: " Quis es? Cūr tantum scelus commīsistī? " Cui [9] respondit Mūcius, nihil timēns: " Rōmānus sum cīvis. Tē, hostem patriae meae, diū occīdere cupīvī. Id nōn potuī, sed aliī sunt, adulēscentēs trecentī, quī contrā vītam tuam coniūrāvērunt. Semper māgnō in perīculō eris."

Hīs verbīs audītīs, rēx vehementer īrātus, " Tū," inquit, " nisi illōs trecentōs statim nōmināhis, īgne interficiēris." [10] Īgnem
will name
igitur incendī iussit. Mūcius tamen nihil timēns, manum
to be kindled   hand
dextram in īgnem suā sponte tetendit, atque ibi breve tempus tenuit. Tum dēmum Porsena [11] omnēs dolōrēs corporis et animī ā Rōmānīs patriae causā tolerārī posse intellēxit[11]; propter tālis virtūtis amōrem [12] adulēscentem statim līberāvit; lēgātōs quoque ad urbem dē pāce mīsit.

Mūcius, quod manus dextra īgne graviter laesa est, cōgnōmine
was injured   nickname
Scaevolae posteā appellātus est. Laetē iniūriam suam tolerābat
joyfully
Mūcius Scaevola, quod factum suum audāx patriae [13] et cīvibus

fēlīciter ēvēnerat. Cīvēs, memorēs huius clārī factī Mūcium in
had turned out
honōre semper habēbant.

538.   VOCABULARY

īgnis, īgnis, *m.* fire
  (īgni-)
īra, -ae, *f.* anger
dexter, dextra, dextrum right
expellō, expellere, expulī, expul-
  sus drive out

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus
  (-tus) stretch
ācriter sharply
fēlīciter happily, fortunately
fortiter bravely
graviter seriously
lātē widely

539.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Notice the difference in pronunciation between Latin **Mū′ci us Scae′vo la** and English Mucius (Mew′shus) Scaevola (Sev′o la). **Scaevola** means *left-handed.*

2. **occupāre prohibuerat:** *had kept . . . from capturing.*

3. **posse:** infinitive of an indirect statement, with **sē** as subject.

4. **cēlātō:** perfect participle from **cēlō.** What is its use?

5. **celeriter:** adverb from **celer.**

6. **stantem:** agrees with **scrībam,** not **rēgem.**

7. **prō rēge:** *instead of the king.*

8. **scrībam:** subject of **esse;** a masculine noun of the first declension.

9. **cui:** translate *to him,* not *to whom.*

10. **interficiēris:** what is the tense, voice, and person?

11. **Porsena . . . intellēxit:** the order of words in this sentence is the usual one in Latin.

12. **amōrem:** whose love is meant, that of **Mūcius** or of **Porsena?**

13. **patriae:** dative depending on **ēvēnerat.**

540.   FORMATION OF ADVERBS

From adjectives of the first and second declension.

An adverb is formed from an adjective of the first and second declension by adding **-ē** to the base of the adjective, *e.g.* :

Adjective		*Base*	*Adverb*	
lātus	wide	lāt-	lātē	widely
laetus	joyful	laet-	laetē	joyfully
pulcher	beautiful	pulchr-	pulchrē	beautifully
miser	wretched	miser ·	miserē	wretchedly

From adjectives of the third declension.

An adverb is also formed from an adjective of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the stem of the adjective, *e.g.* :

Adjective		*Stem*	*Adverb*	
fortis	brave	forti-	fortiter	bravely
brevis	short	brevi-	breviter	shortly
ācer	sharp	ācri-	ācriter	sharply

The few adverbs formed in other ways should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies. Examples are: **facile,** *easily;* **multō,** *much;* **postrēmō,** *at last;* **prīmum,** *at first.*

541.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **sententia fortis** in the plural; **nōmen immortāle** and **honor summus** in the singular.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis in castra hostium fortiter properāvit? Mūcius, adulēscēns audāx, in hostium castra fortiter properāvit. **2.** Graviter-ne vulnerātus est scrība? Graviter vulnerātus, scrība mox est mortuus. **3.** Occīdit-ne rēx Rōmānum? Rēx Rōmānum nōn occīdit, sed līberāvit. **4.** Quid dē Mūciō iūdicāvērunt Rōmānī? Mūcium dignum esse māgnō honōre Rōmānī iūdicāvērunt. **5.** Timuit-ne īgnem adulēscēns Rōmānus? Īgnem nōn timuit; sine timōre

manum in ignem tetendit.　　**6.** Cūr appellātus est hic Rō-
mānus Scaevola? Scaevola appellātus est quod manus dextra
igne laesa est.

542.　　　　　　　WRITTEN EXERCISE

Form adverbs from the adjectives **clārus, nōbilis, miser,
similis.**

Write: **ignēs multī** and **inōpia gravior** in the accusative plural:
officium difficilius and **īra gravis** in the accusative singular.

Translate: **1.** If the common-people come back (*use future
tense*), they will be more powerful.　　**2.** The action of the
common-people turned-out fortunately.　　**3.** The consul accused
sharply those who wished to destroy the laws.　　**4.** He thought
that the young-man was too-bold.　　**5.** Mucius, as we have
said, replied briefly to-the-king.

543.　　　　　　　WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *dexterity, ignition,* and *tent*
derived?

Give the meanings of the following words derived from **tendō:**
tendon, pretend, tension, intense, attention, extent.
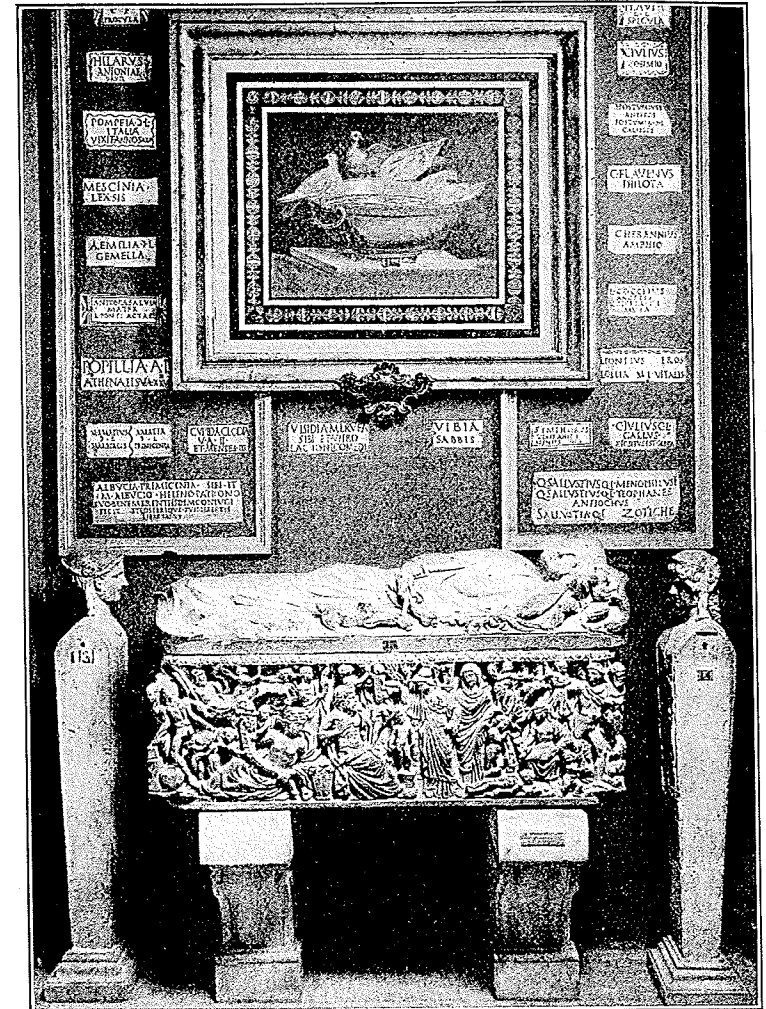
Conservatori Museum, Rome
THE MOSAIC OF THE DOVES

LXXVII

OPUSCULUM SEPTUĀGĒSIMUM SEPTIMUM

AMĪCITIA COLENDA EST, QUĀ NIHIL HABĒMUS MELIUS

We have here the comparative of an adverb, and also an example of the ablative without **quam** after a comparative. The translation is: *friendship, than which we have nothing better, ought to be cultivated.*

544.   RĒGULUS ET SERPĒNS

Rōmānī ōlim bellum cum Poenīs multōs annōs gesserant.
<u>Carthaginians</u>
Postrēmō cōpiās in Āfricam, Rēgulō duce,[1] mittere cōnstituērunt.

Rēgulus, ut posteā dēmōnstrātum est, inter optimōs illōrum temporum erat. Castrīs Rōmānīs in ōrā Āfricae positīs, mīlitēs novō perīculō subitō perturbātī sunt. Nam serpēns ingēns in
<u>huge</u>
castrīs vīsus est. Mīlitēs, perterritī, in omnēs partēs fūgērunt.

Dux tamen, cuius animus melior fuit quam animī aliōrum, sē[2]
<u>courage</u>
fortiter in suō locō tenuit. Ballistam adportārī[3] iussit, quā mīlitēs in serpentem sine perīculō lapidēs[4] iacere potuērunt.
<u>stones</u>
Verbīs et exemplō ducis incitātī, mīlitēs mōnstrum sīc facillimē necāvērunt. Pellis, servāta et Rōmam[5] missa, ab omnibus cum
<u>skin</u>
admīrātiōne cōnspecta est, nam mōnstrum centum vīgintī pedēs
<u>twenty</u>
longum esse dictum est.

Hōc factō, Rēgulus bellum cum Poenīs[6] ācrius administrāre coepit. Cōpiae Poenōrum erant māiōrēs; elephantōs quoque

habuērunt Poenī, quōrum speciēs Rōmānīs fuit terribilis.
<u>appearance</u>
Rōmānī, quamquam artem bellī melius quam hostēs intellexērunt atque audācissimē pūgnāvērunt, postrēmō omnīnō superātī sunt.

Rēgulus, ille dux prūdentissimus et optimus, captus[7] et Car-
<u>to</u>
thāginem ductus, in vincula iactus est.
<u>Carthage</u>

545.   VOCABULARY

bonus good;   melior, melius better; optimus, -a, -um best

māgnus great;   māior, māius greater;   māximus, -a, -um greatest, very great

cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus look at

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, — flee

ācrius more sharply (*adv.*)

audācissimē most boldly (*adv.*)

bene well;   melius better; optimē best (*adv.*)

facillimē most easily, very easily (*adv.*)

omnīnō altogether (*adv.*)

546.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Rēgulō duce:** an ablative absolute. Translate *under the leadership of Regulus.*

2. **sē:** object of **tenuit.** Translate *remained.* What is the literal translation of these two words?

3. **ballistam adportārī:** if **portārī** means *to be brought*, what does **adportārī** mean? A ballista was a machine used to hurl stones.

4. **lapidēs:** object of **iacere.**

5. **Rōmam:** *to Rome.* With names of towns, **ad** is omitted. *Cf.* **Carthāginem,** below, for another example.

6. **Poenīs:** another word for Carthaginians.

7. **captus:** with what does this perfect passive participle agree? Find in this sentence another participle in the same construction.

547. Comparison of Adverbs. From the following groups of adjectives and adverbs learn how adverbs are compared:

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Adj.	lātus, -a, -um	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
	wide	wider	widest
Adv.	lātē	lātius	lātissimē most widely,
	widely	more widely	very widely
Adj.	miser, -era, -erum	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
	wretched	more wretched	most wretched, very wretched
Adv.	miserē	miserius more	miserrimē most
	wretchedly	wretchedly	wretchedly
Adj.	ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
	sharp	sharper	sharpest
Adv.	ācriter	ācrius more	ācerrimē
	sharply	sharply	most sharply
Adj.	bonus, a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
	good	better	best
Adv.	bene	melius	optimē
	well	better	best, very well

548.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

From the illustrations in **547**, the following rules may be formulated:

The comparative of an adverb is the same in form as the neuter accusative comparative of the corresponding adjective.

The superlative of an adverb is formed by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

NOTE: *a.* The comparison of an adverb depends on the comparison of the corresponding adjective, even when the latter is irregular.

    b. Adverbs in the comparative regularly end in -ius.

    c. Adverbs in the superlative regularly end in -ē.

549.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the present and perfect participles of **exīstimō, emō, āmittō, prōcurrō, tendō.**

Decline: **vīs firmior** in the plural; **vir sapiēns** in the singular.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Fēlīciter-ne Rōmānī Rēgulō duce cum Poenīs contendērunt? Nōn fēlīciter sed fortiter Rōmānī, Rēgulō duce,. cum Poenīs contendērunt. **2.** Castrīs positīs, quod perīculum māius mīlitēs vīdērunt? Serpentem centum vīgintī pedēs longum in castrīs mīlitēs vīdērunt. **3.** Quō fūgērunt Rōmānī perterritī? Omnēs in partēs Rōmānī fūgērunt. **4.** Cūr cōpiae Rēgulī omnīnō victae sunt? Propter multitūdinem hostium et propter timōrem elephantōrum cōpiae Rēgulī omnīnō victae sunt. **5.** Quis ācrius quam Rēgulus cum patriae hostibus pūgnāvit? Nēmō ācrius quam Rēgulus cum patriae hostibus pūgnāvit.

550.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Compare these adverbs: **breviter, līberē, similiter, fortiter, lātē.**

Translate: **1.** There the Romans fought much more-boldly than their foes. **2.** The men killed the monster more-easily than they had hoped. **3.** They thought they could capture the commander very-easily. **4.** Many armed men were captured. **5.** Regulus, defeated, was sent to the city.

551.   WORD STUDY

To what word in the vocabulary is each of the following related: ameliorate, benefit, conspicuous, fugitive, magnate, magnificent, optimistic, refuge? Define each of these English words.

The following Latin words are used in English without change of form: bonus, major,* maximum. Such words are called *loan words.* What does each of these loan words mean?

*Note: The proper Latin spelling is māior, but in the Middle Ages the consonantal i was changed in spelling to *j*.

LXXVIII
OPUSCULUM DUODĒOCTŌGĒSIMUM

RESPICE, ADSPICE, PRŌSPICE

This is the motto of The College of the City of New York. Literally, it is *look back, look at; look forward.* It is easy to understand its wide meaning. We might say it tells one to be better than a Janus, because that god looked only backwards and forwards. It might be translated very freely: ' consider the past, pay attention to the present, look ahead to the future.'

552.   RĒGULUS FIDEM SERVAT

Poenī postrēmō longō bellō dēfessī, pācem cum Rōmānīs facere cupīvērunt. Lēgātōs igitur Rōmam ad senātum dē pāce mīsērunt et cum eīs Rēgulum. " Tū," inquiunt prīncipēs Poenī, "cīvēs tuōs pācem facere iubē;[1] pāce cōnfīrmātā, līber eris; pāce nōn cōnfīrmātā, tē hūc revenīre oportēbit." [2] Quibus verbīs [3] prīncipum respondit Rēgulus, " Pāce nōn cōnfīrmātā hūc reveniam."

Adventū [4] Rēgulī Rōmānī māgnō gaudiō commōtī sunt. Multa [5] dē exercitū, multa dē classe, multa dē opibus Poenōrum quaesīvērunt. Rēgulus, quī hostēs esse bellō omnīnō dēfessōs, eōrum opēs parvās et animōs īnfīrmōs esse intellēxit, senātum Rōmānum ita monuit: " Bellum cum Poenīs ācrius gerite; [6] hostēs etiam nunc armōrum,[7] commeātūs, hominum inōpiā labōrant; mox impetūs [8] exercituum nostrōrum sustinēre nōn poterunt; vōs victōriam clāram reportābitis."

342

Senātus, hōc cōnsiliō audītō, condiciōnēs Poenōrum recūsāvit.
_{refused}
Itaque lēgātī et Rēgulus discēdere parāvērunt. Cīvēs vehementer perturbātī multīs lacrimīs Rēgulum manēre hortātī sunt.[9] Is
_{tears}   _{urged}
tamen cōnstanter recūsāvit. " Fidem," [10] inquit, " etiam cum
_{firmly}   _{faith}
hostibus servārī oportet."

Hīs verbīs dictīs, in nāvem cōnscendit. Cīvēs māgnō cum
_{goes aboard}
dolōre illum Rōmānum discēdentem cōnspexērunt, nam ad mortem dūcī scīvērunt. Tum Rōmānī ācriōre impetū [11] bellum gessērunt et post septem annōs pācem secundam cum Poenīs fēcērunt.

Sed Poenī Rēgulum revenientem verbīs ācribus accēpērunt. Ubi eum bellum nōn pācem monuisse [12] cōgnōvērunt, vehementius [13] īrātī, eum crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necāvērunt. Illī [14]
_{tortures}
autem, quod patriam cōnsiliō prūdentī iūverat et fidem suam servāverat, mors fuit nōn miserrima sed clārissima.

553.   VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, *m.* arrival
commeātus, -ūs, *m.* supplies
condiciō, condiciōnis, *f.* proposal
cornū, -ūs, *n.* horn, wing of an army
impetus, -ūs, *m.* attack, violence

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* army
ops, opis, *f.* aid; (*pl.*) wealth, resources
senātus, -ūs, *m.* senate
secundus, -a, -um favorable, second

554.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **iubē:** *urge;* imperative second singular active of **iubeō.**
2. **oportēbit:** *it will be proper.* The subject is **tē . . . revenīre.** Translate *you must return.*

3. **quibus verbīs:** are these words used in the dative or ablative?

4. **adventū:** *at the arrival,* ablative, fourth declension noun.

5. **multa:** neuter accusative plural, object of **quaesīvērunt.** Translate *many things.*

6. **gerite:** imperative second plural active of **gerō.**

7. **armōrum:** this and the genitives that follow, modify **inōpiā.**

8. **impetūs:** accusative plural of a fourth declension noun, and the object of **sustinēre.**

9. **hortātī sunt:** *encouraged,* a passive verb with active meaning.

10. **fidem:** accusative, subject of **servārī.** Translate *faith must be kept.*

11. **impetū:** is *attack* or *violence* the better meaning here?

12. **monuisse:** perfect infinitive active in an indirect statement with **eum** as subject. Translate *learned that he had advised,* etc.

13. **vehementius:** comparative of the adverb **vehementer.**

14. **illī:** *to him.*

555. Fourth Declension.

exercitus, *m.* army (base **exercit-**)
cornū, *n.* a horn; the wing of an army (base **corn-**)

	Singular		*Case Ending*	
	Masc.	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	exercitus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	exercitūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	exercituī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Acc.	exercitum	cornū	-um	-ū
Abl.	exercitū	cornū	-ū	-ū

	Plural		*Case Ending*	
Nom.	exercitūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	exercituum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	exercitibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	exercitūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	exercitibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

556.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Nouns of this declension end in **us** (masculine) and in **ū** (neuter). **Cornū** is the only neuter in common use. Observe that we have studied four classes of nouns ending in -us in the nominative case. Unless you learn the genitive singular of a noun, as well as its nominative singular, you cannot tell to what declension it belongs.

557. Present Imperative Active.

Second Person

Conjugation	First	Second	Third		Fourth
Singular	portā	vidē	mitte	cape	audī
	carry!	see!	send!	take!	hear!
Plural	portāte	vidēte	mittite	capite	audīte

558. The present imperative active. The imperative forms of a verb are used to express commands. The examples given in **557** show that the singular present imperative active is the same as the present stem, *e.g.,* **portā-.** The plural is formed by adding **te** to the singular. This rule for forming the plural holds, except in the third conjugation, where -i- is used instead of -e- before the ending; for example, **mitte** in the singular, but **mittite,** in the plural. Exceptions to the rule for forming the present imperative singular are: **dīc,** *say!* **dūc,** *lead!* **fac,** *do, make!*

559.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: in the plural **reliquus exercitus, senātus dīgnus;** in the singular **cōnsilium fīrmius.**

Give: the singular and plural present imperatives in Latin for *stretch! hold! flee! come!*

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Poterunt-ne hostēs impetum exercitūs nostrī diū sustinēre? Hostēs, nunc dēfessī,

impetum exercitūs nostrī sustinēre diū nōn poterunt.   **2.** Quid monuit Rēgulus? Impetum ācriōrem et exercitum māiōrem Rēgulus monuit.   **3.** Quid dē hostibus nūntiāvit Rēgulus? Hostēs commeātūs inōpiā labōrāre Rēgulus nūntiāvit.   **4.** Accēpit-ne condiciōnēs Poenōrum senātus Rōmānus? Condiciōnēs Poenōrum senātus Rōmānus nōn accēpit, sed recūsāvit. **5.** Mānsit-ne cum cīvibus Rēgulus? Cum cīvibus Rēgulus nōn mānsit, sed suā sponte cum lēgātīs hostium discessit, et Carthāginem nāvigāvit.   **6.** Cūr ibi nōn mānsit Rēgulus? Ibi nōn mānsit quod fidem et amīcīs et hostibus dēbērī iūdicāvit. **7.** Quō modō eum hostēs recēpērunt? Crūdēlissimē eum hostēs necāvērunt.   **8.** Est-ne nōmen Rēgulī māgnō in honōre apud Rōmānōs? Nōmen Rēgulī māgnō in honōre apud omnēs est.

560.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the genitive singular of **tempus, opus, salūs, deus, exercitus, ops;** the nominative plural of **hic liber, haec māter, hoc vulnus gravius, īra ācris.**

Decline : in the singular, **adventus celerior** and **exercitus māior;** in the plural, **ops amplior** and **lēgātus prūdēns.**

Write: as a singular imperative, *stand, teach, throw, know;* as a plural imperative, *demand, choose, withstand, yield.*

Translate: **1.** Urge (*use a form of* **iubēre**) the citizens, ambassadors, to await the arrival of the army.   **2.** Hurl your weapons, soldiers, without fear.   **3.** Hear, Regulus, the words of your friends.   **4.** The general of the enemy wishes to keep (**prohibēre**) our army from supplies.   **5.** Before the arrival of Regulus, the Romans desired peace.

561.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *advent, exercise, impetuous,* and *opulent* derived?
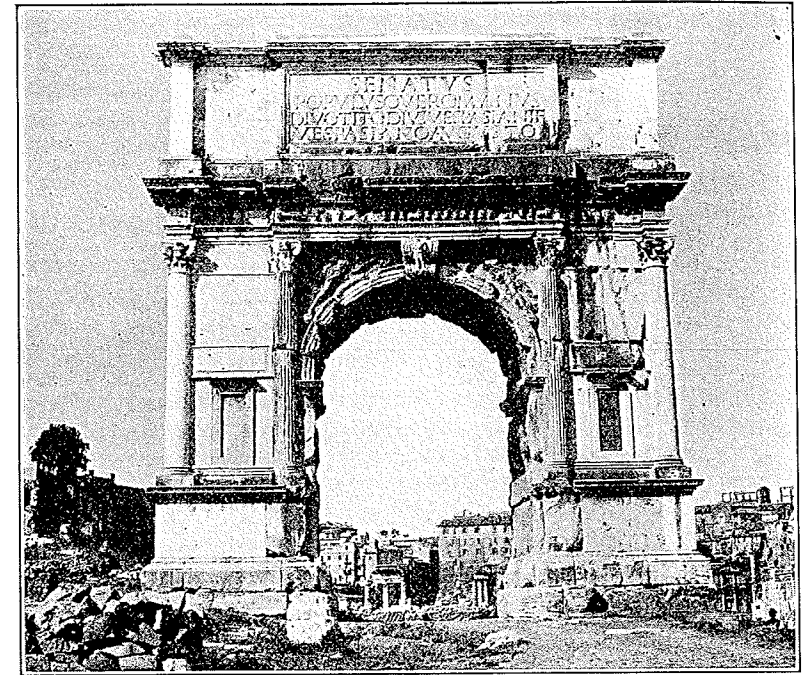
Courtesy of Ralph V. D. Magoffin

THE ARCH OF TITUS

After the death of the emperor Titus a triumphal arch was erected to his memory. It was put up by *The Senate and the Roman People,* as the inscription shows.
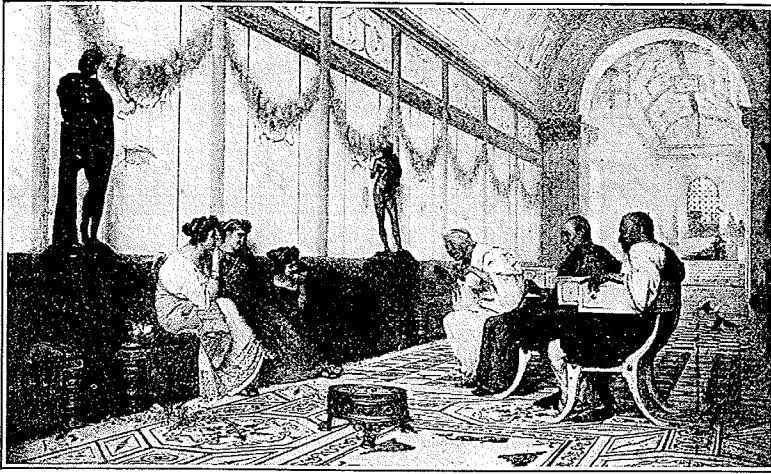
From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

TELLING A STORY

The stretch of vaulted corridor with its painted walls, its ceiling of stucco, and its magnificent mosaic floor makes a good setting for the interesting story being told by the Senator. The charcoal-burning brazier on the floor is exactly like those still in use today in the museums of Italy.

562.   SENĀTUS POPULUSQUE RŌMĀNUS

A LATIN PLAYLET

A comedy in one scene, laid in the atrium of the house of a Roman senator.

PERSŌNAE

M'. Acilius Sura, Rōmānus   Quīnctia, amīca Aciliae
Acilia, fīlia Surae   A. Calpurnius Mīrus
Charis, serva Surae   Decia, māter Mīrī
           Zoe, vestiplica [1] Surae

Locus: Rōmae, in ātriō [2] domī Surae.

[1] vestiplica: A woman slave whose duty it was to keep her master's toga, his formal garment for affairs of state, clean and fresh, and to see that it was draped upon him correctly.

[2] ātriō: The atrium was the large central hall or living room of a Roman house. A feature of it was a large sunken basin for catching rain water, the *compluvium*, set under a rectangular opening in the roof, the *impluvium.*

348

READY FOR A COURT FUNCTION

This is a portrait of an unknown Roman lady, cut in a gem of great value. Her necklace and one earring are clearly to be seen. The style of hair dressing of the early Roman imperial period marks her as one of the ladies of the Court.

Intrat Sura. . Togam gerit.

SURA.	Zoe! Zoe! — Ubi est illa Zoe? (*Intrat Zoe. Timet.*)
ZOE.	Qu — quid est, domine?
SURA.	Toga nōn bene sedet. Celeriter eam cūrā, aut tibi —
ZOE.	Ita, ita, domine! (*Toga cadit. Zoe multā cum cūrā eam Surae induit (puts on). Intrat Acilia.*)
ACILIA.	Ecce, pater togam induit. Quō parās prōcēdere, pater?
SURA.	In senātum. Properā, Zoe! Tempus adest.
ACILIA.	Quid senātus hodiē (*today*) aget, pater?
SURA.	Hodiē senātus populusque Rōmānus multa gravia aget. Tū autem puella es; haec intellegere nōn potes. Zoe! —
ZOE.	Iam cōnfectum est, domine. Nunc bene sedet.

SURA	(*togam spectat*). Id spērāmus! Tardus sum. (*Exit māgnā cum celeritāte.*)
ACILIA.	Valē (*goodbye*), pater! — Discessit. Zoe! Quis est " populus Rōmānus "?
ZOE.	Quid, domina?
ACILIA.	" Senātus populusque Rōmānus." Nōnne ego sum ūna ē populō Rōmānō?
ZOE.	Tū, domina?
ACILIA.	Tū autem serva es; haec, intellegere nōn potes. (*Parat discēdere; intrat Charis.*) Quid est, Charis?
CHARIS.	Quīnctia adest. (*Exit Zoe.*)
ACILIA.	Quīnctia! Bene est! (*Intrat Quīnctia.*) Salvē (*How do you do*), Quīnctia! Valēsne?
QUĪNCTIA.	Semper. Et tū?
ACILIA.	Corpore, ita; animō minimē (*not at all*)!
QUĪNCTIA.	Animō-ne? Quid dolēs, amīca mea?
ACILIA.	Cōnsīde, Quīnctia. Omnia tibi dīcam. Charis!
CHARIS.	Adsum, domina.
ACILIA.	Dulcia (*sweets*) pōne. (*Exit Charis.*) Quīnctia! Quis est senātus populusque Rōmānus?
QUĪNCTIA.	Est Rōma, est imperium Rōmānum, est potestās —
ACILIA.	Id sciō. Cur autem nōs in Forum, in comitia (*assemblies of the people*), in Campum Mārtium [1] nōn īmus? Nōnne Rōmānae sumus?
QUĪNCTIA.	Eho! Intellegō. Etiam ego haec saepe animō quaerō. Cūr omnia virīs sunt?
ACILIA.	Audīvī ōlim (*once*), cōnsule Catōne clārō, Rōmānās in Forum prōcessisse, multa postulāvisse, — et impetrāvisse (*gained*)!

Intrat Charis. Parvam mēnsam et dulcia pōnit. Exit. Acilia Quīnctiae dulcia dat.

[1] The Campus Martius was where voting took place.

From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

OVERWEIGHT DID NOT WORRY ROMAN WOMEN

The Roman lady thinks that as there are more cherries now in the scale pan than there should be, three more will not do any harm, especially as the fruit vendor is looking more at her than at his scale. The girl with a *bulla* on her necklace is not losing any time.

QUĪNCTIA.	Audīvī Rōmānās, temporibus aut perīculī aut bellī, in Forō ōrātiōnēs fēcisse.
ACILIA.	Quīnctia! Cūr fēminae hodiē in Forum, ad Cūriam, nōn eunt? — Timent! Num timēmus?
QUĪNCTIA.	Minimē! Cupiō ad Cūriam stāre,[1] omnia audīre!
ACILIA.	Et ego! Hodiē-ne id cupis?
QUĪNCTIA.	Hōc ipsō tempore!
ACILIA.	Zoe! Zoe! — Hōc ipsō tempore prōcēdēmus! — Zoe! (*Intrat Zoe.*) Duās paenulās [2] portā.

[1] The doors of the Curia, or Senate-house, were often left open, so that those interested might stand outside and listen.

[2] The *paenula* was a long cape or cloak which covered the figure completely. It often had a hood.

ZOE.	Paenulās-ne?
ACILIA.	Ita! — Properā! (*Exit Zoe.*)
QUĪNCTIA.	Quid sī pater tuus nōs vidēbit?
ACILIA.	Nōs numquam cōgnōscet. In Cūriā erit. Timēsne?
QUĪNCTIA.	Minimē! (*Intrat Zoe, paenulās portāns, eās Quīnctiae et Aciliae induit.*)
ACILIA	(*ad impluvium spectat*). Ecce! Avem (*a bird*) videō! Ōmen est!
QUĪNCTIA	(*spectat*). Alba est! Omen bonum est! (*Intrat Charis.*)
CHARIS.	Adsunt Mīrus et Decia, domina!
ACILIA.	Quī? (*Intrant Mīrus et Decia. Exit Charis. Decia et Mīrus Quīnctiam et Aciliam spectant. Acilia paenulam dēpōnit.*) Salvēte!
DECIA.	Salvēte! (*Quīnctiae*) Tū-ne Acilia es?
ACILIA.	Ego sum Acilia. Haec est amīca mea, Quīnctia.
DECIA.	Salvē! — Ubi est pater tuus, Acilia?
ACILIA.	In Cūriam discessit. (*Mīrus Aciliam multō cum studiō spectat. Acilia rubet (blushes).*)
DECIA.	Ita vērō. Senātus hodiē convenit.
MĪRUS	(*Aciliae, parvā vōce*). Acilia! Pulcherrima Rōmānārum es!
DECIA	(*Mīrum non spectat*). Cupiēbam patrem tuum invenīre.
MĪRUS	(*parvā vōce*). Animum meum perturbāvisti!
DECIA.	Decia sum, amīca patris tuī. Hic est fīlius meus, Mīrus. Tū eī spondēberis.[1]
ACILIA.	Ego-ne? Nova dīcis!
QUĪNCTIA.	Cōnstitūtum est. Mīrus autem ad Cūriam nunc īre dēbet. Māgnum studium rērum pūblicārum habet. In senātum ōlim ipse veniet.

[1] "You are to be betrothed to him." Marriages were arranged by parents.

From a painting by E. Forti   *Courtesy of Signora Forti*

A FAVORITE AFTERNOON SPORT

Many Roman ladies owned game roosters and matched them in fights at their homes. These ladies are intent upon the rooster fight, because they doubtless have bets up on their favorite bird. The bronze statue of a faun in the niche between the spouting fountains is a very appropriate decoration as he seems to listen to the comments of the ladies as the winning rooster sinks his spurs into the breast of his opponent.

ACILIA.	Bene!
DECIA.	Reveniam ubi pater tuus domī erit. Valēte!
ACILIA QUĪNCTIA	Valēte!
QUĪNCTIA.	Venī, Mīre! (*Exit.*)
MĪRUS	(*parvā vōce*). Vale cārissima! (*Exit.*)
ACILIA.	Quīnctia! Audīvistīne? Vīdistīne?
QUĪNCTIA.	Et vīdī et audīvī.
ACILIA.	Nōnne pulcher est? Nōnne altus, et fortis, et doctus, et bonus, et —
QUĪNCTIA.	Ita, ita. Dēbēmus autem properāre.
ACILIA.	Properāre? Quō? Cōnsīde. Nōnne cupis dē Mīrō —

Quīnctia.	Nōnne cupis ad Cūriam venīre?
Acilia.	Cūriam-ne? Minimē.
Quīnctia.	Quid!—
Acilia.	Nōnne putās, Quīnctia, vītam mātrōnae Rōmānae optimam esse? Vir eam amat, vir eam cōnsulit, vir —
Quīnctia.	Vir, vir, vir! Venis-ne in Forum?
Acilia.	Zoe! Zoe! (*Intrat Zoe.*) Paenulās cape. Vestīmenta pulcherrima et omnia ōrnāmenta mea hūc fer (*bring*)! (*Exit Zoe.*) Quae ē vestīmentīs meīs Mīrō grāta futūra esse putās?
Quīnctia.	Acilia! Nōnne iam senātum populumque Rōmānum memoriā tenēs?
Acilia.	Teneō; plūs autem possunt senātus mātrōnaeque Rōmānae!
Quīnctia.	Vah! (*Exit.*)
Acilia.	Quid!—Quīnctia! (*Post Quīnctiam properāre parat. Intrat Zoe, vestīmenta ōrnāmentaque portāns.*) Eho! (*Ea spectat.*) Hoc est pulchrum. Haec est vetus — tibi dō, Zoe. Haec palla (*large shawl*) mihi semper grāta est. Putās-ne eam Mīrō grātam futūram esse? Haec tunica (*dress*) autem nōn satis longa est. Venī, Zoe!
	(*Exeunt, vestīmenta et ōrnāmenta portantēs.*)
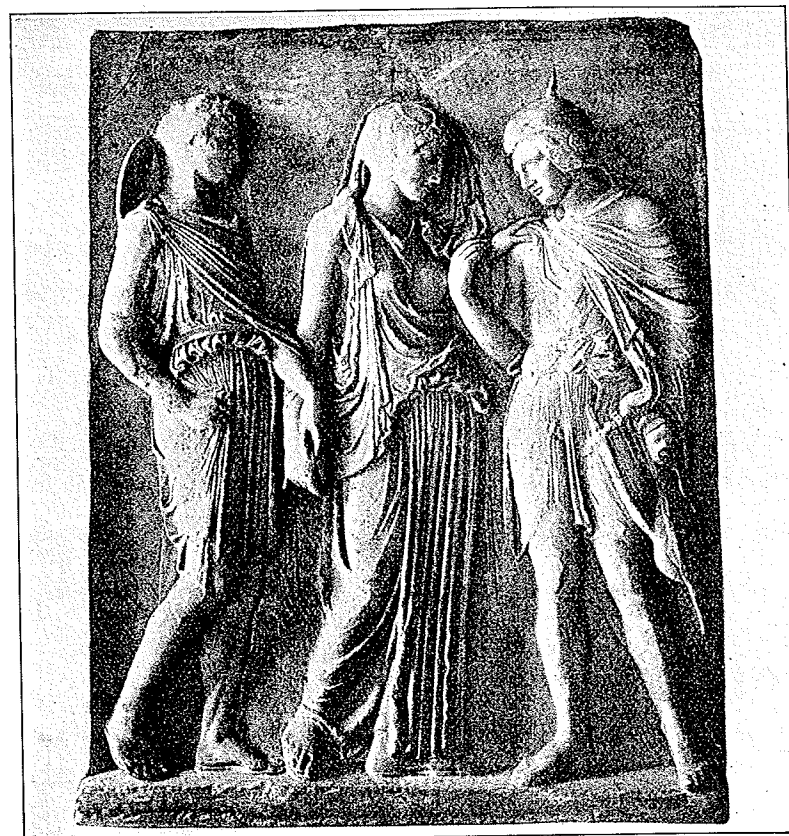
National Museum, Naples

Mᴇʀᴄᴜʀʏ, Eᴜʀʏᴅɪᴄᴇ, ᴀɴᴅ Oʀᴘʜᴇᴜs

Orpheus was so eager to see whether his wife was still following him that he forgot the condition on which he was to regain her from the realm of Pluto. He looked back. Mercury thereupon took Eurydice by the hand and led her back to the abode of the shades of the dead.

From a painting by J. B. C. Corot

Orpheus Leads Back His Wife ·

LXXIX

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒOCTŌGĒSIMUM

563. ORPHEUS ET EURYDICĒ

Ā poētīs nārrātum est Orpheum, citharoedum clārissimum,
ōlim itinere ad Īnferōs factō, uxōrem mortuam, Eurydicēn [1]
nōmine, petīvisse [2]; et eum precibus multīs, lacrimīs, carminibus
multīs et mīrīs deōs Īnferōrum ōrāvisse. Postrēmō, ut nārrātur,
Plūtō precibus [3] eius cessit. " Ēdūc," inquit, " ex hīs regiōnibus
maestīs tuam uxōrem; nōn tamen tibi licet in itinere respicere;
tū respiciēns uxōrem iterum āmittēs."

Poētae nārrant Orpheum tum māgnō cum gaudiō superās ad
aurās properāvisse; post eum Eurydicēn gradibus tardīs ob

356

pedem vulnerātum vēnisse; eōs [4] nunc paene superās ad aurās
pervēnisse; Orpheum māgnō [5] illīus uxōris cārae amōre incitātum, [6]
respexisse. Ecce! Eurydicē statim relāpsa est; mox ē cōn-
spectū virī perterritī ēvanuit. Ille manum eius prehendere
cupiēns, nihil prehendit. Nunc vōx " Valē! Valē!" audīta
est; Eurydicē ipsa āfuit.

Orpheus septem diēs circum rīpās flūminis Stygis casum [7]
crūdēlem dolēns errāvisse dīcitur. Tum dēmum Orpheus maestus
ad superās aurās sē recēpit.

In fābulīs quoque scrībitur Orpheum animālia vincere, [8] saxa
arborēsque facile movēre carminibus potuisse; [9] post multōs
annōs morte crūdēlī necātum · esse; [10] tum dēmum Eurydicēn
āmissam rūrsus vīdisse; nunc in campīs Ēlysiīs semper cum
uxōre cārā errāre et carmina laeta facere.

564. VOCABULARY

casus, -ūs, *m.* misfortune
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* sight
gradus, -ūs, *m.* step
manus, -ūs, *f.* hand
īnferus, -a, -um below;
  Īnferī the lower world

superus, -a, -um upper, above
perveniō, -īre, pervēnī, perven-
  tūrus arrive
prehendō, prehendere, prehendī,
  prehēnsus grasp
respiciō, respicere, respexī, re-
  spectus look back

565. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Eurydicēn**: the accusative, Greek form; in apposition with
uxōrem.

2. **petīvisse**: perfect active infinitive of **petō**, used in an indirect
statement after **nārrātum est**, with **Orpheum** as subject. Translate

it has been told . . . that Orpheus . . . sought . . . Look for other perfect active infinitives used in the same way. For this use of the perfect active infinitive see **567.**

3. **precibus:** dative case used with **cessit.**
4. **eōs:** masculine, but refers to both Orpheus and Eurydice.
5. **māgnō:** with what word does it agree?
6. **incitātum:** modifies **Orpheum.**
7. **casum:** direct object of **dolēns;** *grieving at the . . .* etc.
8. **vincere:** infinitive used with **potuisse.**
9. **potuisse:** infinitive in an indirect statement with **scrībitur.**
10. **necātum esse:** perfect passive infinitive in indirect statement with **scrībitur. Necātum** ends in **-um** to agree in the masculine accusative singular with its subject **Orpheum.**

566. The Perfect Infinitive, Active and Passive

Conjugation	*Active*	*Passive*
First	portāvisse (portāv-isse) to have carried	portātus, -a, -um esse to have been carried
Second	vīdisse (vīd-isse) to have seen	vīsus, -a, -um esse to have been seen
Third	mīsisse (mīs-isse) to have sent	missus, -a, -um esse to have been sent
Third	cēpisse (cēp-isse) to have taken	captus, -a, -um esse to have been taken
Fourth	audīvisse (audīv-isse) to have heard	audītus, -a, -um esse to have been heard
Irregular	fuisse to have been	potuisse to have been able

567.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. You remember that the perfect stem is found by dropping **-ī** from the perfect indicative active, *e.g.,* **portāv-ī.** The perfect passive infinitive is formed by using the perfect passive participle with **esse.**

The perfect infinitive in an indirect statement is used in place of an indicative which, in the words of the original speaker,

was in a tense referring to past time. Study the use of verbs in the following sentences to learn the use of the infinitive in indirect statements.

a. Orpheus is seeking his wife in the lower world, **Orpheus uxōrem apud Īnferōs petit.**

b. They say that Orpheus is seeking his wife in the lower world, **Orpheum uxōrem apud Īnferōs petere dīcunt.**

c. They said that Orpheus was seeking his wife in the lower world, **Orpheum uxōrem apud Īnferōs petere dīxērunt.**

d. Orpheus sought his wife in the lower world, ·**Orpheus uxōrem apud Īnferōs petīvit.**

e. They think that Orpheus sought his wife in the lower world, **Orpheum uxōrem apud Īnferōs petīvisse putant.**

f. They thought that Orpheus had sought his wife in the lower world, **Orpheum uxōrem apud Īnferōs petīvisse putāvērunt.**

Observe that when the verb of the direct statement, **petit,** is in the present tense, as in *a,* the infinitive of the indirect statement, **petere,** is also present, as in *b* and *c.* But if the verb of the original sentence, **petivit,** is in a past tense, as in *d,* then the infinitive of the indirect statement **petivisse** must be in the perfect tense, as in *e* and *f.*

Notice also that the tense of the infinitive is not affected by the tense of the verb of saying or thinking; but depends only on the tense of the original direct statement. In translating from English into Latin, always find out the tense of the original statement; then for the Latin infinitive, use the same tense, *i.e.,* the present infinitive for a present indicative and the perfect infinitive for **any** past indicative.

568.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the accusative plural of **hic cūstōs sapiēns, is locus tūtus, illa condiciō crūdēlis, illud cornū, commeātus, ops, proelium secundius.**

Translate: scīvisse, sēnsus esse, expulisse, fūgisse, cōnspicere, rēctus esse, nāvigāvisse, prōcessisse, cessisse.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid dē Orpheō nārrant poētae? Orpheum uxōrem apud Īnferōs petīvisse nārrant poētae. **2.** Quid dē rēgnō Īnferōrum crēdidērunt antīquī? Nēminem ē rēgnō Īnferōrum revenīre posse antīquī crēdidērunt. **3.** Fuit-ne Orpheus memor verbōrum deī? Orpheus nōn memor verbōrum deī fuit. **4.** Cūr respexit Orpheus? Amōre suae uxōris Orpheus respexit. **5.** Potuit-ne dextram manum uxōris prehendere? Dextram manum uxōris prehendere nōn potuit. **6.** Num dīcunt Orpheum uxōrem ad superās aurās redūxisse? Orpheum casū crūdēlī uxōrem iterum āmīsisse poētae dīcunt. **7.** Quid dē morte Orpheī audīvistī? Orpheum mortuum uxōrem apud Īnferōs rūrsus vīdisse audīvī.

569.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: in the singular, **dextra manus, locus superior, is commeātus, gradus longior;** in the plural, **casus dūrus, iter cotīdiānum.**

Write: the present infinitive active and passive, and the perfect infinitive active and passive, of **recipiō, augeō, mereō, scrībō, trādūcō, retineō.**

Translate: **1.** We know that the sight of his wife was dear to Orpheus. **2.** They say that Orpheus lost his wife by a cruel misfortune. **3.** They thought that they had arrived at (**ad**) a safe place. **4.** They say that he was able to move rocks and to conquer all living-things. **5.** Men said that he had been killed.

570.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *casualty, comprehend, grade, manual,* and *respect* derived?
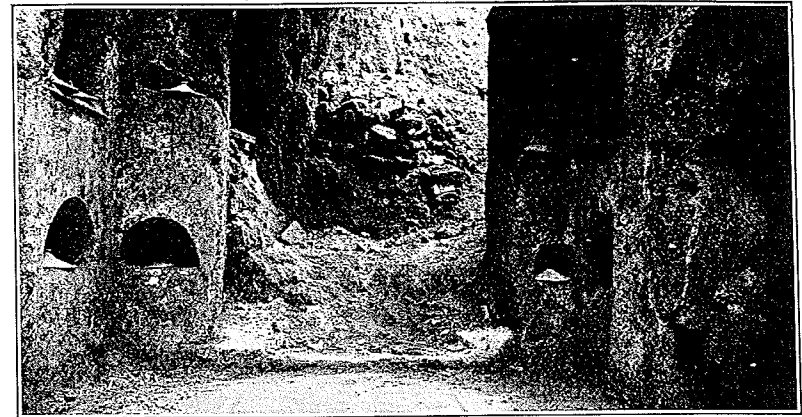
A NEWLY FOUND TOMB

Outside one of the gates of Rome some workmen in digging came upon an ancient *columbārium,* or burial vault. The terra cotta covers in the semi-lunular openings belonged to the urns in which were the ashes of the dead. The urns have been taken to a museum.

What ought *manufacture* to mean, according to its derivation? What ought *manuscript* to mean? What change in these meanings has taken place because of modern inventions?

The English words *inferior* and *superior* are loan words. To what words in this lesson are they related? How does the prefix affect the meaning of **perveniō**?

cum Britannīs pūgnāvit. Multa [10] dē gestīs Caesaris in Britanniā
_{deeds} scrīpta sunt, quae mox legētis. Duōs librōs dē bellō scrīpsit
_{you will read} Caesar, alterum dē bellō Gallicō, alterum dē bellō cīvīlī.

572. VOCABULARY

aditus, -ūs, *m.* approach

auxilia, *n. pl.* reinforcements

Caesar, Caesaris, *m.* Caesar

hi ems, hi′e mis, *f.* winter

legiō, legiōnis, *f.* legion, a body
    of about 3600 soldiers

passus, -ūs, *m.* pace
  mīlle passūs a mile
  duo mīlia passuum two miles

portus, -ūs, *m.* harbor

tempestās, tempestātis, *f.* storm

īdem, eadem, idem the same

īnferior, īnferius lower
  (cf. īnferus)

dē i′ci ō, dē i′ce re, dē iē′cī, dē-
  iec′tus drive down

fere almost (*adv.*)

573. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **auxilia:** plural of **auxilium,** *aid;* in the plural, the meaning is *reinforcements.* **auxilia . . . missa esse** is an indirect statement with **intellēxit.** Why does **missa** end in **a**?

2. **exercitum:** accusative, object of **dūcere.** What is the verb on which **dūcere** depends?

3. **redūcere:** if **dūcere** means *to lead,* what must **redūcere** mean?

4. **septimam . . . decimam:** find the meaning of these words in 574. They are both in apposition with **legiōnēs.**

5. **trānsportāvit:** you should know the meaning of this verb from the meaning of its parts.

6. **mīlia passuum:** remember that the plural of **mīlle** is always followed by the genitive; these words mean literally *eight thousands of paces;* translate *eight miles.* Could a Roman soldier pace 5280 feet in 1000 steps? A Roman **passus** was from right foot to right foot, or *two* steps. **Mīlia** is accusative showing extent.

OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM

ŪNĪ NĀVĪ NĒ COMMITTĀS OMNIA

Don't trust everything to one ship. Our maxim is " don't put all your eggs in one basket "; the German is **hänge nicht alles auf einen Nagel,** *don't hang everything on one nail.*

571. CAESAR AD BRITANNIAM VENIT

Caesar auxilia [1] in ferē omnibus bellīs ad suōs hostēs ā Britannīs missa esse [1] intellēxit. Exercitum [2] igitur in illōs fīnēs dūcere, mōrēs incolārum cōgnōscere, portūs aditūsque īnsulae vidēre, mīlitēs in Galliam ante hiemem redūcere [3] cōnstituit. Duās legiōnēs, septimam et decimam,[4] in Britanniam dūxit.

Hās cōpiās nāvibus longīs trānsportāvit ;[5] equitēs autem eōdem tempore ad alium portum, quī ferē octō mīlia passuum [6] aberat, properāre et ibi nāvēs onerāriās cōnscendere iussit. Ipse cum
_{transports to board} prīmīs nāvibus hōrā quārtā [7] ad ōram Britanniae pervēnit. Hīc ad hōram nōnam [7] in ancorīs equitēs exspectāvit.
_{at anchor}

Intereā equitēs īnsulam capere [8] nōn potuerant. Post quattuor diēs illae nāvēs onerāriae ē castrīs Rōmānīs vīsae sunt ; tempestās tamen māgna eās appropinquāre prohibuit. Aliae [9] ad eundem portum reiectae sunt ; aliae [9] ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae
_{were driven back} dēiectae sunt. Posteā Caesar cum legiōnibus proelia secunda

7. **quārtā, nōnam:** for meaning see **574.**

8. **īnsulam capere:** literally *to take the island;* translate *to make* or *reach the island.*

9. **aliae . . . aliae:** *some . . . others.*

10. **multa:** neuter plural; translate *many things.*

574.   NUMERALS

Cardinals for *eleven* to *twenty-one*

ūn′decim eleven	sē′de cim sixteen
du o′decim twelve	sep ten′decim seventeen
tre′decim thirteen	duo dē vī gin′tī eighteen
quat tu or′decim fourteen	ūn dē vī gin′tī nineteen
quīn′decim fifteen	vī gin′tī twenty

vī gin′tī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī twenty-one

Ordinals for *first* to *tenth*

prīmus, -a, -um first	Compare with	ūnus
secundus, -a, -um second	" "	duo
altera, alterum second		
tertius, -a, -um third	" "	trēs, tria
quārtus, -a, -um fourth	" "	quattuor
quīntus, -a, -um fifth	" "	quīnque
sextus, -a, -um sixth	" "	sex
septimus, -a, -um seventh	" "	septem
octāvus, -a, -um eighth	" "	octō
nōnus, -a, -um ninth	" "	novem
decimus, -a, -um tenth	" "	decem

575. The Pronoun *īdem,* the same. Compare the forms of **īdem** with the corresponding ones of **is, ea, id** as given here. What suffix is used in the forms of **īdem?** In learning these words, pronunciation and accent are to be noticed.

	Singular				*Singular*	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ī′dem	e′a dem	ī′dem	is	ea	id
Gen.	e ius′dem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eius	eius	eius
Dat.	e ī′dem	eīdem	eīdem	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	e un′dem	e an′dem	ī′dem	eum	eam	id
Abl.	e ō′dem	e ā′dem	e ō′dem	eō	eā	eō

	Plural				*Plural*	
Nom.	e ī′dem	e ae′dem	e′a dem	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	e ō run′dem	e ā rundem	e ō run′dem	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	e īs′dem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.	e ōs′dem	e ās′dem	e′a dem	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	e īs′dem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīs	eīs	eīs

576.   TOPICA GRAMMATICA

Review the cardinal numerals, for *one* to *ten,* and read those for *eleven* to *twenty-one.* Observe how the second ten numerals are derived from the first ten. Notice that **decem** is always changed into **decim** in compound words. What is the origin of *-teen* in the word *seventeen?* What is the literal meaning of **duodē-vīgintī** and of **ūndēvīgintī?**

Side by side with the ordinals for *first* to *tenth* are printed the cardinals. Do you see that **tertius . . . decimus** are derived from **trēs . . . decem?**

577.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: in the plural, **reliquae nāvēs, īdem honor.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: 1. Num equitēs in eundem portum vēnērunt? Equitēs in eundem portum nōn vēnērunt.   2. Quī cum imperātōre in Britanniam pervēnērunt? Legiōnēs septima et decima cum Caesare in Britanniam per-vēnērunt.   3. Quōs in ōrā maritimā vīdit Caesar? Eōsdem

Britannōs quī auxilia in Galliam mīserant in ōrā maritimā vīdit Caesar.   4. Fuērunt-ne legiōnēs Caesaris fortēs? Omnēs legiōnēs Caesaris fortēs fuērunt, sed legiō decima fortior fuit quam cēterae.   5. Quantae (*how large*) erant cīvitātēs illīus īnsulae? Parvae erant cīvitātēs illīus īnsulae.   6. Pūgnāvit-ne Caesar fēlīciter cum Britannīs? Caesar cum Britannīs fēlīciter pūgnāvit.

578.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the present and perfect active infinitives of **errō, prehendō.**

Translate: 1. They say that the approach was difficult in winter for a fleet.   2. They marched (made a march) a few miles to another harbor.   3. Caesar and the cavalry (horsemen) did not arrive at (**ad**) the same place.   4. When he had pitched camp (*abl. abs.*), he awaited the arrival of the allies.   5. The Britons often sent aid to Caesar's enemies.

579.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *auxiliary, dejected, identify, pass, port,* and *tempest* derived?
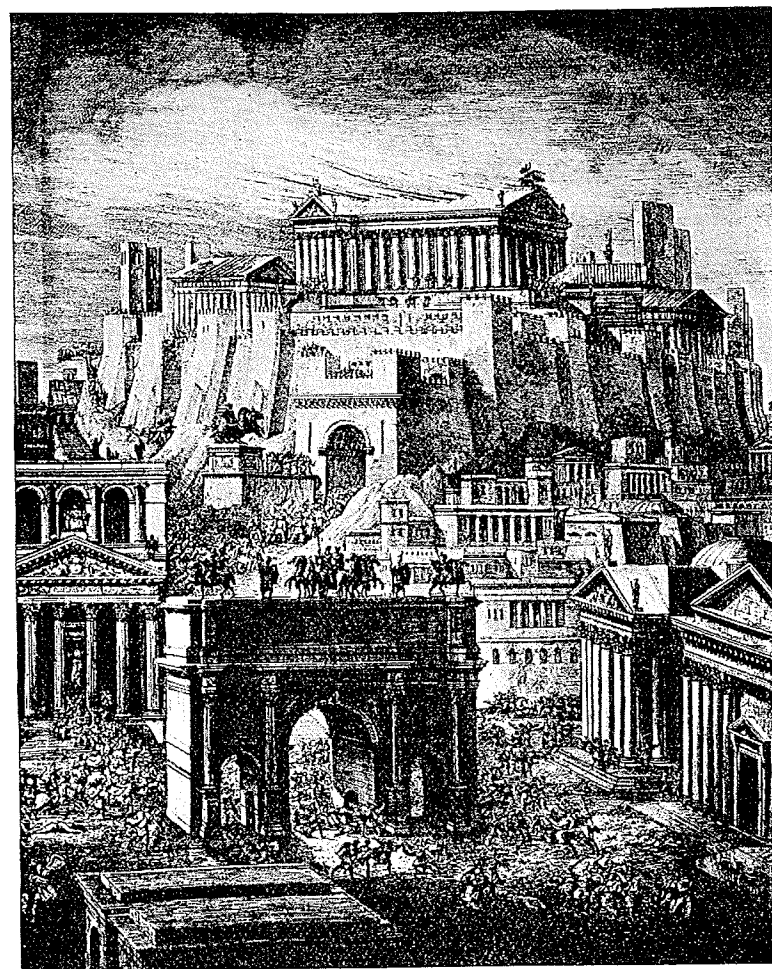
THE CITADEL OF ROME

The citizens of early Rome chose the Capitoline hill for their citadel, *arx.* Here were built temples to their two chief deities, Juno the Adviser, *Iūnō Monēta* (from *monēre*) and Jupiter Best and Greatest, *Iuppiter Optimus Māximus Capitolīnus.* The massive ramparts show how strongly the Romans fortified their citadel.

LXXXI
OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM PRĪMUM

DISCE UT SEMPER VICTŪRUS, VĪVE UT CRĀS MORITŪRUS

Learn as if you would live for ever; live as if you would die tomorrow.

580. TARPĒIA SCŪTA NŌN ARMILLĀS RECIPIT

Tarpēia, puella Rōmāna, cupidissima erat ōrnāmentōrum. Haec animadverterat Sabīnōs,[1] quī illō tempore urbem oppūgnābant, armillās aureās in bracchiīs sinistrīs gerere.[2] Pater Tarpēiae cūstōs arcis Rōmānae fuit; nam in summō colle[3] Capitolīnō fuit arx nātūrā et arte mūnīta. Tarpēia negōtium scelerātum cum hostibus ēgit;[4] eīs[5] enim rogantibus, sē praemiō portās arcis apertūram esse[6] dīxit.

bracelets golden arms left
of the citadel
wicked

"Mihi," inquit, "date id quod in bracchiīs sinistrīs geritis; tum vōs in urbem aditum habēbitis." Sīc illa puella perfida sē armillās aureās Sabīnōrum habitūram esse[7] spērāvit. Sabīnī libenter pollicitī sunt. Itaque nocte clam ad portās accessērunt ubi exspectāvit Tarpēia. Haec, portīs apertīs, praemium postulāvit.

faithless
promised

Sed Sabīnī sē nihil nisi poenam mortemque puellae[8] tam perfidae datūrōs esse cōnstituerant. In[9] Tarpēiam igitur ad portam stantem scūta[10] gravia quae gerēbant in bracchiīs sinistrīs

368

coniēcērunt. Illa vulnerāta et oppressa cecidit et sub saxō altō ē vītā dēcessit. Sīc cōgnōvērunt puellae Rōmānae amōrem patriae meliōrem esse quam ōrnāmenta.

crushed
died

581. VOCABULARY

collis, collis, *m.* hill (colli-)
nātūra, -ae, *f.* nature
cupidus, -a, -um eager for, greedy (*used with gen.*)
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus notice
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus approach

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus open
coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus hurl (*cf.* iaciō)
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify
sub under (*prep. with abl.*)

582. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Sabīnōs:** accusative, subject of the infinitive **gerere.**

2. **gerere:** translate *wore;* a common meaning of **gerō** when used with articles of apparel. What does it mean with **bellum?**

3. **in summō colle:** *on the top of the hill,* not *on the highest hill.*

4. **ēgit:** from **agere;** translate *transacted, carried on.*

5. **eīs:** dative used with **dīxit.**

6. **apertūram esse:** future active infinitive in an indirect statement after **dīxit.** Translate *said that she would open.* What is the subject of the infinitive?

7. **habitūram esse:** future active infinitive in an indirect statement after **spērāvit.** Imitate the translation suggested above for **apertūram esse.**

8. **puellae:** dative of indirect object depending on **datūrōs esse.**

9. **in:** *upon.*

10. **scūta:** *shields* were carried on the left arm by means of a strap on the under side of the shield, through which the forearm was passed.

583. Future Active Participles and Infinitives for the four Conjugations and for the Verbs *sum* and *possum*.

Future Active Participles	*Future Active Infinitives*
portātūrus, -a, -um about to carry	portātūrus esse to be about to carry
vīsūrus, -a, -um about to see	vīsūrus esse to be about to see
missūrus, -a, -um about to send	missūrus esse to be about to send
captūrus, -a, -um about to take	captūrus esse to be about to take
audītūrus, -a, -um about to hear	audītūrus esse to be about to hear
futūrus, -a, -um about to be	futūrus esse to be about to be
possum (none)	(none)

584. STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The stem of the future active participle is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle, *e.g.*, portātus, portāt-. The future active participle is formed by adding -ūrus, -a, -um to the participial stem, *e.g.*, portāt-, portātūrus, -a, -um.

The future active infinitive is formed by using the future active participle with esse, *e.g.*, portātūrus, -a, -um esse.

585. Indirect Statements.

The future active infinitive in indirect statements is used in place of the verb which in the words of the original speaker was in the future indicative.

a. This girl will open the gates. **Haec puella portās aperiet** (*future indicative*).

b. They think that this girl will open the gates. **Putant hanc puellam portās apertūram esse** (*future infinitive*).

c. They thought that this girl would open the gates. **Putāvērunt hanc puellam portās apertūram esse** (*future infinitive*).

Observe: (1) that in *a*, a direct statement, the verb is in the future indicative and that in *b* and *c*, where the statement of *a* is quoted indirectly, the verb is in the future infinitive;

(2) that the tense of the verb of thinking or saying has no relation to the tense of the infinitive; **putant** of *b* and **putāvērunt** of *c* are both used with the future infinitive;

(3) that **apertūram** ends in -am to agree in the feminine singular accusative with **puellam**, the subject of the infinitive.

586. ORAL EXERCISE

Translate: animadversūrus, dēiectūrus esse, perventūrus, auctūrus esse, relictūrus esse, oppūgnātūrus, ēicī, prōcurrēns, retentūrus, imperārī, dēmōnstrāvisse, cessūrus esse.

Give: the ablative singular and the genitive plural of aditus, cornū, hiems, nātūra, officium, tempestās, tribūnus.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid spērāvit Tarpēia? Tarpēia sē nova ōrnāmenta habitūram esse spērāvit. **2.** Quid amābat Tarpēia? Praeter ōrnāmenta ferē nihil Tarpēia amābat. **3.** Fīlia-ne cūstōdis portās aperuit? Fīlia cūstōdis portās aperuit. **4.** Quid nūntiīs hostium dīxit Tarpēia? Nūntiīs hostium Tarpēia dīxit sē praemiō eīs aditum datūram esse. **5.** Quid respondērunt Sabīnī? Sabīnī respondērunt sē eī praemium datūrōs esse. **6.** Quod fuit praemium Tarpēia? Mors fuit praemium illīus puellae perfidae. **7.** Quid dē illā puellā iūdicās? Poenam illīus puellae fuisse idōneam iūdicō.

587. WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write: the future active participle of dēfendō, mūniō, imperō, repellō, mereō; the future active infinitive of ēripiō, emō, coniciō, respiciō, scrībō, moveō; the perfect active infinitive of regō, administrō, prōcēdō, trādō, retineō.

Decline: in the plural, **collis altior**; in the singular, **negōtium gravius, idem aurum.**

Translate: **1.** These legions will march (will make a march) many miles. **2.** They said that the legions would march many
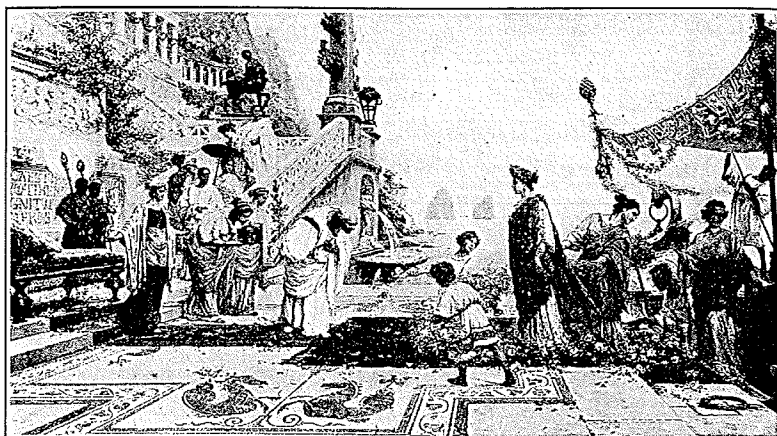
From a painting by E. Forti   Courtesy of Signora Forti

LIVIA PAYS A VISIT TO TIBERIUS

The mother of Tiberius steps from her barge and advances across the rug strewn with flowers. A senator and several of the ladies of the court have come to welcome her and to conduct her up the steps to the villa of her son, the emperor Tiberius, hundreds of feet above on a lofty point of the island of Capri, from where, eastwards, one beheld the magnificent panorama of the Bay of Naples. The rocks in the water in the middle background are supposed popularly to be two of the stone missiles hurled by the giant Polyphemus at the escaping Ulysses.

miles. 3. The Romans thought that the enemy would not approach (to) the gates. 4. They say that they will hurl the heavy shields upon (in *with acc.*) the faithless girl.

588.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *access, ammunition, aperture, conjecture,* and *cupidity* derived?

Find five English words containing the prefix *sub*. Define each.

To what other Latin word is each of the following related: **cupidus, animadvertō, accēdō, coniciō** ?
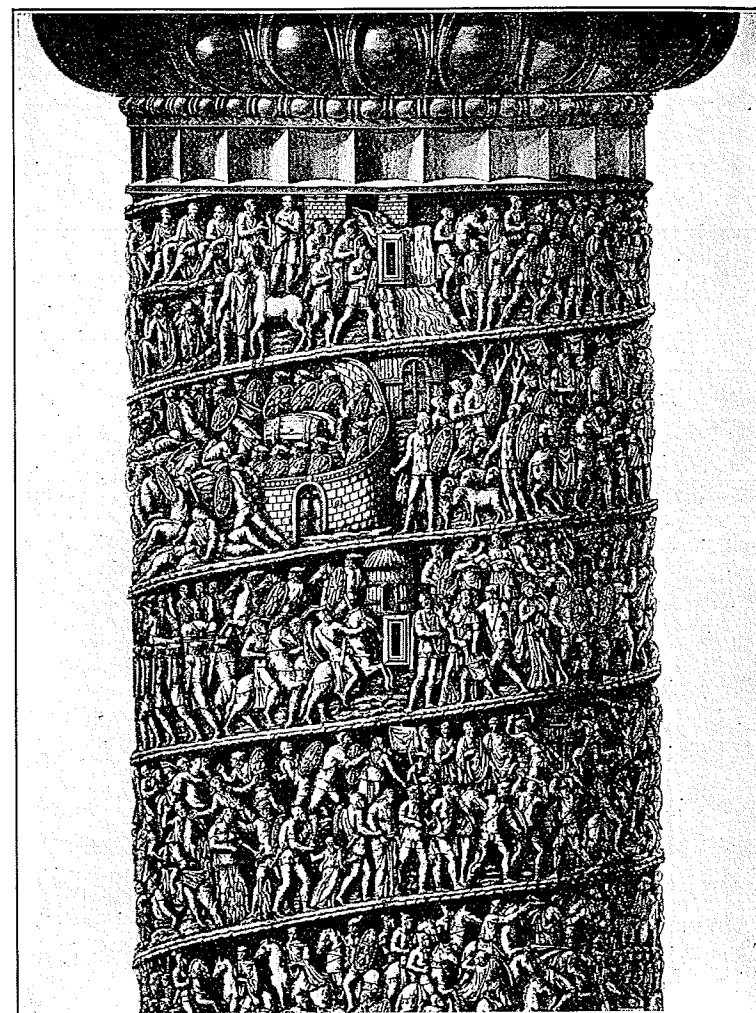
A CIRCULAR MOVING PICTURE IN STONE

The story of the Dacian wars of the emperor Trajan is carved in a spiral band around the column of Trajan in Rome.

LXXXII

OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

589. GERMANĪ IN GALLIĀ

Germānī, ultimīs annīs reī pūblicae Rōmānae, Ariovistō duce,
_{last}
in Galliam, prōvinciam Rōmānam, vēnērunt et in locīs ferā-
_{most}
cissimīs cōnsīdere coepērunt. Gallī, ab Ariovistō oppressī,
_{fertile} _{hard pressed}
auxilium ā Caesare petīvērunt. " Sociī," inquiunt, " vestrī
multōs annōs sumus, et nōmine opibusque reī pūblicae Rōmānae
dēfendī dēbēmus."

Caesar Germānōs fortissimē pūgnāre audīverat sed eōs reī
mīlitāris [1] nōn tam perītōs esse quam Rōmānōs scīvit. Germānī
autem in Galliā erant. Caesar crēdēbat eōs ibi manēre in animō
habēre. Ariovistum ē Galliā discēdere iussit. Ariovistus re-
spondit sē [2] hanc partem Galliae iūre bellī occupāvisse, neque
ex hīs fīnibus discessūrum esse.

Tum Caesar, rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, āgmen multa mīlia pas-
_{provided}
suum dūxit in fīnēs ubi Ariovistus cum Germānīs cōnsēderat.
Hīc,[3] aciē triplicī īnstrūctā, Germānīs potestātem proelī fēcit,[4]
_{triple}
sed illī sē in castrīs tenuērunt. Postrēmō Rōmānī Germānōs
cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcere vīdērunt. Sīgnō datō, aciēs prīma et
secunda impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. Germānī quoque celeriter
cum clamōre prōcucurrērunt.

374

Ā dextrō cornū Caesar proelium commīsit. Multās hōrās
fortiter et ācriter pūgnābātur,[5] sed ōrdinēs hostium perturbātī
sunt, cōpiae repulsae (sunt), in fugam coniectae sunt. Sed ā
sinistrō cornū Rōmānam aciem multitūdine [6] vehementer premē-
bant. Tum dēmum Publius Crassus, adulēscēns quī equitēs
dūcēbat, perīculō animadversō, tertiam aciem subsidiō [7] Rōmānīs
mīsit.

Rōmānī animō vīribusque subitō auctī, impetum novum in
hostēs fēcērunt; Germānī mox in fugam datī sunt; ad flūmen
Rhēnum quīndecim mīlia passuum ab illō locō fūgērunt.
Ariovistus, nāviculā inventā, trāns flūmen fūgit. Tūtus in suōs
_{having been found}
fīnēs pervēnit. Equitēs Rōmānī ferē omnēs reliquōs occīdērunt.
Germānī multōs annōs posteā in suīs fīnibus mānsērunt, neque
cōpiās in prōvinciam Rōmānam intrōdūxērunt.

590. VOCABULARY

aciēs, ac i ē′ī, *f.* battle line
āgmen, -minis, *n.* a column of
    soldiers, army in marching
            order
diēs, di ē′ī, *m.* day
potestās, -tātis, *f.* opportunity,
             power
prōvincia, -ae, *f.* province
rēs, re′ī, *f.* thing
rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae,
      f. provisions

rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.* mili-
      tary science
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.* re-
      public, public affairs
cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōn-
      sessus settle, encamp
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īn-
      strūctus marshal, draw up
premō, premere, pressī, pressus
      press upon
tam . . . quam as . . . as

591.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **reī mīlitāris:** genitive depending on **perītōs;** translate *in military science.*

2. **sē:** accusative, subject of the two infinitives **occupāvisse** and **discessūrum esse.**

3. **hīc:** the adverb, not the pronoun.

4. **potestātem . . . fēcit:** *gave an opportunity.*

5. **pūgnābātur:** literally, *it was fought;* translate *they fought.*

6. **multitūdine:** ablative expressing means.

7. **subsidiō Rōmānīs:** both dative; translate *for a reinforcement to the Romans.*

592. Nouns of the Fifth Declension.

diēs, diēī, *m.*, day (*stem* diē-)   rēs, reī, *f.*, thing (*stem* re-)

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	di ē′ī	di ē′rum	re ī	rē rum
Dat.	di ē′ī	di ē′bus	re ī	rē bus
Acc.	di em	di ēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	di ē′bus	rē	rē bus

593.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

The stems of all nouns of the fifth declension end in **e.** All these nouns are feminine except **diēs** and **merīdiēs,** *midday.* **Diēs** is either masculine or feminine in the singular, but is always masculine in the plural. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the fifth declension that are declined in both singular and plural; all others are declined in the singular but lack some or all of the forms in the plural.

Notice that the only difference in declension of **diēs** and **rēs** is due to the fact that the stem of **diēs** ends in **ē** and the stem of **rēs** ends in **e.** The stems of two other nouns, **spēs,** *hope,* and

fidēs, *faith,* have a short **e** like **rēs;** all others of this declension have a long **ē** like **diēs.**

In translating **rēs** some other word than *thing* may express more exactly the meaning in many sentences. Three idioms containing **rēs** are given in the vocabulary. Notice the genitive. Your teacher will tell you whether you decline them correctly or not.

594. Accusative of extent. We have had in previous lessons many examples of an accusative used to express *duration of time.* An accusative is also used to express *extent of space.* These two uses, extent of space and duration of time, may be included under one title, *accusative of extent.* The following sentences, taken from **589,** illustrate this accusative:

Extent of space: He led the line many miles, **āgmen multa mīlia passuum dūxit.** Find in the story another example of the accusative of extent of space.

Duration of time: The Germans remained for many years afterwards in their own territories, **Germānī multōs annōs posteā in suīs fīnibus mānsērunt.** Find in the story in **589** two other examples of the accusative of duration of time.

595.   ORAL EXERCISE

Give: the dative singular and the nominative plural of **aditus, āgmen, collis, hiems, inōpia, officium, nātūra;** the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **adventus, āgmen, cornū, hiems, tempestās.**

Give: the mood, voice, tense number, and person or case of **īnstruentem, pressisse, clāmantia, īnstruet, īnstruit, cōnsēdistī, cōnsīdentium, imperante.**

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quis Germānōs in

Galliam dūxit? Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, Germānōs in Galliam dūxit.   **2.** Quid Gallī Caesarī nūntiāvērunt? Gallī Caesarī Germānōs agrōs vāstāre nūntiāvērunt.   **3.** Quantae (*how large*) fuērunt cōpiae Caesaris? Māximae cōpiae Caesaris fuērunt.   **4.** Quis erat cupidus potestātis? Ariovistus erat cupidus potestātis.   **5.** Quid nūntiīs Caesaris respondit rēx Germānōrum? Nūntiīs Caesaris rēx Germānōrum respondit sē ē Galliā nōn discessūrum esse.

1. Quī cum Germānīs proelium commīsērunt? Rōmānī, aciē īnstrūctā, cum Germānīs proelium commīsērunt.   **2.** Num Germānī Rōmānōs illō diē superāvērunt? Germānī illō diē nōn superāvērunt, sed omnīnō superātī multa mīlia passuum ad Rhēnum flūmen fūgērunt.   **3.** Praedam-ne Rōmānī petīvērunt? Nōn praedam, sed victōriam Rōmānī petīvērunt.   **4.** Reportāvit-ne victōriam māgnam Caesar? Victōriam māximam Caesar reportāvit, nam Germānī multōs annōs posteā in suīs fīnibus mānsērunt.

596.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: **rēs pūblica** in the singular.

Write: the third singular passive of each tense of **premō**; the future active infinitive of **īnstruō, cōnsīdō, premō, prōcurrō**; the future active participle of **premō, īnstruō, nāvigō, trādūcō, accēdō.**

Translate: **1.** The Germans roamed widely in Gaul.   **2.** The general himself will lead the column into the province.   **3.** He afterwards wrote that the Germans had fled to their villages across the Rhine.   **4.** We know that the enemy will not send messengers to Caesar about peace.
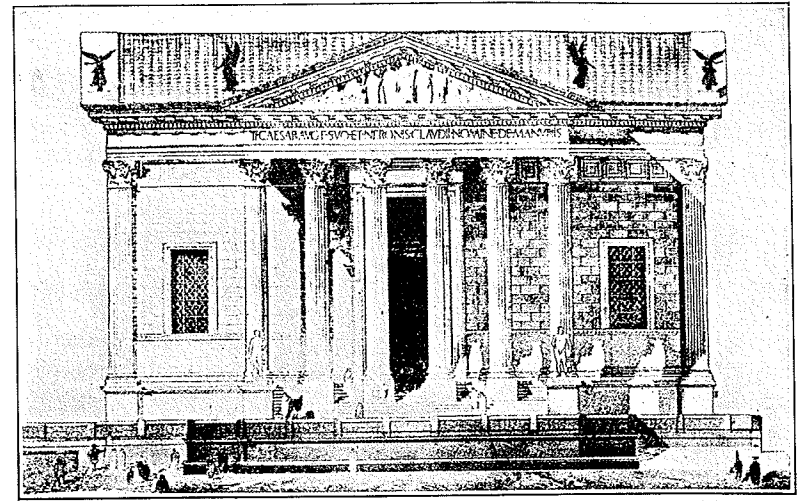
Courtesy of Homer F. Rebert and Henri G. Marceau

THE TEMPLE OF CONCORD

The temple of Concord was first built in 367 B.C. to memorialize the harmony established in that year between the patricians and the plebeians. This reconstruction was drawn by the archaeologist Rebert, and the architect Marceau.

597.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *diary*, *real*, and *construct* derived?

To what Latin verb is each of these words related: **potestās, prōvincia, āgmen**?

From Latin **īnstruō** the word *instruct* is derived. **Īnstruō** means *to arrange things* or *troops of men; instruct* means *to arrange thoughts* or *ideas*. An *instructor* does not *give* his students ideas; he helps them to *arrange* or *put in order* their own ideas and thoughts.
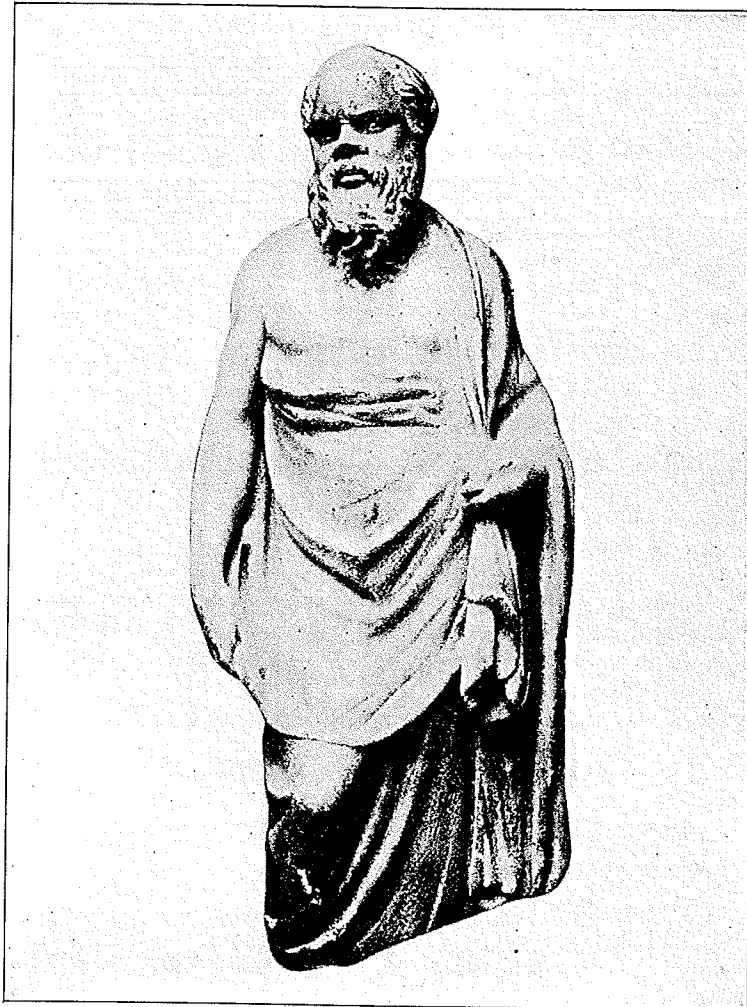
SOCRATES

Courtesy of the British Museum

One of the wisest men of all times.

OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM TERTIUM

598.   SŌCRATĒS SAPIENTISSIMUS

Litterīs Graecīs scrīptum est Sōcratem, optimum et sapien-
tissimum Graecōrum, ā cīvibus crūdēliter interfectum esse.
Speciēs eius māgnī virī erat dēformissima, sed nātūra omnīnō
                                          very ugly
optima et nōbilissima. Cōnsuētūdō eī [1] erat cum adulēscenti-
bus colloquia habēre, eōs multa [2] dē virtūte, multa dē ratiōne
vītae docēre. Praeter cōnsuētūdinem magistrōrum, nihil
                        contrary to   of teachers
pecūniae accēpit.

. Plūrimī grātiā [3] eius et virtūte adductī [4] discipulī esse cupīvē-
runt. Nēmō enim amīcōs meliōrēs, nēmō inimīcōs pēiōrēs quam
Sōcratēs habēbat. Inimīcī postrēmō odiō invidiāque graviter
                                          by hatred   envy
commōtī, eum sceleris accūsāvērunt. "Sōcratēs," inquiunt,
mōribus [5] adulēscentium nocet; deōs quoque nōn colit."
            injures
Itaque cōnsiliō pessimōrum cīvium ille vir bonus et amantissi-
mus patriae ad mortem adductus est. Ille, diē ultimō vītae,
cum amīcīs multa dē virtūte, multa dē vītā immortālī fortiter
atque laetē dīxit. Verba eius nōbilia ā Platōne, māximō Sōcratis
        joyfully
discipulō, cōnscrīpta et nōbīs in librīs trādita sunt.

599.   VOCABULARY

cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, *f.* custom   littera, -ae, letter (of the alphabet);
grātia, -ae, *f.* charm; (*pl.*) thanks   (*pl.*) letter (message), literature
                    ratiō, ratiōnis, *f.* method, reason

600.   NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **eī:** dative with **cōnsuētūdō erat;** literally, *the custom was to him;* freely, *it was his custom.*
2. **eōs multa:** two accusatives both objects of **docēre.**
3. **grātiā:** ablative expressing cause.
4. **adductī:** with what does this participle agree?
5. **mōribus: nocēre** is used with the dative, not with the accusative.

601. Adjectives of Irregular Comparison.

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
māgnus, -a, -um great	māior, māius greater	māximus, -a, -um greatest
malus, -a, -um bad	pēior, pēius worse	pessimus, -a, -um worst
multus, -a, -um much	—— plūs more	plūrimus, -a, -um most
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus less	minimus, -a, -um least

The irregularity in comparison consists in the fact that in each case the comparative and superlative are not formed from the stem of the positive.

602. Declension of *plūs*, more.

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs, īs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Compare this declension with that of **audācior in 497,** and tell in what cases the declension of **plūs** differs from that of other comparatives.

The singular neuter of **plūs** is usually treated like a noun and is followed by the genitive case; *e.g.,* **Sōcratēs plūs virtūtis quam**

pecūniae habēbat, *Socrates had more virtue than money* (literally, *Socrates had more of virtue than of money*).

603.   STUDIUM GRAMMATICUM

Adjectives of irregular comparison. You will find in **601** a group of adjectives whose comparative and superlative are formed irregularly. Because these forms are used often, they should be learned thoroughly. They are all declined regularly except **plūs.**

604.   ORAL EXERCISE

Decline: **sententia melior** and **rēs frūmentāria** in the singular; **cīvitās māior** in the plural.

Question and Quick Answer Practice: **1.** Quid dē Sōcrate ē litterīs Graecīs cōgnōvimus? Sōcratem fuisse virum optimum ē litterīs Graecīs cōgnōvimus. **2.** Quem iūdicāvit Sōcratēs vītam optimam agere? Virum bonum et fortem vītam optimam agere iūdicāvit Sōcratēs. **3.** Quis plūs virtūtis quam Sōcratēs habuit? Nēmō plūs virtūtis quam Sōcratēs habuit. **4.** Quis dīgnior fuit quam Sōcratēs vītā longā? Nēmō dīgnior fuit quam Sōcratēs vītā longā. **5.** Cūr interfectus est hic vir sapiēns et bonus? Cōnsiliō pessimō hominum crūdēlium hic vir interfectus est. **6.** Quis verba eius servāvit? Platō, discipulus eius māximus et clārissimus, verba eius servāvit.

605.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Decline: in the singular, **grātia māior, ratiō melior;** in the plural, **casus pēior, castra minōra.**

Write: in the genitive and accusative plural, **iūdex melior, classis māxima, officium pūblicum, rēs mīlitāris, cōnsuētūdō bona;** in the nominative and dative plural, **vir prūdentior, potestās superior, āgmen longius, prōvincia māior.**
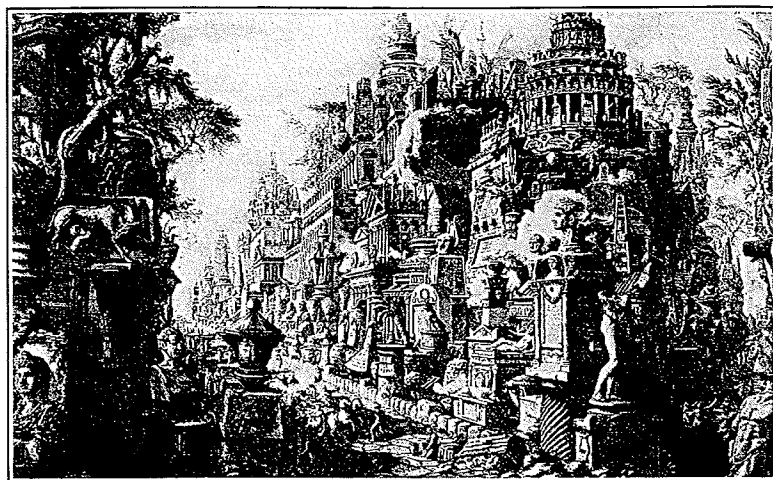
From an engraving by Piranesi · THE QUEEN OF ROADS ·

The Appian Way was often called the Queen of roads, rēgīna viārum. This is one
of the best of the restorations made by the Italian engraver Piranesi.

Write: the future active infinitive and present active participle
of **mūniō**; the perfect active infinitive and the perfect passive
infinitive of **aperiō**; the present passive infinitive of **premō**.

Translate: **1.** They say that this good man was loved by almost
all the citizens. **2.** Socrates, moved by love of virtue, taught
the young-men a good way of life. **3.** Socrates said that death
was not a disaster. **4.** His nature was very noble.

606.   WORD STUDY

From what words in the vocabulary are *gratitude, literary,* and
rational derived?

Plus, minor, minus, minimum are all loan words. Use each one
in an English sentence.

What is the difference between a *majority* and a *plurality?* Do
you know the difference between a *major* scale and a *minor* scale in
music? Why are boys and girls under twenty-one called *minors?*

OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM QUĀRTUM

WORD STUDY

607. Faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make, do.

Find ten English words derived from **faciō** and write these words
with their meanings in your notebook. Observe that Latin verbs
derived from **faciō** usually change -fac- to -fic- and -fact- to -fect-,
e.g., **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus,** *accomplish.* Therefore
the English derivatives of **faciō** may contain one of these four stems:
-fac-, -fic-, -fact-, -fect-. What vowel changes have taken place?

The same vowel changes take place in compounds of **capere** and
iacere.

608.   WORD RELATIONSHIPS

To what Latin word or words is each of the following related?
Learn the meaning of any one of these words that you do not know.

advent	comprehension	cupidity	irascible
optimist	pessimist	sentiment	conjecture
grace	benefactor	jurisprudence	literary

Note the stem and the prefix or suffix of the following Latin
words, and then write what you think is their meaning.

altitūdō	dēcurrō	importō	obiciō
amplitūdō	dēfēnsor	īnscientia	perfugium
circumveniō	dispōnō	invictus	perspiciō
convincō	error	laetitia	vēritās

609. It may interest you to know that the French noun **fait** (*act*)
comes from the Latin verb stem **fact-,** and that, therefore, from the

Latin **fact-** we get two words, *fact* and *feat*. *Fact* came into English from Latin but *feat* came into English *via* the French. Do you remember why there are words in English that came from Latin by the French route?

610.   OPTIONAL WORD STUDY

Define the following words derived from **faciō**, showing that each one contains the idea of *making* or *doing:* factor, fiction, proficient, scientific, imperfection.

<div align="center">

LXXXV

OPUSCULUM OCTŌGĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

ADVĒNIMUS   REITERANDUM EST   PRŌCĒDĀMUS

</div>

611.   ORAL EXERCISE

1. Conjugate **audiō** in the present tense active and passive; **sciō** in the imperfect tense active and passive; **veniō** in the future active and passive.   **2.** Give the principal parts of **sentiō, reveniō, mūniō, aperiō, fugiō.**   **3.** Which of the verbs in 2 does not belong to the fourth conjugation?   **4.** Give the nominative singular of the present participle of **perveniō, īnstruō, labōrō, dēleō, accēdō, dēiciō, tendō.**   **5.** Give the perfect infinitive active and passive of **animadvertō, īnstruō, coniciō, premō, retineō.**

1. Give the Latin for the following expressions, both in the singular and plural: hear! look back! toil! depart! fear! make! command!   **2.** What three imperative forms are irregular?   **3.** Give the future active participle and the future active infinitive of **expellō, respiciō, dēbeō, prohibeō, prehendō.**   **4.** Form an adverb from **brevis, grātus, pulcher.** Compare each adverb.   **5.** What is the method of forming

adverbs from (*a*) adjectives of the first and second declensions; (*b*) adjectives of the third declension?

1. What is the rule for comparing adverbs?   **2.** Compare the adjectives: **māior, pessimus, plūs, bonus, cupidus.**   **3.** Compare the adverbs **ācerrimē, melius, fēlīciter, lātē, gravius.**   **4.** What comparative adjective is declined irregularly?   **5.** Give an example of the use of this adjective as a noun.   **6.** To what declension does **exercitus** belong?   **7.** Give the genitive singular and plural, and the accusative singular and plural of **exercitus, gradus, commeātus, potestās.**   **8.** What is the gender of most nouns of the fourth declension? Name two nouns of this declension the gender of which is different.   **9.** What are the two most used nouns of the fifth declension?   **10.** Give the accusative and ablative singular, and the ablative plural of these two nouns.

1. Give examples in English and Latin of cardinal and ordinal numerals.   **2.** How do you translate: eighteen horsemen; on the fifth day; for twelve days; in the eighth year; twenty miles?   **3.** What is meant by the accusative of extent? Illustrate by English sentences.   **4.** Tell what tense and voice of the infinitive should be used in translating each of the following sentences:

  a. They say that he sent messengers to the king.
  b. I thought that they would return to the city.
  c. The Gauls said that their fields had been ravaged.
  d. The messenger said that his people needed help.

612.   WRITTEN EXERCISE

Write the accusative singular and the genitive plural of: **adventus, āgmen, cōnsuētūdō, gradus, hiems, iter, prōvincia, tribūnus.**

Decline: **melior rēs pūblica, manus eadem, fortūna pēior** in the singular; **māximae opēs, litterae breviōrēs, eīdem vīcī, nātūra fortis** in the plural.

Write the present infinitive active and passive of **premō;** the perfect infinitive active and passive of **aperiō;** the future infinitive active of

sentiō and nāvigō; the present and future active participles of veniō; the perfect passive participle of mūniō and dēiciō.

Translate into Latin the italicized words:

1. He saw that *almost all the soldiers were fighting very bravely.*
2. *Marshal* the *battle-line,* lieutenant, and *begin* battle! **3.** They thought that *Regulus, led* by love of country, *would remain.*
4. Cicero said that *the republic had been greater* in ancient times.
5. The poets say that Orpheus *wandered many years.* **6.** Regulus told the *Roman Senate* the words of the enemy. **7.** *In the sight of the army* this man was honored *by the general.* **8.** We know that *this man was not eager* for honor. **9.** The king is *too-greedy for (of) power.* **10.** They say that *he led* his wife *to the upper world.*

613.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

Can you give the English equivalents of these Latin verbs? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. aciēs	13. cornū	25. littera	35. potestās
2. aditus	14. diēs	26. manus	36. prōvincia
3. adventus	15. exercitus	27. mīlia pas-	37. ratiō
4. āgmen	16. gradus	suum	38. rēs
5. auxilia (*pl.*)	17. grātia	28. mīlle passūs	39. rēs frūmen-
6. Caesar	18. hiems	29. nātūra	tāria
7. casus	19. īgnis	30. officium	40. rēs mīlitāris
8. collis	20. impetus	31. ops	41. rēs pūblica
9. commeātus	21. inōpia	32. passus	42. senātus
10. condiciō	22. īra	33. plēbs	43. tempestās
11. cōnspectus	23. iūs	34. portus	44. tribūnus
12. cōnsuētūdō	24. legiō		

Adjectives

45. bonus, melior, optimus	51. malus, pēior, pessimus
46. cupidus	52. multus, plūs, plūrimus
47. dexter	53. parvus, minor, minimus
48. īnferus, Īnferī (*pl.*)	54. secundus
49. īnferior	55. superus
50. māgnus, māior, māximus	

Pronoun

56. īdem

Verbs

57. accēdō	63. cōnspiciō	69. mūniō	74. reveniō
58. animadvertō	64. dēiciō	70. perveniō	75. sciō
59. aperiō	65. expellō	71. prehendō	76. sentiō
60. audiō	66. fugiō	72. premō	77. tendō
61. cōniciō	67. īnstruō	73. respiciō	78. veniō
62. cōnsīdō	68. labōrō		

Adverbs

79. ācriter, ācrius, ācerrimē	82. facillimē	86. graviter
80. audācissimē	83. fēlīciter	87. lātē
81. bene, melius, optimē	84. fere	88. omnīnō
	85. fortiter	89. tam . . . quam

Preposition

90. sub

614.   VOCABULARY REVIEW

What are the Latin equivalents of these words? Learn any you do not know.

Nouns

1. battle line
2. approach
3. arrival
4. column of soldiers
5. reinforcements
6. Caesar
7. misfortune
8. hill
9. supplies
10. proposal
11. sight
12. custom
13. horn, wing of an army
14. day
15. army
16. step
17. favor, charm (*pl.* thanks)
18. winter
19. fire
20. attack, violence
21. lack
22. anger
23. right
24. legion
25. letter (of the alphabet); (*pl.*) letter, literature
26. hand
27. miles
28. mile
29. nature
30. duty
31. aid, wealth, resources
32. pace
33. common people
34. harbor
35. opportunity, power
36. province
37. method, reason
38. thing
39. provisions
40. military science
41. republic, public affairs
42. senate
43. storm
44. tribune

Adjectives

45. good, better, best
46. eager for, greedy
47. right
48. below, the lower world
49. lower
50. great, greater, greatest
51. bad, worse, worst
52. much, more, most
53. little, less, least
54. favorable, second
55. above

Pronoun   56. the same

Verbs

57. approach
58. notice
59. open
60. hear
61. hurl
62. settle, encamp
63. look at
64. drive down
65. drive out
66. flee
67. marshal, draw up
68. suffer, toil
69. fortify
70. arrive
71. grasp
72. press upon
73. look back
74. come back
75. know
76. feel
77. stretch
78. come

Adverbs

79. sharply, more sharply, most sharply
80. most boldly
81. well, better, best
82. very easily, most easily
83. happily, fortunately
84. almost
85. bravely
86. seriously
87. widely
88. altogether
89. as . . . as

Preposition   90. under

615.   REVIEW OF DERIVATIVES

The following are derivatives of Latin words in the vocabularies of *opuscula* LXXV–LXXXIV. Give or write the Latin words from which they are derived. Show for each word how your knowledge of Latin insures accuracy in spelling it.

1. access
2. advent
3. ameliorate
4. ammunition
5. aperture
6. auditorium
7. auxiliary
8. benefit
9. casualty
10. comprehend
11. conjecture
12. conspicuous
13. construct
14. cupidity
15. dejected
16. dexterity
17. diary
18. event
19. exercise
20. fugitive
21. grade
22. gratitude
23. identify
24. ignition
25. impetuous
26. inferior
27. instruct
28. jury
29. literary
30. magnate
31. magnificent
32. manual
33. manufacture
34. manuscript
35. office
36. optimistic
37. opulent
38. pass
39. plebeian
40. plebiscite
41. port
42. rational
43. real
44. refuge
45. respect
46. science
47. sentiment
48. superior
49. tempest
50. tent

Courtesy of the Johns Hopkins Archaeological Museum

MARBLE CINERARY URNS

616. A HISTORY IN EIGHT WORDS

In these three white marble urns with Latin words and letters on them were
laced the ashes of dead Romans. In fact, the ashes are still in the longest urn.
. stone partition divides it into two parts, each of which has a cover. Scientists
ave said that the ashes and partly burnt bones in one part are those of a man,
ad in the other those of a woman.

The inscription consists of five words and three letters. The latter are abbre-
iations of words. Let us read it in its full Latin form:

OELIAE Q(UINTI) L(IBERTAE) ATHENAIDI Q(UINTUS) COELIVS PRIMVS
PATRONVS

Now we shall translate it: *Quintus Coelius Primus, her patron, to Coelia
thenais, his freedwoman.* But what is the story? Here it is: A Roman bought
i a slave a girl from Athens, as her last name Athenais shows. Then he gave
:r her freedom. Then he married her. When she died he had her body burned
id the ashes put in one side of this urn. Then later when he died his ashes were
it in the other side of the same urn. And there, after nearly two thousand years,
e the ashes of these two, who were first master and slave, then patron and freed-
oman, then husband and wife. Thus you see that the story of this man and
oman is told in eight Latin words.

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

NOUNS

1. FIRST DECLENSION

terra, *f.* land

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	terra	terrae
Gen.	terrae	terrārum
Dat.	terrae	terrīs
Acc.	terram	terrās
Abl.	terrā	terrīs

2. SECOND DECLENSION

Singular

	equus, *m.* horse	puer, *m.* boy	ager, *m.* field	vir, *m.* man	oppidum, *n.* town
Nom.	equus	puer	ager	vir	oppidum
Gen.	equī	puerī	agrī	virī	oppidī
Dat.	equō	puerō	agrō	virō	oppidō
Acc.	equum	puerum	agrum	virum	oppidum
Abl.	equō	puerō	agrō	virō	oppidō

Plural

	equī	puerī	agrī	virī	oppida
Nom.	equī	puerī	agrī	virī	oppida
Gen.	equōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	oppidōrum
Dat.	equīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	oppidīs
Acc.	equōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	oppida
Abl.	equīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	oppidīs

THIRD DECLENSION

3. (1) CONSONANT STEMS

a. MASCULINE AND FEMININE

dux, *m.* leader	cōnsul, *m.* consul	ōrātor, *m.* orator	lēx, *f.* law	ōrātiō, *f.* speech

i

a. MASCULINE AND FEMININE

Singular

Nom.	dux	cōnsul	ōrātor	lēx	ōrātiō
Gen.	ducis	cōnsulis	ōrātōris	lēgis	ōrātiōnis
Dat.	ducī	cōnsulī	ōrātōrī	lēgī	ōrātiōnī
Acc.	ducem	cōnsulem	ōrātōrem	lēgem	ōrātiōnem
Abl.	duce	cōnsule	ōrātōre	lēge	ōrātiōne

Plural

Nom.	ducēs	cōnsulēs	ōrātōrēs	lēgēs	ōrātiōnēs
Gen.	ducum	cōnsulum	ōrātōrum	lēgum	ōrātiōnum
Dat.	ducibus	cōnsulibus	ōrātōribus	lēgibus	ōrātiōnibus
Acc.	ducēs	cōnsulēs	ōrātōrēs	lēgēs	ōrātiōnēs
Abl.	ducibus	cōnsulibus	ōrātōribus	lēgibus	ōrātiōnibus

b. NEUTER

flūmen, n. river   corpus, n. body

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	flūmen	flūmina	corpus	corpora
Gen.	flūminis	flūminum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	flūminī	flūminibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	flūmen	flūmina	corpus	corpora
Abl.	flūmine	flūminibus	corpore	corporibus

4. (2) I-STEMS

a. MASCULINE AND FEMININE   b. NEUTER

Singular   *Singular*

cīvis, m. citizen   urbs, f. city   animal, n. animal   mare, n. sea

Nom.	cīvis	urbs	animal	mare
Gen.	cīvis	urbis	animālis	maris
Dat.	cīvī	urbī	animālī	marī
Acc.	cīvem	urbem	animal	mare
Abl.	cīve	urbe	animālī	marī

Plural   *Plural*

Nom.	cīvēs	urbēs	animālia	maria
Gen.	cīvium	urbium	animālium	——
Dat.	cīvibus	urbibus	animālibus	maribus
Acc.	cīvēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	animālia	maria
Abl.	cīvibus	urbibus	animālibus	maribus

5. (3) NOUNS OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION

	vīs, f. strength	iter, n. road	senex, m. old man	Iuppiter, m. Jupiter	nēmō, m. no one

Singular

Nom.	vīs	iter	senex	Iuppiter	nēmō
Gen.	vīs	itineris	senis	Iovis	nūllīus
Dat.	vī	itinerī	senī	Iovī	nēminī
Acc.	vim	iter	senem	Iovem	nēminem
Abl.	vī	itinere	sene	Iove	nūllō

Plural

Nom.	vīrēs	itinera	senēs	——	——
Gen.	vīrium	itinerum	senum	——	——
Dat.	vīribus	itineribus	senibus	——	
Acc.	vīrēs, -īs	itinera	senibus	——	——
Abl.	vīribus	itineribus	senēs	——	——

6. FOURTH DECLENSION

	exercitus, m. exercise	*domus, f. house	cornū, n. horn

Singular

Nom.	exercitus	domus	cornū
Gen.	exercitūs	domūs, -ī	cornūs
Dat.	exercituī	domuī, -ō	cornū
Acc.	exercitum	domum	cornū
Abl.	exercitū	domū, -ō	cornū

Plural

Nom.	exercitūs	domūs	cornua
Gen.	exercituum	domuum, -ōrum	cornuum
Dat.	exercitibus	domibus	cornibus
Acc.	exercitūs	domūs, -ōs	cornua
Abl.	exercitibus	domibus	cornibus

7. FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs, m. day   rēs, f. thing

	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

*Domus has five forms belonging to the second declension in addition to the regular fourth-declension forms.

ADJECTIVES

8.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

a. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -US, -A, -UM

lātus wide

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Gen.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat.	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Abl.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

b. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER, -ERA, -ERUM

līber free

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

c. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER, -RA, -RUM

pulcher beautiful

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	puchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

9.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

ācer keen, sharp

| | *Singular* | | | *Plural* | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

b. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis all

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs, -īs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

c. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

audāx bold

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs, -īs	audācia
Abl.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

potēns powerful

| | *Singular* | | *Plural* | |
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -īs	potentia
Abl.	potentī, -e	potentī, -e	potentibus	potentibus

10.   DECLENSION OF PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

portāns carrying

	Singular			*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*		*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	portāns	portāns	*Nom.*	portantēs	portantia
Gen.	portantis	portantis	*Gen.*	portantium	portantium
Dat.	portantī	portantī	*Dat.*	portantibus	portantibus
Acc.	portantem	portāns	*Acc.*	portantēs, -īs	portantia
Abl.	portante, -ī	portante, -ī	*Abl.*	portantibus	portantibus

11.   ADJECTIVES OF SPECIAL DECLENSION

vetus old

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

ūnus one

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	unō

duo two

	Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs three

	Plural	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*
Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

plūs more

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——.	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

mīlle thousand

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	mīlle	mīlibus

12.   REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus, -a, -um wide	lātior, latius wider	lātissimus, -a, -um widest
fortis, -e brave	fortior, fortius braver	fortissimus, -a, -um bravest
audāx bold	audācior, audācius bolder	audācissimus, -a, -um boldest
potēns powerful	potentior, potentius more powerful	potentissimus, -a, -um most powerful
līber, -era, -erum free	līberior, līberius freer	līberrimus, -a, -um freest
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful	pulchrior, pulchrius more beautiful	pulcherrimus, -a, -um most beautiful
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp	ācrior, ācrius sharper	ācerrimus, -a, -um sharpest

13.   DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

audācior bolder

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*	*Masc. or Fem.*	*Neuter*
Nom.	audācior	audācius	audāciōrēs	audāciōra
Gen.	audāciōris	audāciōris	audāciōrum	audāciōrum
Dat.	audāciōrī	audāciōrī	audāciōribus	audāciōribus
Acc.	audāciōrem	audācius	audāciōrēs	audāciōra
Abl.	audāciōre	audāciōre	audāciōribus	audāciōribus

14.   IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
malus, -a, -um bad	pēior, pēius worse	pessimus, -a, -um worst
māgnus, -a, -um great	māior, māius greater	māximus, -a, -um greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus smaller	minimus, -a, -um smallest
multus, -a, um much	——, plūs more	plūrimus, -a, -um most
facilis, -e easy	facilior, facilius easier	facillimus, -a, -um easiest
difficilis, -e hard	difficilior, difficilius harder	difficillimus, -a, -um hardest
similis, -e like	similior, similius more like	simillimus, -a, -um most like
dissimilis, -e unlike	dissimilior, dissimilius more unlike	dissimillimus, -a, -um most unlike

ADVERBS

15.   REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lātē widely	lātius	lātissimē
miserē miserably	miserius	miserrimē
pulchrē beautifully	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter bravely	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter sharply	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile easily	facilius	facillimē

16.   IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bene well	melius better	optimē best
male badly	pēius worse	pessimē worst
māgnopere greatly	māgis more	māximē most
multum much	plūs more	plūrimum most
parum little	minus less	minimē least
diū long (in time)	diūtius longer	diūtissimē longest
prope near	propius nearer	proximē next
saepe often	saepius oftener	saepissimē oftenest

17.   ## NUMERALS

ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
	ūnus, -a, -um one	prīmus, -a, -um first
I	duo, duae, duo two	secundus, -a, -um; or alter, altera, alterum second
II	trēs, tria three	tertius, -a, -um third
IV	quattuor four	quārtus, -a, -um fourth
V	quīnque five	quīntus, -a, -um fifth
VI	sex etc.	sextus etc.
VII	septem	septimus
VIII	octō	octāvus
IX	novem	nōnus
X	decem	decimus
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus

ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI	vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus
XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgesimus
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
C	centum	centēsimus
CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus prīmus
CXXI	centum vīgintī ūnus	centēsimus vīcēsimus prīmus
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
CCC	trecentī	trecentēsimus
CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
D	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
DC	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus
DCC	septingentī	septingentēsimus
DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsimus
DCCCC	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
M	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MC	mīlle centum	mīllēsimus centēsimus
MM	duo mīlia	bis (= twice) mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

18.   ### PERSONAL

is, ea, id   he, she, it, etc.   For declension, see Section **21.**

	ego I			tū you	
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum, -trī		tuī	vestrum, -trī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs

19. POSSESSIVE

Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	
meus	mea	meum	my, mine
tuus	tua	tuum	your, yours
suus	sua	suum	his (own), her (own), its (own)
noster	nostra	nostrum	our, ours
vester	vestra	vestrum	your, yours
suus	sua	suum	their (own), theirs

NOTE. The vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

20. REFLEXIVE

suī of himself, etc.

Singular	Plural
suī	suī
sibi	sibi
sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

21. DEMONSTRATIVE

is this, that, he, she, it

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

hic this

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille that

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

īdem the same

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

22. INTENSIVE

ipse self

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

23. RELATIVE

quī who, which, that

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

24. <center>INTERROGATIVE</center>

<center>quis who which what</center>
<center>*Singular*</center>

	Masc. or Fem.	*Neuter*
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative quis is like that of the relative quī.

REGULAR VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

<center>portō carry</center>

Principal Parts: portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus
Stems: portā-, portāv-, portāt-

<center>INDICATIVE</center>

Active   *Passive*

<center>PRESENT TENSE</center>

I carry, am carrying, etc.   I am carried, etc.

ortō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
ortās	portātis	portāris	portāminī
ortat	portant	portātur	portantur

<center>IMPERFECT TENSE</center>

I carried, was carrying, etc.   I was carried, etc.

ortābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
ortābās	portābātis	portābāris	portābāminī
ortābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur

<center>FUTURE TENSE</center>

I shall carry, etc.   I shall be carried, etc.

ortābō	portābimus	portābor	portābimur
ortābis	portābitis	portāberis	portābiminī
ortābit	portābunt	portābitur	portābuntur

<center>PERFECT TENSE</center>

I have carried, I carried, etc.   I have been (was) carried, etc.

ortāvī	portāvimus	portātus,	sum	portātī,
ortāvistī	portāvistis	-a, -um	es	-ae, -a
ortāvit	portāvērunt		est	

portātī, -ae, -a { sumus / estis / sunt }

<center>PLUPERFECT TENSE</center>

I had carried, etc.   I had been carried, etc.

portāveram	portāverāmus	portātus,	eram	portātī,	erāmus
portāverās	portāverātis	-a, -um	erās	-ae, -a	erātis
portāverat	portāverant		erat		erant

<center>FUTURE PERFECT TENSE</center>

I shall have carried, etc.   I shall have been carried, etc.

portāverō	portāverimus	portātus,	erō	portātī,	erimus
portāveris	portāveritis	-a, -um	eris	-ae, -a	eritis
portāverit	portāverint		erit		erunt

<center>IMPERATIVE</center>

<center>PRESENT TENSE</center>

<center>portā carry thou</center>
<center>portāte carry ye</center>

<center>INFINITIVE</center>

Pres.	portāre to carry	portārī to be carried
Perf.	portāvisse to have carried	portātus esse to have been carried
Fut.	portātūrus esse to be about to carry	

<center>PARTICIPLES</center>

Pres. portāns, -antis carrying   *Perf.* portātus, -a, -um having been carried
Fut. portātūrus, -a, -um about to carry

SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Principal Parts: videō, vidēre, vīdi, vīsus see
               mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send
               capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take
               audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear

Stems: vidē-; vīd-; vīs-
       mitte-; mīs-; miss-
       cape-; cēp-; capt-
       audī-; audīv-; audīt-

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

PRESENT TENSE

ee, etc.	I send, etc.	I take, etc.	I hear, etc.
video	mittō	capiō	audiō
vidēs	mittis	capis	audīs
videt	mittit	capit	audit
vidēmus	mittimus	capimus	audīmus
vidētis	mittitis	capitis	audītis
vident	mittunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT TENSE

aw, etc.	I sent, etc.	I took, etc.	I heard, etc.
vidēbam	mittēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
vidēbās	mittēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
vidēbat	mittēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
vidēbātis	mittēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
vidēbant	mittēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE TENSE

hall see, etc.	I shall send, etc.	I shall take, etc.	I shall hear, etc.
vidēbō	mittam	capiam	audiam
vidēbis	mittēs	capiēs	audiēs
vidēbit	mittet	capiet	audiet
vidēbimus	mittēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
vidēbitis	mittētis	capiētis	audiētis
vidēbunt	mittent	capient	audient

PERFECT TENSE

ave seen, etc.	I have sent, etc.	I have taken, etc.	I have heard, etc.
vīdī	mīsi	cēpī	audīvī
vīdistī	mīsistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
vīdit	mīsit	cēpit	audīvit
vīdimus	mīsimus	cēpimus	audīvimus
vīdistis	mīsistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
vīdērunt	mīsērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

I had seen, etc.	I had sent, etc.	I had taken, etc.	I had heard, etc.
vīderam	mīseram	cēperam	audīveram
vīderās	mīserās	cēperās	audīverās
vīderat	mīserat	cēperat	audīverat
vīderāmus	mīserāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
vīderātis	mīserātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
vīderant	mīserant	cēperant	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have seen, etc.	I shall have sent, etc.	I shall have taken, etc.	I shall have heard, etc.
vīderō	mīsero	cēperō	audīverō
vīderis	mīseris	cēperis	audīveris
vīderit	mīserit	cēperit	audīverit
vīderimus	mīserimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
vīderitis	mīseritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
vīderint	mīserint	cēperint	audīverint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT TENSE

Sing.	vidē see thou	mittē send thou	cape take thou	audī hear thou
Plur.	vidēte see ye	mittite send ye	capite take ye	audīte hear ye

INFINITIVE

Pres.	vidēre to see	mittere to send	capere to take	audīre to hear
Perf.	vīdisse to have seen	mīsisse to have sent	cēpisse to have taken	audīvisse to have heard
Fut.	vīsūrus esse to be about to see	missūrus esse to be about to send	captūrus esse to be about to take	audītūrus esse to be about to hear

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	vidēns, -entis seeing	mittēns, -entis sending	capiēns, -entis taking	audiēns, -entis hearing
Fut.	vīsūrus, -a, -um about to see	missūrus, -a, -um about to send	captūrus, -a, -um about to take	auditūrus, -a, -um about to hear

SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

INDICATIVE

Passive Voice

PRESENT TENSE

m seen, etc.	I am sent, etc.	I am taken, etc.	I am heard, etc.
'ideor	mittor	capior	audior
'idēris, -re	mitteris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
'idētur	mittitur	capitur	audītur
'idēmur	mittimur	capimur	audīmur
'idēminī	mittiminī	capiminī	audīminī
'identur	mittuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

·as seen, etc.	I was sent, etc.	I was taken, etc.	I was heard, etc.
'idēbar	mittēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
'idēbāris, -re	mittēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
'idēbātur	mittēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
'idēbāmur	mittēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
'idēbāminī	mittēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
'idēbantur	mittēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE TENSE

ıall be seen, etc.	I shall be sent, etc.	I shall be taken, etc.	I shall be heard, etc.
idēbor	mittar	capiar	audiar
idēberis, -re	mittēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
idēbitur	mittētur	capiētur	audiētur
idēbimur	mittēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
idēbiminī	mittēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
idēbuntur	mittentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT TENSE

ıve been seen, etc.	I have been sent, etc.	I have been taken, etc.	I have been heard, etc.
īsus sum	missus sum	captus sum	audītus sum
īsus es	missus es	captus es	audītus es
īsus est	missus est	captus est	audītus est
īsī sumus	missī sumus	captī sumus	audītī sumus
īsī estis	missī estis	captī estis	audītī estis
īsī sunt	missī sunt	captī sunt	audītī sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

I had been seen, etc.	I had been sent, etc.	I had been taken, etc.	I had been heard, etc.
vīsus eram	missus eram	captus eram	audītus eram
vīsus erās	missus erās	captus erās	audītus erās
vīsus erat	missus erat	captus erat	audītus erat
vīsī erāmus	missī erāmus	captī erāmus	audītī erāmus
vīsī erātis	missī erātis	captī erātis	audītī erātis
vīsī erant	missī erant	captī erant	audītī erant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have been seen, etc.	I shall have been heard, etc.	I shall have been taken, etc.	I shall have been heard, etc.
vīsus erō	missus erō	captus erō	audītus erō
vīsus eris	missus eris	captus eris	audītus eris
vīsus erit	missus erit	captus erit	audītus erit
vīsī erimus	missī erimus	captī erimus	audītī erimus
vīsī eritis	missī eritis	captī eritis	audītī eritis
vīsī erunt	missī erunt	captī erunt	audītī erunt

INFINITIVE

Pres. vidērī to be seen	mittī to be sent	capī to be taken	audīrī to be heard
Perf. vīsus, -a, -um esse to have been seen	missus, -a, -um esse to have been sent	captus, -a, -um esse to have been taken	audītus, -a, -um esse to have been heard

PARTICIPLES

Perf. vīsus, -a, -um having been seen	missus, -a, -um having been sent	captus, -a, -um having been taken	audītus, -a, -um having been heard

IRREGULAR VERBS

sum am, be   possum be able

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus   *Principal Parts:* possum, posse, potuī, —
Stems: es-; fu-; fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT TENSE

I am, etc.   I am able, I can, etc.

sum	sumus	possum	possumus
es	estis	potes	potestis
est	sunt	potest	possunt

IMPERFECT TENSE

I was, etc.		I was able, I could, etc.	
m	erāmus	poteram	poterāmus
s	erātis	poterās	poterātis
t	erant	poterat	poterant

FUTURE TENSE

I shall be, etc.		I shall be able, etc.	
	erimus	poterō	poterimus
;	eritis	poteris	poteritis
:	erunt	poterit	poterunt

PERFECT TENSE

I have been, was, etc.		I have been able, etc.	
	fuimus	potuī	potuimus
stī	fuistis	potuistī	potuistis
:	fuērunt	potuit	potuērunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

I had been, etc.		I had been able, etc.	
ram	fuerāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
rās	fuerātis	potuerās	potuerātis
rat	fuerant	potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have been, etc.		I shall have been able, etc.	
rō	fuerimus	potuerō	potuerimus
ris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
rit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

| ıg. | es be (thou) | —— | —— |
| ur. | este be (ye) | —— | —— |

INFINITIVE

es.	esse to be	*Pres.*	posse to be able
rf.	fuisse to have been	*Perf.*	potuisse to have been able
t.	futūrus, -a, -um esse to be about to be		

PARTICIPLE

| ', | futūrus, -a, -um about to be | *Pres.* | potēns, -entis powerful (used as adjective) |

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The words in the vocabularies are printed here in **bold face** type.

Words in the Latin stories which are not to be learned are translated. If such words occur but once, or only in one *opusculum*, they are not given in this vocabulary, but any that are repeated in later *opuscula*, without translations, are given in *italics*.

The abbreviations in this vocabulary are like those in the vocabularies throughout the book.

Feminine nouns of the first declension ending in -a, masculine nouns of the second declension ending in -us or -er, and neuter nouns of the second declension ending in -um, are not followed by the usual abbreviations, *f.*, *m.*, or *n.*, to show gender. The gender of all other nouns is designated.

Verbs of the first conjugation are followed only by the -āre of the present infinitive. For verbs of other conjugations abbreviated forms of the principal parts are given, except when there is danger of their being misunderstood. Then the full forms are given.

A

ab, ā (*prep. w. abl.*) by, from
absum, abesse, āfuī be absent
accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessūrus approach
accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus receive, accept
accūsō, -āre accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre keen, sharp, eager, fierce
aciēs, aciēī, *f.* battle-line
ācriter (*adv.*) sharply
ācrius (*adv.*) more sharply
ad (*prep. w. acc.*) to
addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus lead to
aditus, -ūs, *m.* approach
administrō, -āre manage

adsum, adesse, adfuī be present
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.* young man
adventus, -ūs, *m.* arrival
aedificium, -ī building
aedificō, -āre build
Aenēās, -ae, m. Aeneas, a Trojan hero
āēr, āeris, m. air
Aesōpus, -ī Esop, a Greek writer of fables
ager, agrī field
āgmen, -minis, *n.* column of soldiers
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus drive, do
agricola, -ae, *m.* farmer
albus, -a, -um white
alius, alia, aliud other
alter . . . alter the one, the other (of two)

alter, altera, alterum the other (of two)

altus, -a, -um high

imāns patriae patriotic

imbō both

imbulō, -āre walk

Amērica, -ae America

amīcitia, -ae friendship

amīcus, -a, -um friendly

amīcus, -ī friend

āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus lose

amor, amōris, *m.* love

amplus, -a, -um generous, large

angustiae, angustiārum, *f. pl.* narrow pass

angustus, -a, -um narrow

anima, -ae soul

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus notice

animal, animālis, *n.* animal

animus, -ī heart, spirit; in animō habēre have in mind, intend

annus, -ī year

ante (*prep. w. acc.*) before

antīquus, -a, -um ancient

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus open

Apollō, -inis, m. Apollo, the sun god and the Roman god of music

appellō, -āre call

appropinquō, -āre approach

apud (*prep. w. acc.*) among

aqua, -ae water

āra, -ae altar

arbor, arboris, *f.* tree

arēna, -ae sand, arena

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.* armor

armātus, -a, -um armed

armilla, -ae bracelet

arō, -āre plow

ars, artis, *f.* art

atque (*conj.*) and also

audācia, -ae boldness

audācissimē (*adv.*) most boldly

audāx, audācis bold

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus hear

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus increase

aurum, -ī gold

autem (*adv.*) however, but

auxilium, -ī aid; auxilia, *n. pl.* reinforcements

B

barbarus, -a, -um savage, barbarian

bellum, -ī war; bellum gerere wage war

bene (*adv.*) well

beneficium, -ī benefit

benīgnus, -a, -um kind

Boeōtia, -ae Boeotia, a district in ancient Greece, north of Attica

bonum, -ī good

bonus, -a, -um good

brevis, breve short

breviter (*adv.*) briefly

Britannia, -ae Britain

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrus fall

caedēs, caedis, *f.* slaughter

Caesar, Caesaris, *m.* Caesar

calamitās, -ātis, *f.* disaster

capio, -ere, cēpī, captus take, capture

caput, capitis, *n.* head

cārus, -a, -um dear

casa, -ae house

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.* camp; castra movēre break camp; castra pōnere pitch camp

casus, -ūs, *m.* misfortune

causā for the sake of (*used w. gen.*)

causa, -ae cause

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus go, yield

celer, celeris, celere swift

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* speed

cēna, -ae dinner

centum (*indecl. adj.*) a hundred

Cerēs, Cereris, f. Ceres, the Roman goddess of the harvest

cēterus, -a, -um all other

cibus, -ī food

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.* Cicero

circum (*prep. w. acc.*) around

Circus Māximus, -ī Circus Maximus

cīvis, cīvis, *m.* citizen

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.* state, citizenship

clam (*adv.*) secretly

clāmō, -āre shout

clāmor, clāmōris, *m.* shout

Clāra, -ae Clara

clārus, -a, -um famous, bright

classis, classis, *f.* fleet

coepī I began

cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus learn, know

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus collect, compel

collis, collis, *m.* hill

collocō, -āre collect

colloquium, -ī conversation

colō, -ere, -uī, cultus worship, cultivate

columba, -ae dove

commeātus, -ūs, *m.* supplies

committō, -ere, commīsī, commissus commit

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus move greatly

commūnis, -e common

comparō, -āre prepare, collect

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus fill

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* proposal

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus found

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus lead together, gather

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus finish, accomplish

cōnfirmō, -āre establish

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus hurl

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus join

coniūrātiō, -iōnis, *f.* conspiracy

coniūrō, -āre conspire, plot

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus settle, encamp

cōnsilium, -ī advice, plan; cōnsilium capere to form a plan

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* sight

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus look at

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus decide, place

cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, *f.* custom

cōnsul, -is, *m.* consul

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus consult

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus fight, hasten

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus restrain

contrā (*prep. w. acc.*) against

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus assemble

cōpia, -ae supply; cōpiae, -ārum, (*pl.*) troops

Cornēlia, -ae Cornelia

cornū, -ūs, *n.* horn, wing of an army

corpus, corporis, *n.* body

cotīdiānus, -a, -um daily

cotīdiē (*adv.*) every day

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus believe

creō, -āre elect

crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel

cum (*prep. w. abl.*) with

cupidus, -a, -um eager for, greedy

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus desire

cūr (*adv.*) why?

ūra, -ae care
ūrō, -āre care for
urrō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus run
ūstōs, cūstōdis, m. guard

D

[d]ē (prep. w. abl.) about, down from
[d]ea, -ae goddess
[d]ēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus owe, ought
[d]ecem (numeral) ten
[d]ēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus defend
[d]ēfessus, -a, -um tired
[d]ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus drive down
[d]einde (adv.) then, next
[d]ēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus destroy
[d]ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus elect, choose
[d]ēmōnstrō, -āre prove
[d]ēmum (adv.) at last
dēns, dentis, m. tooth
dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, — jump down
[d]eus, -ī god
[d]exter, -tra, -trum right
[d]īcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus say
[d]iēs, diēī, m. day
[d]ifficilis, -e difficult
[d]īgnus, -a, -um worthy
[d]īligentia, -ae care
[d]īmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus send out
[d]iscēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus depart
[d]issimilis, -e unlike
[d]iū (adv.) a long time
[d]ō, dare, dedī, datus give; in fugam dare put to flight
[d]oceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus teach
[d]oleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus grieve
[d]olor, dolōris, m. grief
[d]omī, at home
[d]omina, -ae mistress
[d]ominus, -ī master
[d]ōnum, -ī gift

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus lead
duo (*numeral*) two
duo mīlia passuum two miles
dūrus, -a, -um hard
dux, ducis, m. leader

E

ē, ex (*prep. w. abl.*) from, out of
ecce ! behold!
edō, edere, ēdī, ēsus eat
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus lead out
ego (*pers. pron.*) I
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus drive out
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus buy
enim (*conj.*) for
eques, equitis, m. horseman
equus, -ī horse
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus rescue
errō, -āre wander
et (*conj.*) and
et . . . et (*conj.*) both . . . and
etiam (*adv.*) even
Eurōpa, -ae Europe
ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventus turn out
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus train
exercitus, -ūs, m. army
exīstimō, -āre think
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus drive out
expūgnō, -āre capture
exspectō, -āre await

F

fābula, -ae story
facile (*adv.*) easily
facilis, -e easy; facillimē (*adv.*) most easily, very easily
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus make, do
factum, -ī deed, action
Faliscī, -ōrum Falisci, or Faliscans, an Italian people near Rome

fāma, -ae fame
fēlīciter (*adv.*) happily, fortunately
fēmina, -ae woman
ferē (*adv.*) almost
fidēs, -eī, f. faith
fīlia, -ae daughter
fīlius, fīlī son
fīnis, fīnis, m. end; (*pl.*) territories
fīnitimus, -a, -um near, neighboring
firmus, -a, -um vigorous, strong
flūmen, flūminis, n. river
fōns, fontis, m. spring, fountain
forte (*adv.*) by chance
fortis, forte brave
fortiter (*adv.*) bravely
fortūna, -ae fortune
Forum, -ī public square
[f]rangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus break
frāter, frātris, m. brother
frūmentum, -ī grain
frūstrā (*adv.*) in vain
fuga, -ae flight; sē in fugam dare flee
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, -itūrus flee

G

Galba, -ae, m. Galba
Gallia, -ae France
gaudium, -ī joy
gēns, gentis, f. nation, tribe
genus, generis, n. kind, class
Germānia, -ae Germany
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus manage
gladius, -ī sword
glōria, -ae glory
gradus, -ūs, m. step
Graecus, -a, -um Greek
grātia, -ae favor, charm; (*pl.*) thanks; grātiās reddere return thanks, make a return

grātus, -a, -um pleasant
gravis, grave serious, heavy
graviter (*adv.*) seriously

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus have
habitō, -āre live
hērōs, hērois, m. hero
hīc (*adv.*) here
hic, haec, hoc (*pron.*) this
hiems, hiemis, f. winter
Hispānia, -ae Spain
homō, hominis, m. man
honor, honōris, m. honor
hōra, -ae hour
hostis, hostis, m. enemy (in war)
hūc (*adv.*) to this place

I

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus throw
iam (*adv.*) now, already
ibi (*adv.*) there
īdem, eadem, idem (*pron.*) the same
idōneus, -a, -um fit, suitable
igitur (*adv.*) therefore
īgnis, īgnis, m. fire
ille, illa, illud (*pron.* and *adj.*) that
immortālis, -e immortal
imperātor, imperātōris, m. general
imperium, -ī government
imperō, -āre command, order
impetus, -ūs, m. attack, violence
imprōvīsus, -a, -um unexpected
in (*prep. w. acc.*) into
in (*prep. w. abl.*) in
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus kindle
incitō, -āre arouse
incola, -ae m. inhabitant
indūtus, -a, -um clothed

Īnferī the lower world
īnferior, īnferius lower
īnferus, -a, -um below
inimīcus, -ī enemy
iniūria, -ae injury
inōpia, -ae lack
inquit (inquiunt) says (say)
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus marshal, draw up
īnsula, -ae island
intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus understand
inter (*prep. w. acc.*) among, between
intereā (*adv.*) meanwhile
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus kill
inter vōs among yourselves
inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventus find
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (*pron.*) himself, herself, itself
īra, -ae anger
īre to go
is, ea, id (*pron.*) this, that; he, she, it
ita (*adv.*) thus, so
Ītalia, -ae Italy
itaque (*adv.*) there
iter, itineris, *n.* journey
iterum (*adv.*) again
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus order
iūdex, iūdicis, *m.* judge
iūdicium, -ī trial, law-court
iūdicō, -āre judge
Iūlia, -ae Julia
Iuppiter, Iovis Jupiter, *or* Jove
iūs, iūris, *n.* right
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus aid

L

labōrō, -āre work, suffer, toil
lacrima, -ae tear
laetus, -a, -um happy, glad

lātē (*adv.*) widely
lātus, -a, -um broad
laudō, -āre praise
lēgātus, -ī ambassador, lieutenant
legiō, -ōnis, *f.* legion, a body of about 3600 soldiers
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus read
lēx, lēgis, *f.* law
libenter (*adv.*) gladly
līber, -era, -erum free
liber, librī, *m.* book
līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* children
līberō, -āre free, set free
lībertās, -ātis, *f.* freedom
littera, -ae letter (of the alphabet); (*pl.*) letter (message), literature
locō, -āre place
locus, -ī place
longus, -a, -um long
lūdus, -ī game
lūx, lūcis, *f.* light

M

maestus, -a, -um sad
magis (adv.) more
māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.* greatness
māgnopere (*adv.*) greatly
māgnus, -a, -um great
māior, māius greater
malus, -a, -um bad
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain
manus, -ūs, *f.* hand
Mārcus, -ī Marcus
mare, maris, *n.* sea
marīnus, -a, -um of the sea
Mārs, Mārtis, m. Mars, the Roman god of war
māter, mātris, *f.* mother
in mātrimōnium dūcere marry
māximē (adv.) very much

māximus, -a, -um greatest, very great, largest, oldest (with nātū)
medius, -a, -um middle of
melior, melius better
melius (*adv.*) better
memor, memoris mindful
memoria, -ae memory; memoriā tenēre remember
mercātor, -ōris, m. merchant
Mercurius, -ī Mercury, the Roman messenger god
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus deserve
meus, -a, -um my
mīles, mīlitis, *m.* soldier
mīlle (mīlia, *pl.*) one thousand; mīlia passuum miles, *i.e.* thousands of paces; mīlle passūs a mile
miser, -era, -erum wretched
misericordia, -ae mercy
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus send
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus advise, warn
mōns, montis, *m.* mountain
mōnstrō, -āre show
mōnstrum, -ī monster
mōrēs character, morals
mors, mortis, *f.* death
mortuus, -a, -um dead
mōs, mōris, *m.* custom
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus move
mox (*adv.*) soon, presently
multitūdō, -inis, *f.* multitude
multō (*adv.*) much
multus, -a -um many
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus fortify
mūrus, -ī wall

N

nam (*conj.*) for
nārrō, -āre tell
nātūra, -ae nature
nāvicula, -ae boat

nāvigō, -āre sail
nāvis, nāvis, *f.* ship; nāvis longa warship
-ne (*adv.*) (used to ask a question)
necō, -āre kill
negōtium, -ī business
nēmō *m.* and *f.* no one
neque (*conj.*) and not
neque . . . neque (*conj.*) neither . . . nor
niger, nigra, nigrum black
nihil (*indecl. noun*) nothing
nisi (*conj.*) unless, if, not
nōbilis, -e noble
nōmen, nōminis, *n.* name
nōn (*adv.*) not
nōn iam (*adv.*) no longer
nōnne (*adv.*) (used to ask a question when "yes" is the answer expected)
nōs (*pl.* of ego) we
noster, -tra, -trum our
nōtus, -a, -um well-known
novem (*numeral*) nine
novus, -a, -um new
nox, noctis, *f.* night; multā nocte late at night
nūllus, -a, -um no
num (*adv.*) (interrogative word, anticipating the answer "no")
numerus, -ī number
numquam (*adv.*) never
nunc (*adv.*) now
nūntiō, -āre announce
nūntius, nūntī messenger

O

ob (*prep. w. acc.*) on account of
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus hold
occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus cut down, kill

occupō, -āre seize
octō (*numeral*) eight
officium, -ī duty
ōlim (*adv.*) once upon a time
omnīnō (*adv.*) altogether
omnis, omne all, every
oppidum, -ī town
oppūgnō, -āre attack, besiege
ops, opis, *f.* aid; (*pl.*) wealth, resources
optimē (*adv.*) best
optimus, -a, -um best
opus, operis, *n.* work
ōra, -ae coast, shore
ōrāculum, -ī oracle
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.* speech
ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.* orator
ōrdō, -inis, *m.* rank
ōrnō, -āre adorn
ōrō, -āre beg, pray

P

paene (*adv.*) almost
palla, -ae mantle
Pān, Pānis, m. Pan, the Greek god of nature
parō, -āre prepare
pars, partis, *f.* part, direction; in omnēs partēs in all directions
parvus, -a, -um small
passus, -ūs, *m.* pace, two steps
pater, patris, *m.* father
patria, -ae native land
paucī, -ae, -a few
paulum (*adv.*) a little
pāx, pācis, *f.* peace
pecūnia, -ae money
per (*prep. w. acc.*) through
perfidus, -a, -um treacherous, faithless
perīculum, -ī danger
Persae, -ārum, m. pl. Persians

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus terrify
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, — extend, pertain
perturbō, -āre stir up
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus arrive
pēs, pedis, *m.* foot
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus ask, seek
Platō, Platōnis, m. Plato, a Greek philosopher
plēbs, plēbis, *f.* common people, plebeians
plūs, plūris more
poena, -ae punishment
Poenī, -ōrum Carthaginians
poēta, -ae *m.* poet
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus place
pōns, pontis, *m.* bridge
populus, -ī people
porta, -ae door, gate
portō, -āre carry
portus, -ūs, *m.* harbor
possum, posse, potuī, — be able, can
post (*prep. w. acc.*) after
posteā (*adv.*) afterwards
postrēmō (adv.) at last
postulō, -āre demand
potēns, potentis powerful
potestās, -ātis, *f.* opportunity, power
praeda, -ae booty
praemium, -ī reward
praeter (*prep. w. acc.*) except
prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus grasp
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus press upon
prīmā lūce at daybreak
prīmum (*adv.*) at first
prīmus, -a, -um first
prīnceps, -cipis, *m.* chief man
prō (*prep. w. abl.*) in-return-for, for before
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus advance

proelium, -ī battle; proelium committere begin battle
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus keep from, prevent
prope (*prep. w. acc.*) near
properō, -āre hasten
propter (*prep. w. acc.*) on account of
prōvincia, -ae province
prūdēns, -entis wise
puella, -ae girl
puer, puerī boy
pūgna, -ae fight, battle
pūgnō, -āre fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrum pretty, beautiful
putō, -āre think

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus ask
quam (*adv.*) how
quam (*adv.*) than
quamquam (*conj.*) although
quattuor (*numeral*) four
-que (*conj.*) and (attached to end of word)
quem ad modum (*adv.*) how, in what way
quī, quae, quod (*pron.*) who, which, that
quīdam a certain man
quīnque (*numeral*) five
quis, quid (*inter. pron.*) who, what
quō (*adv.*) whither
quod (*conj.*) because
quoque (*adv.*) also

R

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* method, reason
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus take back, receive; sē recipere withdraw, retreat

recūsō, -āre refuse
reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus return, give back, render
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus lead back
rēgia, -ae palace
rēgnum, -ī kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus rule
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus drive back
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus leave
reliquus, -a, -um the-rest-of
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus send back
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus drive back
reportō, -āre bring back
rēs, reī, *f.* thing; rēs frūmentāria, -ī, -ae, *f.* provisions; rēs mīlitāris, -ī, -is, *f.* military science; rēs pūblica, -ī, -ae, *f.* republic, public affairs
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus look back
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus reply
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus hold back
reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus come back
rēx, rēgis, *m.* king
rīpa, -ae bank
rogō, -āre ask
Rōma, -ae Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman
rūrsus (*adv.*) again

S

sacerdōs, -dōtis, m. priest
saepe (*adv.*) often
salūs, salūtis, *f.* safety
sapiēns, sapientis wise
scelus, sceleris, *n.* crime, wickedness
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus know

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write
scūtum, -ī shield
sēcum (*pron.*) with him
secundus, -a, -um favorable, second
sed (*conj.*) but
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus sit
semper (*adv.*) always
senātus, -ūs, *m.* senate
senex, senis, *m.* old man
sententia, -ae opinion
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel
septem (*numeral*) seven
serva, -ae slave-girl
servō, -āre save
servus, -ī slave
sex (*numeral*) six
sī (*conj.*) if
sīc (*adv.*) thus
signum, -ī signal
silva, -ae forest
similis, -e like
sine (*prep. w. abl.*) without
singulī, -ae, -a one by one
socius, -ī ally
sōlus, -a, -um alone
soror, -ōris, f. sister
spatium, -ī space
spectō, -āre look at
spērō, -āre hope
spēs, eī hope
statim (*adv.*) immediately
statua, -ae statue
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus stand
stola, -ae robe
studium, -ī eagerness, study
suā sponte of his (their) own accord
sub (*prep. w. abl.*) under
subitō (*adv.*) suddenly
suī (*pron.*) of himself, herself, itself, of themselves
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be

summus, -a, -um highest
super (*prep. w. acc.*) above
superō, -āre conquer
superus, -a, -um upper, above
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus withstand
suus, -a, -um his, her, its, their

T

taberna, -ae shop
tabula, -ae painting
tālis, -e such
tam (*adv.*) so
tam . . . quam as . . . as
tamen (*adv.*) however
tandem (*adv.*) at length
tantus, -a, -um so great; tantus . . . quantus so great . . . as, so much . . . as
tardus, -a, -um slow
tēlum, -ī weapon
tempestās, -ātis, *f.* storm
templum, -ī temple
temptō, -āre test, try
tempus, -oris, *n.* time
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tēnsus stretch
teneō, -ēre, -uī, — hold
terra, -ae land, earth
timeō, -ēre, -uī, — fear
timor, -ōris, *m.* fear
toga, -ae toga
trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus lead across
trāns (*prep. w. acc.*) across
trecentī, -ae, -a three hundred
trēs, tria (*numeral*) three
tribūnus, -ī tribune, a Roman political official
Trōia, -ae Troy
Trōiānus, -a, -um Trojan

tū (*pers. pron.*) you
tum (*adv.*) then
tūtus, -a, -um safe
tuus, -a, -um your

U

ubi (*adv.*) where; (*conj.*) when
ultimus, -a, -um last
undique (*adv.*) from all sides
ūnus, -a, -um (*numeral*) one
urbs, urbis, *f.* city
ut (*conj.*) as

V

valē ! goodbye; valēte (*pl.*)
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus be strong, prevail
vāstō, -āre lay waste
vehementer (*adv.*) greatly
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus come
Venus, -eris, f. Venus, the Roman goddess of love
verbum, -ī word
vērō (*adv.*) truly, really, but, indeed
vērus, -a, -um true
Vesta, -ae Vesta, the Roman goddess of the hearth

vester, -tra, -trum (*pl.*) your
vestīmenta, -ōrum, n. pl. garments
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
vetus (*gen.* veteris) old, ancient
via, -ae street
victor, -ōris, *m.* conqueror
victōria, -ae victory; victōriam reportāre win a victory
Victōria, -ae goddess of victory
vīcus, -ī village
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus see
vīlla, -ae villa, country-place
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus conquer
vīnum, -ī wine
vir, virī, *m.* man
virtūs, virtūtis, *f.* manliness, courage
vīs, vīs, *f.* force, strength
vīta, -ae life
vocō, -āre call
volō, -āre fly
volō, velle, voluī, — wish
Volscī, -ōrum Volsci, or Volscians, an Italian people
vōs (*pl.* of tū) you
vōx, vōcis, *f.* voice
vulnerō, -āre wound
vulnus, -eris, *n.* wound

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

Abbreviations to show gender are given in this vocabulary.

A

about, concerning dē (*with abl.*)
accept accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
accuse accūsō, -āre
across trāns (*with acc.*)
action factum, -ī
adorn ōrnō, -āre
advance prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus
afterwards posteā
aid, help auxilium, -ī
aid iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus
all omnis, -e
all other cēterus, -a, -um
ally socius, -ī
almost ferē, paene
although quamquam
altogether omnīnō
always semper
ambassador lēgātus, -ī
ancient antīquus, -a, -um
animal animal, -mālis, *n.* (animāli-)
announce nūntiō, -āre
Apollo Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*
approach aditus, -ūs, *m.*
approach appropinquō, -āre
armed armātus, -a, -um
arms arma, -ōrum, *n.*; tēla, -ōrum, *n.*
army exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around circum (*with acc.*)
arrival adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus
art ars, artis, *f.* (arti-)
as ut
as much . . . as tantus . . . quantus
await exspectō, -āre

B

barbarian barbarus, -a, -um
battle pūgna, -ae; proelium, -ī
battle-line aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
be sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
be able possum, posse, potuī
beautiful pulcher, -chra, -chrum
before ante (*with acc.*)
beg ōrō, -āre
begin (battle) committō, -ere, -mīsī, missus
believe crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus
between inter (*with acc.*)
bold audāx, audācis
book liber, -brī
booty praeda, -ae
boy puer, puerī
brave fortis, -e
bridge pōns, pontis, *m.* (pontī-)
briefly breviter
bring back reportō, -āre
Briton Britannus, -ī
brother frāter, -tris, *m.*
build aedificō, -āre
building aedificium, -ī
by ā, ab (*with abl.*)

C

Caesar Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call vocō, -āre
camp castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can possum, posse, potuī
capture capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; expūgnō, -āre
care cūra, -ae

care for cūrō, -āre
carry portō, -āre
Catiline Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
chief man prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
children līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus
Cicero Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
citizen civis, -is, *m.* (cīvi-)
city urbs, urbis, *f.* (urbī-)
class genus, generis, *n.*
collect cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus
column āgmen, -minis, *n.*
come back reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus
common people plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
conquer superō, -āre; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus
conspiracy coniūrātiō, -iōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, -āre
consul cōnsul, -is, *m.*
country (native) patria, -ae
courage virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
cruel crūdēlis, -e
custom mōs, mōris, *m.*

D

daily cotīdiānus, -a, -um
danger perīculum, -ī
daughter fīlia, -ae
daybreak prīma lūx
dear cārus, -a, -um
death mors, mortis, *f.* (morti-)
decide cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus
deed factum, -ī
defend dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus
demand postulō, -āre
depart discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus
desire cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus
destroy dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus
determine cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus

difficult difficilis, -e
disaster calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
divine dīvīnus, -a, -um
door porta, -ae
drive back repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus

E

eager ācer, ācris, ācre; cupidus, -a, -um
eagerness studium, -ī
easily facile
easy facilis, -e
elect creō, -āre; dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus
enemy hostis, -is, *m.* (hosti-)
establish cōnfīrmō, -āre
extend pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —

F

fable, story fābula, -ae
faithless perfidus, -a, -um
fame fāma, -ae
famous clārus, -a, -um
farmer agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fear timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear timeō, -ēre, -uī, —
feel sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus
few paucī, -ae, -a
field ager, agrī
fierce ācer, ācris, ācre
fight pūgnō, -āre
fill compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus
fire īgnis, -is, *m.* (īgni-)
flee fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
fleet classis, -is, *f.* (classi-)
food cibus, -ī
foot pēs, pedis, *m.*
for-the-sake-of causā (*with gen.*)
forces cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

form (a plan) capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus
fortunately fēlīciter
Forum, Forum, -ī
free līberō, -āre
free liber, -era, -erum
friend amīcus, -ī
friendship amīcitia, -ae
frighten perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus
frightened perterritus, -a, -um
from ā, ab (with abl.)

G

gate porta, -ae
Gaul Gallia, -ae
general imperātor, -ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m.
German Germānus, -ī
gift dōnum, -ī
girl puella, -ae
give dō, dare, dedī, datus
god deus, -ī
goddess dea, -ae
gold aurum, -ī
good bonus, -a, -um
grain frūmentum, -ī
great māgnus, -a, -um
greedy cupidus, -a, -um
greet salūtō, -āre

H

happy laetus, -a, -um
harbor portus, -ūs, m.
hasten properō, -āre; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus
have habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus
he, she, it is, ea, id
hear audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus
heavy gravis, -e
help iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus
high altus, -a, -um

himself (reflexive) suī
his own, her own, their own suus, -a, -um
hold teneō, -ēre, -uī, —
honor honor, -ōris, m.
hope spērō, -āre
horse equus, -ī
horseman eques, equitis, m.
house casa, -ae

I

I ego
if sī
immediately statim
immortal immortālis, -e
in in (with abl.)
increase augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus
indeed vērō
inhabitant incola, -ae, m.
into in (with acc.)
island īnsula, -ae

J

journey iter, itineris, n.
judge iūdex, -dicis, m.
Jupiter Iuppiter, Iovis, m.

K

kill interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
kind genus, -eris, n.
kindness beneficium, -ī
king rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom rēgnum, -ī
know sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus

L

Labyrinth labyrinthus, -ī
land terra, -ae
lead dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus

leader dux, ducis, m.
lead together condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
learn cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus
leave relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus
legion legiō, legiōnis, f.
lieutenant lēgātus, -ī
life vīta, -ae
like similis, -e
living-thing animal, -mālis, n.
long longus, -a, -um
long time diū
look at spectō, -āre
lord dominus, -ī
lose āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus
love amor, -ōris, m.
love amō, -āre

M

man vir, virī, m.; homō, -minis, m.
many multī, -ae, -a
march iter facere
marry in mātrimōnium dūcere
marshal īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus
master dominus, -ī
meanwhile intereā
messenger nūntius, -ī
middle-of medius, -a, -um
mile mīlle passūs
miles mīlia passuum
mind animus, -ī
mindful memor, memoris
Minerva Minerva, -ae
miserable, miser, -era, -erum
misfortune casus, -ūs, m.
mistress domina, -ae
money pecūnia, -ae
mountain mōns, montis, m.
move moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus
much (adj.) multus, -a, -um

much (adv.) multō
multitude multitūdō, -dinis, f.

N

name nōmen, -inis, n.
narrow angustus, -a, -um
narrow pass angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.
nation populus, -ī; gēns, gentis, f.
nature nātūra, -ae
near prope (with acc.)
neighbors fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. pl.
neither . . . nor neque . . . neque
new novus, -a, -um
noble nōbilis, -e
no one nēmō, nūllīus, m. and f.
not nōn
nothing nihil (indecl.)
now nunc
number numerus, -ī

O

of his own accord suā sponte
often saepe
old vetus, veteris; antīquus, -a, -um
old man senex, senis, m.
on in (with abl.)
on-account-of ob or propter (with acc.)
one ūnus, -a, -um
one by one singulī, -ae, -a
other alius, -a, -um; cēterus, -a, -um
oracle ōrāculum, -ī
orator ōrātor, -ōris, m.
order iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus
our noster, -tra, -trum
out of ē, ex (with abl.)
owe, ought dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

P

peace pāx, pācis, f.
pitch (camp) pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus
place locus, -ī

place locō, -āre
plan cōnsilium, -ī
pleasing grātus, -a, -um
plebeians plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
powerful potēns, potentis
prepare parō, -āre
pretty pulcher, -chra, -chrum
province prōvincia, -ae

R

receive recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
remain maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus
remember memoriā tenēre
render reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus
reply respondeō, -ēre, -pondī, -pōnsus
republic rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
rescue ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus
reward praemium, -ī
Rhine Rhēnus, -ī
right iūs, iūris, *n.*
river flūmen, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, -ī
road via, -ae
roam errō, -āre
rock saxum, -ī
Roman Rōmānus, -a, -um
run currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus

S

sacrifice sacrificium, -ī
safe tūtus, -a, -um
sailor nauta, -ae *m.*
same īdem, eadem, idem
save servō, -āre
say dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus
sea mare, maris, *n.* (mari-)
secretly clam
see videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus
seek petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus
self ipse, ipsa, ipsum
senate senātus, -ūs, *m.*

send mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus
serious gravis, -e
sharply ācriter
shield scūtum, -ī
ship nāvis, nāvis, *f.* (nāvi-)
Sibyl Sibylla, -ae
sight cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
sing cantō, -āre
sit sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus
slay necō, -āre; occīdō, -ere, occīdī,
   occīsus
small parvus, -a, -um
soldier mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
son fīlius, -ī
speech ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
spring fōns, fontis, *m.*
stand stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus
state cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica,
   reī pūblicae, *f.*
statue statua, -ae
story fābula, -ae
street via, -ae
suddenly subitō
supplies commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
surpass superō, -āre
swiftness celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
sword gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus
teach doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus
tell nārrō, -āre ; dīcō, -ere, dīxī,
   dictus
temple templum, -ī, *n.*
ten decem (*indecl.*)
territories fīnēs, -ium, *m.* (fīni)
test temptō, -āre
than quam
thanks grātiae, -ārum, *f.*
that is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud

there ibi
think putō, -āre
this is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc
thousand mīlle, *pl.* mīlia
three trēs, tria
three hundred trecentī, -ae, -a
throw, hurl iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus
time tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired dēfessus, -a, -um
to ad (*with acc.*)
town oppidum, -ī, *n.*
tribe gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
troops cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
true vērus, -a, -um
turn out ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventus
two duo, duae, duo

U

understand intellegō, -ere, -ēxī,
   -ēctus
unexpected imprōvīsus, -a, -um
upper world superī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

V

very great māximus, -a, -um
victory victōria, -ae, *f.*
village vīcus, -ī, *m.*
virtue virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

W

wage (war) gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus
walk ambulō, -āre
wall mūrus, -ī, *m.*
war bellum, -ī, *n.*
warship nāvis longa

watch spectō, -āre
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way of life ratiō vītae
weapon tēlum, -ī, *n.*
well-known nōtus, -a, -um
white albus, -a, -um
who, which, what quis, quae, quid
   (*inter. pron.*)
who, which, that quī, quae, quod (*rel.
   pron.*)
wicked malus, -a, -um
wide lātus, -a, -um
widely lātē
wife uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wine vīnum, -ī, *n.*
winter hiems, hiemis, *f.*
wise sapiēns, sapientis; prūdēns,
   prudentis
wish cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus
with cum (*with abl.*)
without sine (*with abl.*)
withstand sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus
woman fēmina, -ae, *f.*
word verbum, -ī, *n.*
worship colō, -ere, -uī, cultus
wound vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound vulnerō, -āre
write scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus

Y

year annus, -ī, *m.*
yield cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus
you tū
your (*sing.*) tuus, -a, -um
your (*pl.*) vester, -tra, -trum
youth, young man adulēscēns, -cen-
   tis, *m.*

INDEX

Arabic numerals refer to pages of the text. Roman numerals refer to pages in *Forms for Reference*. The entries beginning with capital letters refer to illustrations.